Diagnostics Biochem Canada Inc.
Manufacturing Innovative IVD for the World Since 1973

TOTAL ESTROGENS ELISA

EU: CE IVD CAN: IVD USA: IVD

REF: CAN-E-440 Version: 5.0
Effective: September 14, 2018

INTENDED USE

For the direct quantitative determination of Total Estrogens in human serum by an enzyme immunoassay. For *in vitro* use only.

PRINCIPLE OF THE TEST

The total estrogens ELISA is a competitive immunoassay. Competition occurs between total estrogens (estrone, estradiol, and estriol) present in standards, controls and patient samples and an enzyme-labelled antigen (conjugate) for a limiting number of anti-estrogen antibody binding sites on the microplate wells. After a washing step that removes unbound materials the enzyme substrate is added and approximately 15–20 minutes later the enzymatic reaction is terminated by addition of stopping solution. The resulting optical density (OD), measured with a microplate reader, is inversely proportional to the concentration of total estrogens in the sample. A standard curve is plotted with a provided set of standards to calculate directly the concentration of total estrogens in patient samples and controls.

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS

Total estrogens comprise the total quantity of estrone, estradiol, and estriol. The estrogens are involved in the development of female sex organs and secondary sex characteristics. Before the ovum is fertilized the main action of the estrogens is on the growth and function of the reproductive tract to prepare it for the fertilized ovum.

During the follicular phase of the menstrual cycle the total estrogens level shows a slight increase. The production of total estrogens then increases markedly to peak at around day 13. The peak is of short duration and by day 16 of the cycle levels will be low. A second peak occurs at around day 21 of the cycle; if fertilization does not occur, the production of total estrogens decreases.

In post-menopausal women the concentration of all estrogens decreases substantially and estrone becomes the predominant estrogen. In pregnant women the concentration of all estrogens escalates and estriol becomes the predominant estrogen.

A total estrogens test is commonly indicated to:

- Aid in diagnosis of sex steroid metabolism related conditions, for example, premature or delayed puberty, and aromatase and 17 alpha-hydroxylase deficiencies.
- Assess fracture risk in postmenopausal women and, to a lesser degree, older men.
- Follow-up female hormone replacement therapy in postmenopausal women.
- Prognose antiestrogen therapy, for example, aromatase inhibitor therapy.

PROCEDURAL CAUTIONS AND WARNINGS

1. This kit is intended for in vitro use only.
2. Practice good laboratory practices when handling kit reagents and specimens. This includes:
   - Do not pipette by mouth.
   - Do not smoke, drink, or eat in areas where specimens or kit reagents are handled.
   - Wear protective clothing and disposable gloves.
   - Wash hands thoroughly after performing the test.
   - Avoid contact with eyes; use safety glasses; in case of contact with eyes, flush eyes with water immediately and contact a doctor.
3. Users should have a thorough understanding of this protocol for the successful use of the kit. Reliable performance will only be attained by strict and careful adherence to the instructions.
4. Include control materials or serum pools in every run at a high and low level to assess the reliability of results.
5. Use deionized or distilled water to dilute wash buffer concentrate.
6. Wear gloves to handle kit reagents and human specimens and reduce exposure to potentially harmful substances.
7. Bring the microplate, kit reagents, and specimens to room temperature and mix them gently but thoroughly before use. Avoid repeated freezing and thawing of reagents and specimens.
8. Establish a calibrator curve for every run.
9. Include provided controls in every run and corroborate that they fall within established quality control certificate limits.
10. Follow good laboratory practices. Improper procedural techniques, imprecise pipetting, incomplete washing, as well as improper reagent storage may be the cause of kit controls not falling within established limits.
11. Carefully remove bubbles before reading. The presence of bubbles in the microplate wells can affect the OD.
12. Do not use the substrate (TMB) if it is blue before the test. The TMB solution shall remain colourless if stored under recommended conditions (see label). Exposure to light or contamination might turn it blue.
13. Do not use pipettes in which liquids contact metal parts.
14. Use a new disposable pipette tip for dispensing each reagent, sample, standard and control to prevent contamination of reagents.
15. Do not mix components from various kit lot numbers within a test and do not use any component beyond the expiration date printed on the label.
16. Dispose leftover kit reagents according to national regulations as they may be considered hazardous waste.

LIMITATIONS

1. This kit is calibrated for the direct determination of total estrogens in human serum; not for the determination of total estrogens in other species or in specimens other than serum.
2. Do not use grossly hemolyzed, grossly lipemic, icteric or improperly stored serum.
3. Samples or control sera containing azide or thimerosal are not compatible with this kit, they may lead to false results.
4. Only calibrator A may be used to dilute high serum samples. The use of any other reagent (including water) will lead to false results.
5. The results obtained with this kit shall never be used as the sole basis for a clinical diagnosis. For example, some drugs and heterophilic antibodies in patients regularly exposed to animals or animal products have the potential to interfere with immunological tests. Consequently, the clinical diagnosis should comprise all aspects of a patient's background including the frequency of exposure to animals/products.

SAFETY CAUTIONS AND WARNINGS
POTENTIAL BIOHAZARDOUS MATERIAL

The reagents shall be considered a potential biohazard and handled with the same precautions applied to any blood specimen.

CHEMICAL HAZARDS

Avoid contact with reagents containing TMB, hydrogen peroxide and sulfuric acid. If contacted with any of these reagents, wash with plenty of water. TMB is a suspected carcinogen.

SPECIMEN COLLECTION AND STORAGE

Approximately 0.1 mL of serum is required per duplicate determination. Collect 4–5 mL of blood into an appropriately labelled tube and allow it to clot. Centrifuge and carefully remove the serum layer. Store at 4°C for up to 24 hours or at -10°C or lower if the analyses are to be done later. Consider all human specimens as possible biohazardous materials and take appropriate precautions to handle them.

SPECIMEN PRETREATMENT

No specimen pretreatment is necessary.

REAGENTS AND EQUIPMENT NEEDED BUT NOT PROVIDED

1. Precision pipettes to dispense 25, 50, and 150 µL
2. Disposable pipette tips
3. Distilled or deionized water
4. Microwell plate reader with a filter set at 450 nm and an upper OD limit of 3.0 or greater
5. Microplate washer

REAGENTS PROVIDED

1. Rabbit Anti-Estrogens Antibody Coated Break-Apart Well Microplate — Ready To Use
Contents: One polyclonal antibody-coated 96-well (12x8) microplate in a resealable pouch with desiccant.
Storage: Refrigerate at 2–8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.

2. Estrogen-HRP Conjugate — Ready To Use
Contents: Estrogen-HRP conjugate in a protein-based buffer with a non-mercury preservative.
Volume: 20 mL/bottle
Storage: Refrigerate at 2–8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.

3. Calibrators — Ready To Use
Contents: Seven vials containing estrogen in a protein-based buffer with a non-mercury preservative. Prepared by spiking buffer with a defined quantity of estrogens.

* Listed below are approximate concentrations, please refer to bottle labels for exact concentrations.

Calibrator	Concentration	Volume/Vial
Calibrator A	0 pg/mL	2.0 mL
Calibrator B	20 pg/mL	1.0 mL
Calibrator C	100 pg/mL	1.0 mL
Calibrator D	400 pg/mL	1.0 mL
Calibrator E	1000 pg/mL	1.0 mL
Calibrator F	2500 pg/mL	1.0 mL
Calibrator G	10000 pg/mL	1.0 mL

Storage: Refrigerate at 2–8°C
Stability: 12 months in unopened vials or as indicated on label. Once opened, the standards should be used within 14 days or aliquoted and stored frozen. Avoid multiple freezing and thawing cycles.

4. Controls — Ready To Use
Contents: Two vials containing estrogen in a protein-based buffer with a non-mercury preservative. Prepared by spiking buffer with defined quantities of total estrogens. Refer to vial labels for the acceptable range.
Volume: 1.0 mL/vial
Storage: Refrigerate at 2–8°C
Stability: 12 months in unopened vials or as indicated on label. Once opened, the controls should be used within 14 days or aliquoted and stored frozen. Avoid multiple freezing and thawing cycles.

5. Wash Buffer Concentrate — Requires Preparation X10
Contents: One bottle containing buffer with a non-ionic detergent and a non-mercury preservative.
Volume: 50 mL/bottle
Storage: Refrigerate at 2–8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.
Preparation: Dilute 1:10 in distilled or deionized water before use. If the whole plate is to be used dilute 50 mL of the wash buffer concentrate in 450 mL of water.

6. TMB Substrate — Ready To Use
Contents: One bottle containing tetramethylbenzidine and hydrogen peroxide in a non-DMF or DMSO containing buffer.
Volume: 16 mL/bottle
Storage: Refrigerate at 2–8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.

7. Stopping Solution — Ready To Use
Contents: One bottle containing 1M sulfuric acid.
Volume: 6 mL/bottle
Storage: Refrigerate at 2–8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.

ASSAY PROCEDURE

Specimen Pretreatment: **None**.

Bring reagents, samples, and the microplate to room temperature before use. Test the calibrators, controls and specimen samples in duplicate. Once the procedure has started, complete all steps without interruption.

1. Prepare the working solution of wash buffer.
2. Remove the required number of microplate strips. Reseal the bag and return unused strips to the refrigerator.
3. Pipette 25 µL of each calibrator, control and specimen sample into planned wells in duplicate.
4. Pipette 150 µL of the Estrogen-HRP conjugate into each well. We recommend using a multichannel pipette.
5. Gently shake the plate by hand for ten seconds (or tap it on the side with your hand) to mix the contents of the wells.
6. Incubate for 2 hours at room temperature (no shaking). Cover the plate to avoid any contamination.
7. Wash the wells 3 times with 350 µL of diluted wash buffer per well. Tap the plate firmly against absorbent paper to ensure that no droplets remain in the wells. The use of a microplate washer is recommended. If a washer is not available, ensure the wash buffer reaches the top edge of the wells and no liquid remains in the plate after the final washing.)
8. Pipette 150 µL of TMB substrate into each well at timed intervals.
9. Incubate for 15 to 20 minutes at room temperature (or until calibrator A attains dark blue colour).
10. Pipette 50 µL of stopping solution into each well at the same timed intervals as in step 8. Gently tap the side of the microplate to mix the contents of the wells.
11. Read in a microplate reader at 450 nm within 20 minutes after addition of the stopping solution.

CALCULATIONS

1. Calculate the mean optical density of each calibrator duplicate.
2. Use a 4-parameter curve fit with immunoassay software to generate concentration results.
3. If no software is available draw a calibrator curve on semi-log paper with the mean optical densities on the Y-axis and the calibrator concentrations on the X-axis.
4. Read the values of the unknowns off the calibrator curve.
5. If a sample reads more than 10,000 pg/mL dilute it with calibrator A at a dilution of no more than 1:10. The result obtained must be multiplied by the dilution factor.

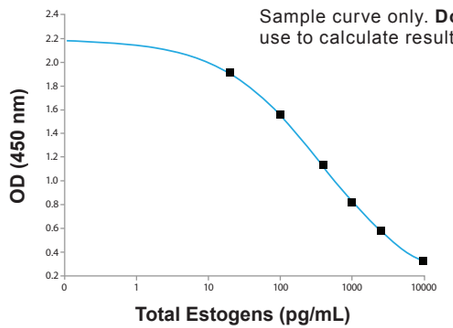
TYPICAL TABULATED DATA

Sample data only. **Do not** use to calculate results.

Calibrator	OD 1	OD 2	Mean OD	Value (pg/mL)
A	2.21	2.18	2.20	0
B	1.87	1.90	1.89	20
C	1.57	1.56	1.57	100
D	1.13	1.14	1.14	400
E	0.81	0.82	0.81	1000
F	0.58	0.58	0.58	2500
G	0.33	0.33	0.33	10000
Unknown	1.00	0.96	0.98	620

TYPICAL CALIBRATOR CURVE

Sample curve only. **Do not** use to calculate results.



PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

SENSITIVITY

The lower detection limit was calculated following EP17-A. Sixty replicates of the matrix and a low concentration sample were run in independent tests with three lots of the kit. The Limit of Background was determined to be 1.9 pg/mL and the Limit of Detection was determined to be **4.4 pg/mL**.

SPECIFICITY (CROSS-REACTIVITY)

The cross-reactivity was evaluated in relation to estrogens reacting at 100%.

Steroid	% Cross-Reactivity
Estrone	100
Estradiol	100
Estriol	100
Estrone Sulfate	0.07
Estradiol Sulfate	0.15
17α-Estradiol	12.0
Equilin	10.6
DHEAS	< 0.01
Pregnenolone Sulfate	< 0.01
Cholesterol	< 0.0001

11-Hydroxycorticosterone, 17α-Hydroxyprogesterone, Aldosterone, Androstenedione, Androsterone, Corticosterone, Cortisol, DHEA, DHT, Prednisone, Pregnenolone, Progesterone, and Testosterone cross-react less than 0.1%.

The analysis of 20 patient samples from individuals on hormone replacement therapy, including patients on equilin and 17α-estradiol based drugs, yielded a correlation with LC-MS/MS of y(DBC) = 0.92x(LCMS) – 11.3, r = 0.995.

Therefore, the present device is not interfered by commonly used HRT drugs.

INTERFERENCES

Hemoglobin up to 2 g/L, Bilirubin conjugated and unconjugated up to 20 mg/dL, Triglycerides up to 5 mg/mL, Bisphenol A and Diethylstilbestrol up to 100 ng/mL, Biotin up to 10 µg/mL, Daidzein and Resveratrol up to 200 ng/mL, Genistein up to 100 ng/mL, HAMAS up to 1.2 µg/mL, and Rheumatoid Factor up to 1.2 IU/mL did not interfere with the assay.

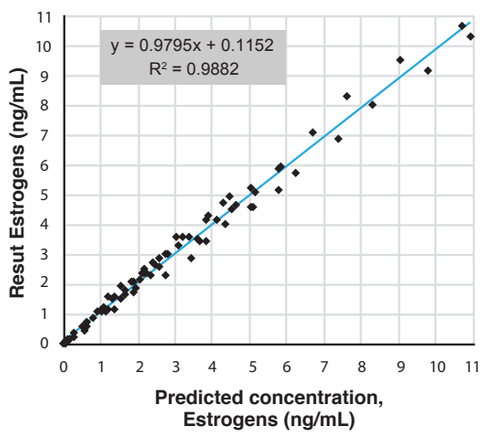
PRECISION

The experimental protocol used a nested components-of-variance design with 20 testing days, two runs per day, and two replicate measurements per run (a 20 x 2 x 2 design) for each sample. The results were analyzed with a two-way nested ANOVA and summarized in the table below.

Sample	Mean	Within Run SD	Within Run CV	Between Run SD	Between Run CV	Total SD	Total CV
1	60.1	6.1	10.1%	5.7	9.5%	10.9	18.2%
2	217.5	12.2	5.6%	16.8	7.7%	20.8	9.5%
3	603.1	34.6	5.7%	13.8	2.3%	41.9	7.0%
4	921.3	36.6	4.0%	44.8	4.9%	87.0	9.4%
5	1435.1	57.5	4.0%	48.3	3.4%	99.5	6.9%
6	1029	50.0	4.9%	41.3	4.0%	82.3	8.0%
7	3511.3	160.4	4.6%	122.4	3.5%	244.2	7.0%

LINEARITY

The linearity study was performed with nine human serum samples covering the range of the assay and following CLSI guideline EP6-A. The samples were diluted in calibrator A up to ten percent (1:10), tested in duplicate, and the results compared to the predicted concentration. The statistical analysis shows that the assay is sufficiently linear.



COMPARATIVE STUDIES

The DBC Total Estrogens ELISA kit (y) was compared to Liquid Chromatography-Tandem Mass Spectrometry (LC-MS/MS (x). The comparison of 45 serum samples (between 20 and 4300 pg/mL) yielded the following linear regression results:
y = 1.004x - 44.3, r = 0.98

REFERENCE RANGES

Reference ranges were obtained from individuals from diverse races and without regard of menopausal status. Each laboratory shall establish their own range of reference values.

Group	N	95% Confidence Range (pg/mL)
Adult Males	120	31–167
Adult Females younger than 40 yrs.	135	36–284
Adult Females older than 60 yrs.	120	18–104

DBC-Diagnostics Biochem Canada Inc.
384 Neptune Crescent
London, Ontario, Canada N6M 1A1
Tel: (519) 681-8731
Fax: (519) 681-8734
e-mail: dbc@dbc-labs.com
www.dbc-labs.com
An ISO 13485 Registered Company

EMERGO EUROPE
Prinsessegracht 20
2514 AP The Hague
The Netherlands

SYMBOLS

CE European Comformity
IVD In vitro diagnostic device
Consult instructions for use
Contains sufficient for <n> tests
Storage Temperature
Legal Manufacturer
Use by
REF Catalogue Number
Authorized representative
LOT Lot number
X # Dilute 1: # Before use

FSH (Human) ELISA Kit

Catalog Number KA0213

96 assays

Version: 03

Intended for research use only

www.abnova.com

Table of Contents

Introduction

Intended Use

The FSH (Human) ELISA Kit is intended for the quantitative determination of follicle-stimulation hormone (FSH) concentration in human serum.

Background

Follicle-Stimulating Hormone (FSH) and Luteinizing Hormone (LH) are intimately involved in the control of the growth and reproductive activities of the gonadal tissues, which synthesize and secrete male and female sex hormones. The levels of circulating FSH and LH are controlled by these sex hormones through a negative feedback relationship.

FSH is a glycoprotein secreted by the basophilic cells of the anterior pituitary. Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), produced in the hypothalamus, controls the release of FSH from the anterior pituitary. Like other glycoproteins, such as LH, TSH, and HCG, FSH consists of subunits designated as alpha and beta. Hormones of this type have alpha subunits that are very similar structurally; therefore the biological and immunological properties are dependent on the unique beta subunits.

In the female, FSH stimulates the growth and maturation of ovarian follicles by acting directly on the receptors located on the granulosa cells; follicular steroidogenesis is promoted and LH production is stimulated. The LH produced then binds to the theca cells and stimulates steroidogenesis. Increased intraovarian estradiol production occurs as follicular maturation advances, thereupon stimulating increased FSH receptor activity and FSH follicular binding. FSH, LH, and estradiol are therefore intimately related in supporting ovarian recruitment and maturation in women.

FSH levels are elevated after menopause, castration, and in premature ovarian failure. The levels of FSH may be normalized through the administration of estrogens, which demonstrate a negative feedback mechanism. Abnormal relationships between FSH and LH and between FSH and estrogen have been linked to anorexia nervosa and polycystic ovarian disease. Although there are significant exceptions, ovarian failure is indicated when random FSH concentrations exceed 40 mIU/mL.

The growth of the seminiferous tubules and maintenance of spermatogenesis in men are regulated by FSH. However, androgens, unlike estrogens, do not lower FSH levels, therefore demonstrating a feedback relationship only with serum LH. For reasons not fully understood, azospermic and oligospermic males usually have elevated FSH levels. Tumors of the testes generally depress serum FSH concentrations. High levels of FSH in men may be found in primary testicular failure and Klinefelter syndrome. Elevated concentrations are also present in cases of starvation, renal failure, hyperthyroidism, and cirrhosis.

Principle of the Assay

The Abnova FSH EIA Test is based on a solid phase enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). The assay system utilizes a mouse monoclonal anti-α-FSH for solid phase (microtiter wells) immobilization, and mouse monoclonal anti-β –FSH antibody in the antibody-enzyme (horseradish peroxidase) conjugate solution. The test sample is allowed to react simultaneously with the antibodies, resulting in the FSH molecules being sandwiched between the solid phase and enzyme-linked antibodies. After a 45-minute incubation at room temperature, the wells are washed with water to remove unbound-labeled antibodies. A solution of TMB Reagent is added and incubated at room temperature for 20 minutes, resulting in the development of a blue color. The color development is stopped with the addition of Stop solution, and the color is changed to yellow and measured spectrophotometrically at 450 nm. The concentration of FSH is directly proportional to the color intensity of the test sample.

General Information

Materials Supplied

List of component

Component	Amount
Mouse monoclonal anti-α-FSH antibody coated microtiter	96 wells
Enzyme Conjugate Reagent	13 ml
FSH Reference Standard Set Contains 0, 5, 15, 50, 100, and 200 mIU/mL (WHO, 2nd IRP 78/549) human FSH.	Lyophilized, 1 set
TMB Reagent (One-Step)	11 ml
Stop Solution (1N HCl)	11 ml

Storage Instruction

Unopened test kit should be stored at 2-8℃ upon receipt and the microtiter plate should be kept in a sealed bag with desiccant to minimize exposure to damp air. Opened test kit will remain stable until the expiration date shown, provided it is stored as described above. A microtiter plate reader with a bandwidth of 10 nm or less and an optical density range of 0-2 OD or greater at 450 nm wavelength is acceptable for use in absorbance measurement.

Materials Required but Not Supplied

- ✓ Precision pipettes: 50 µl, 100 µl and 1.0 ml.
- ✓ Distilled water.
- ✓ Disposable pipette tips.
- ✓ Vortex mixer or equivalent.
- ✓ Absorbent paper or paper towel.
- ✓ A microtiter plate reader at 450nm wavelength, with a bandwidth of 10 nm or less and an optical density range of 0-2 OD or greater.
- ✓ Graph paper

Precautions for Use

- Limitation of procedures
- ✓ Serum samples demonstrating gross lipemia, gross hemolysis, or turbidity should not be used with this

test.

- ✓ The results obtained from the use of this kit should be used only as an adjunct to other diagnostic procedures and information available to the physician.

Assay Protocol

Reagent Preparation

- ✓ All reagents should be allowed to reach room temperature (18-25℃) before use.
- ✓ Reconstitute each lyophilized standard with 1.0 mL distilled water. Allow the reconstituted material to stand for at least 20 minutes and mix gently. Reconstituted standards will be stable for up to 30 days when stored sealed at 2-8℃.

Sample Preparation

Serum should be prepared from a whole blood specimen obtained by acceptable medical techniques. This kit is for use with serum samples without additives only.

Assay Procedure

1. Secure the desired number of coated wells in the holder.
2. Dispense 50µL of standards, specimens, and controls into appropriate wells.
3. Dispense 100µL of Enzyme Conjugate Reagent into each well.
4. Thoroughly mix for 30 seconds. It is very important to have a complete mixing in this setup.
5. Incubate at room temperature (18-25℃) for 45 minutes.
6. Remove the incubation mixture by flicking plate contents into a waste container.
7. Rinse and flick the microtiter wells 5 times with distilled or dionized water. (Please do not use tap water.)
8. Strike the wells sharply onto absorbent paper or paper towels to remove all residual water droplets.
9. Dispense 100µl of TMB Reagent into each well. Gently mix for 10 seconds.
10. Incubate at room temperature, in the dark, for 20 minutes.
11. Stop the reaction by adding 100µl of Stop Solution to each well.
12. Gently mix for 30 seconds. It is important to make sure that all of the blue color changes to yellow color completely.
13. Read the optical density at 450nm with a microtiter plate reader within 15 minutes.

Data Analysis

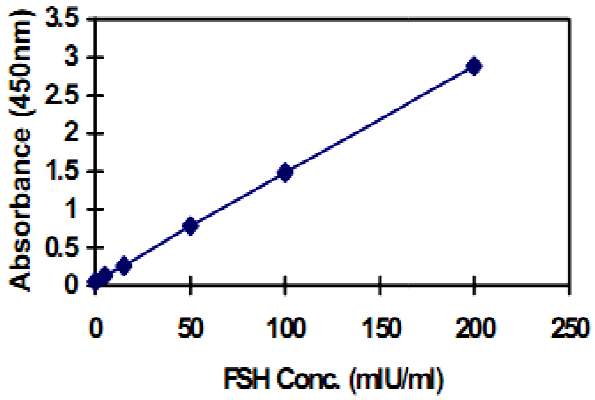
Calculation of Results

- ✓ Calculate the mean absorbance value (A_{450}) for each set of reference standards, specimens, controls and patient samples.
- ✓ Construct a standard curve by plotting the mean absorbance obtained from each reference standard against its concentration in mIU/ml on linear graph paper, with absorbance values on the vertical or Y-axis and concentrations on the horizontal or X-axis.
- ✓ Using the mean absorbance value for each sample, determine the corresponding concentration of FSH in mIU/ml from the standard curve.

Example of typical results:

Results of a typical standard run with optical density readings at 450nm shown in the Y axis against FSH concentrations shown in the X-axis. This standard curve is for the purpose of illustration only, and should not be used to calculate unknowns. Each user should obtain his or her own data and standard curve in each experiment.

FSH Standards (mIU/mL)	Absorbance (450 nm)
0	0.058
5	0.133
15	0.265
50	0.782
100	1.483
200	2.885



Performance Characteristics

- **Sensitivity**

Based on random selected outpatient clinical laboratory samples, the mean FSH values in males (N=100) and females (N=150) are 11 and 12 mIU/ml, respectively. The mean FSH values in postmenopausal (N=60) and pregnant females (N=60) are 94 and 1.0 mIU/ml, respectively. The minimum detectable concentration of FSH by this assay is estimated to be 2.5 mIU/ml.

Resources

References

- ✓ Marshall, J.C.: Clinic. In Endocrinol. Metab., 4, 545 (1975).
- ✓ Cohen, K.L.: Metabolism, 26, 1165 (1977).
- ✓ Rebar, R.W., Erickson, G.G. and Yen, S.S.C.: Fertil. Steril., 37, 35 (1982).
- ✓ Abraham, G.E., Ed.: Radioassay Systems in Clinic. Endocrinol., Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York (1981).
- ✓ Uotila, M., Ruoslahti, E. and Engvall, e., J. Immunol. Methods, 42, 11 (1981).

Plate Layout

12								
11								
10								
9								
8								
7								
6								
5								
4								
3								
2								
1								
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H

3. **Sensitivity**
The sensitivity was determined by calculating the mean plus 2SD of the standard zero point tested 20 times in the same run.

Serum	No. of Replicates	Mean ng/ml	Standard Deviation	Mean + 2SD (Sensitivity)
Zero Std	20	0.08	0.06	0.2 ng/ml

4. **Recovery**
Known quantities of hGH were added to a serum that contained a low concentration of hGH.

Expected Value(ng/ml)	Recovered (ng/ml)	Percentage of Recovery
17.7	17.4	98.3
8.9	9.3	104.4
4.2	4.4	95.4

5. **Linearity**
Two different patient samples were diluted with the "0" calibrator to 1:2, 1:4 and 1:8. hGH values were assayed and results were corrected with the dilution factor. The results of these dilution tests are as follows:

Serum	Original Value (ng/ml)	Percentage of Recovery		
		1:2	1:4	1:8
1	18	94.6	95.2	88.7
2	8.6	102.0	92.4	85.0

REFERENCES

1. L´opez-Guajardo CC; Armstrong LS; Jordan L; Staten NR; Krivi GG; Martinez AO; Haro LS. Generation, characterization and utilization of anti-human growth hormone 1-43, (hGH1-43), monoclonal antibodies in an ELISA. J Immunol Methods 1998; 215(1-2): 179-85.
2. Potter MA; Hymus S; Stockley T; Chang PL. Suppression of immunological response against a transgene product delivered from microencapsulated cells. Hum Gene Ther 1988; 9(9): 1275-82.
3. Strasburger CJ; Wu Z; Pflaum CD; Dressend¨orfer RA. Immunofunctional assay of human growth hormone (hGH) in serum: a possible consensus for quantitative hGH measurement. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996; 81(7): 2613-20.
4. Tsushima T; Katoh Y; Miyachi Y; Chihara K; Teramoto A; Irie M; Hashimoto Y. Serum concentration of 20K human growth hormone (20K hGH) measured by a specific enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. Study Group of 20K hGH. J Clin Endocrinol Metab, 1999; 84(1): 317-22.

2008-12-18

Cat#: HG048H (96 Tests)
For Order and Inquiries, please contact
Calbiotech Inc.,
10461 Austin Dr, Spring Valley, CA, 91978
Tel (619) 660-6162, Fax (619) 660-6970,
www.calbiotech.com

IVD 2° 8°

EC REP CEpartner4U, 3951DB; 13. NL.
tel: +31 (0)6.516.536.26)

CALBIOTECH
A life science company

Human Growth Hormone (hGH) ELISA

Catalog No. HG048H (96 Tests)

INTENDED USE

The Calbiotech, Inc. (CBI) hGH ELISA kit is used for the quantitative measurement of hGH in human serum or plasma.

SUMMARY AND EXPLANATION

Human Growth Hormone (hGH) is a polypeptide chain, composed of 191 aminoacids and with a molecular weight of 21,500. It is released by the anterior pituitary of both men and women. The secretion is stimulated 3-4 hours after a meal, about 1 hour after the beginning of sleep and after physical exercise.

Hyposecretion of hGH becomes apparent in infants a few months after birth and may result in dwarfism. In the opposite case, hypersecretion of hGH results in gigantism and may be due to hypophysic tumors. In adults, when epiphyses are closed, hypersecretion of hGH provokes an increase in volume of soft tissues (hands, feet, lips) and a proliferation of bones (acromegalysyndrome) and a limited tolerance of glucose.

hGH has profound effects on tissue growth and metabolism, which is thought to be mediated through GH-dependent production of Insulin-like Growth Factor (IGF) I and IGF-II, and their associated binding proteins. hGH apparently stimulates IGF production after binding to specific cell surface receptors in the liver. The major target tissues affected by the IGF-1 in combination with the hGH signal are muscle, cartilage, bone, liver, kidney, nerves, skin and lungs. Evaluation of hGH deficiency is complicated by the episodic nature of hGH secretion and low circulating levels. A variety of physiologic and pharmacologic stimuli have been used to stimulate pituitary hGH release during testing and failure to achieve a normal serum hGH level in response to at least 2 hGH stimulation or provocative tests is considered to be a diagnostic of hGH deficiency. The definition of a normal serum hGH response is controversial, although published values generally range from 5 to 10 ng/ml.

PRINCIPLE OF THE TEST

The DA hGH is a solid phase sandwich ELISA method. The samples, and anti-hGH-HRP conjugate are added to the wells coated with hGH MAb. hGH in the patient's serum binds to anti-hGH MAb on the well and the anti-HGH second antibody then binds to hGH. Unbound protein and HRP conjugate are washed off by wash buffer. Upon the addition of the substrate, the intensity of color is proportional to the concentration of hGH in the samples. A standard curve is prepared relating color intensity to the concentration of the hGH.

	MATERIALS PROVIDED	96 Tests
1.	Microwell coated with hGH MAb	12x8x1
2.	hGH Standard: 6 vials (ready to use)	0.7ml
3.	hGH Enzyme Conjugate: 1 bottle (ready to use)	12 ml
4.	TMB Substrate: 1 bottle (ready to use)	12ml
5.	Stop Solution: 1 bottle (ready to use)	12ml
6.	20X Wash concentrate: 1 bottle	25ml

MATERIALS NOT PROVIDED

1. Distilled or deionized water
2. precision pipettes
3. Disposable pipette tips
4. Micortiter well reader capable of reading absorbance at 450nm
5. Absorbance paper or paper towel
6. Graph paper

STORAGE AND STABILITY

1. Store the kit at 2 - 8° C.
2. Keep microwells sealed in a dry bag with desiccants.p
3. The reagents are stable until expiration of the kit.
4. Do not expose reagent to heat, sun, or strong light.

WARNINGS AND PRECAUTIONS

1. Potential biohazardous materials:
   The calibrator and controls contain human source components which have been tested and found non-reactive for hepatitis B surface antigen as well as HIV antibody with FDA licensed reagents. However, there is no test method that can offer complete assurance that HIV, Hepatitis B virus or other infectious agents are absent. These reagents should be handled at the Biosafety Level 2, as recommended in the Centers for Disease Control/National Institutes of Health manual, "Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories" 1984.
2. This test kit is USA FDA exempt product.
3. Do not pipette by mouth. Do not smoke, eat, or drink in the areas in which specimens or kit reagents are handled.
4. The components in this kit are intended for use as an integral unit. The components of different lots should not be mixed.
5. It is recommended that standards, control and serum samples be run in duplicate.
6. Optimal results will be obtained by strict adherence to this protocol. Accurate and precise pipetting, as well as following the exact time and temperature requirements prescribed are essential. Any deviation from this may yield invalid data.

SPECIMEN COLLECTION HANDLING

1. Collect blood specimens and separate the serum immediately.
2. Specimens may be stored refrigerated at (2-8° C) for 5 days. If storage time exceeds 5 days, store frozen at (-20° C) for up to one month.
3. Avoid multiple freeze-thaw cycles.
4. Prior to assay, frozen sera should be completely thawed and mixed well.
5. Do not use grossly lipemic specimens.

REAGENTS PREPARATION

Prepare 1X Wash buffer by adding the contents of the bottle (25 ml, 20X) to 475 ml of distilled or deionized water. Store at room temperature (18-26° C).

ASSAY PROCEDURE

Prior to assay, allow reagents to stand at room temperature.
Gently mix all reagents before use.

1. Place the desired number of coated strips into the holder
2. Pipet 50 µl of hGH standards, control and patient's sera.
3. Add 100 µl of hGH enzyme conjugate to all wells.
4. Cover the plate and incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature (18-26° C).
5. Remove liquid from all wells. Wash wells three times with 300 µl of 1X wash buffer. Blot on absorbent paper towels.
6. Add 100 µl of TMB substrate to all wells.
7. Incubate for 10 minutes at room temperature.
8. Add 50 µl of stop solution to all wells. Shake the plate gently to mix the solution.
9. Read absorbance on ELISA Reader at 450 nm within 15 minutes after adding the stopping solution.

CALCULATION OF RESULTS

The standard curve is constructed as follows:

1. Check hGH standard value on each standard vial. This value might vary from lot to lot. Make sure you check the value on every kit. See example of the standard attached.
2. To construct the standard curve, plot the absorbance for the hGH standards (vertical axis) versus the hGH standard concentrations (horizontal axis) on a linear graph paper. Draw the best curve through the points.
3. Read the absorbance for controls and each unknown sample from the curve. Record the value for each control or unknown sample.
4. Value above the highest point of the standard are retested after diluting with "0" standard.

Example of a Standard Curve

Standard	OD (450 nm)
Standard 1 (0 ng/ml)	0.025
Standard 2 (2.5 ng/ml)	0.199
Standard 3 (5 ng/ml)	0.359
Standard 4 (10 ng/ml)	0.709
Standard 5 (20 ng/ml)	1.287
Standard 6 (40 ng/ml)	2.430

EXPECTED VALUES

It is recommended that each laboratory establish its own normal ranges based on a representative sampling of the local population. The following values for hGH may be used as initial guideline ranges only:

Classification	Normal Range (ng/ml)
Adults	Less than 10 ng/ml
Children	Less than 20 ng/ml 7-10 ng/ml on two or more tests = impaired hGH secretion.

LIMITATIONS OF THE TEST

1. The test results obtained using this kit are for research use only and should be interpreted in relation to the patients history, physical findings and other diagnostic procedures.
2. Do not use sodium azide as preservative. Sodium azide inhibits HRP enzyme activities.

PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

1. **Correlation with a Reference ELISA kit:**
   A total of 128 sera were tested by this ELISA and a reference ELISA kit. Results were as follows:

Correlation	Slope	Intercept
0.94	0.93	0.38

2. **Precision**

Intra-Assay

Serum	No. of Replicates	Mean ng/ml	Standard Deviation	Coefficient of Variation (%)
1	16	17	0.92	5.41
2	16	9.7	0.51	5.25
3	16	4.5	0.27	6.00

Inter-assay

Serum	No. of Replicates	Mean ng/ml	Standard Deviation	Coefficient of Variation (%)
1	10	18.6	1.2	6.45
2	10	10.1	0.86	8.51
3	10	3.7	0.33	8.91

Human Glucagon (GCG) ELISA Kit

Catalog Number EHGCG (96 tests)

Rev. 6

Product description

The Human Glucagon (GCG) ELISA Kit is a solid-phase sandwich Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA) designed to detect and quantify the level of human glucagon in serum, plasma, and cell culture media.

Contents and storage

Upon receipt, store at 2-8°C for 6 months or -20°C for 1 year.

Components	Cat. No. EHGCG (96 tests)
Human Glucagon Antibody Coated wells, 96-well plate	1 plate
Human Glucagon Biotin Conjugate	2 vials
Human Glucagon Standard, recombinant human glucagon	2 vials
Wash Buffer Concentrate (20X)	25 mL
Assay Diluent (5X)	15 mL
Streptavidin-HRP (500X)	0.2 mL
TMB Substrate	12 mL
Stop Solution	8 mL
Adhesive Plate Covers	2

Materials required but not supplied

- Distilled or deionized water
- Microtiter plater reader with software capable of measuring at 450 nm
- Plate washer-automated or manual (manifold dispenser)
- Calibrated adjustable precision pipettes and glass or plastic tubes for diluting solutions

Procedural guidelines

- Review the **Procedural guidelines** and **Plate washing directions** in the *ELISA Technical Guide* at **thermofisher.com** for details prior to starting the procedure.
- Reagents are lot-specific. Do not mix or interchange different reagent lots from various kit lots.

Prepare 1X Wash Buffer

1. Allow Wash Buffer Concentrate (20X) to reach room temperature and mix to redissolve any precipitated salts.
2. Dilute 20 mL of the Wash Buffer Concentrate into 380 mL of deionized or distilled water. Label as 1X Wash Buffer.
3. Store the concentrate and 1X Wash Buffer in the refrigerator. Use the diluted buffer within one month.

Prepare diluent

- Assay Diluent should be diluted 5-fold with deionized or distilled water before use.

Prepare biotin conjugate

1. Briefly spin down the biotin conjugate before use.
2. Add 100 µL of 1X Assay Diluent into the vial to prepare a biotin conjugate concentrate.
3. Pipette up and down to mix gently (the concentrate can be stored at 4°C for 5 days).
4. The biotin conjugate concentrate should be diluted 80-fold with 1X Assay Diluent and used in step 2 of ELISA procedure.

Sample preparation guidelines

- Collect samples in pyrogen/endotoxin-free tubes.
- Freeze samples after collection if samples will not be tested immediately. Avoid multiple freeze-thaw cycles of frozen samples. Thaw completely and mix well (do not vortex) prior to analysis.
- Avoid the use of hemolyzed or lipemic sera. If large amounts of particulate matter are present in the sample, centrifuge or filter sample prior to analysis.

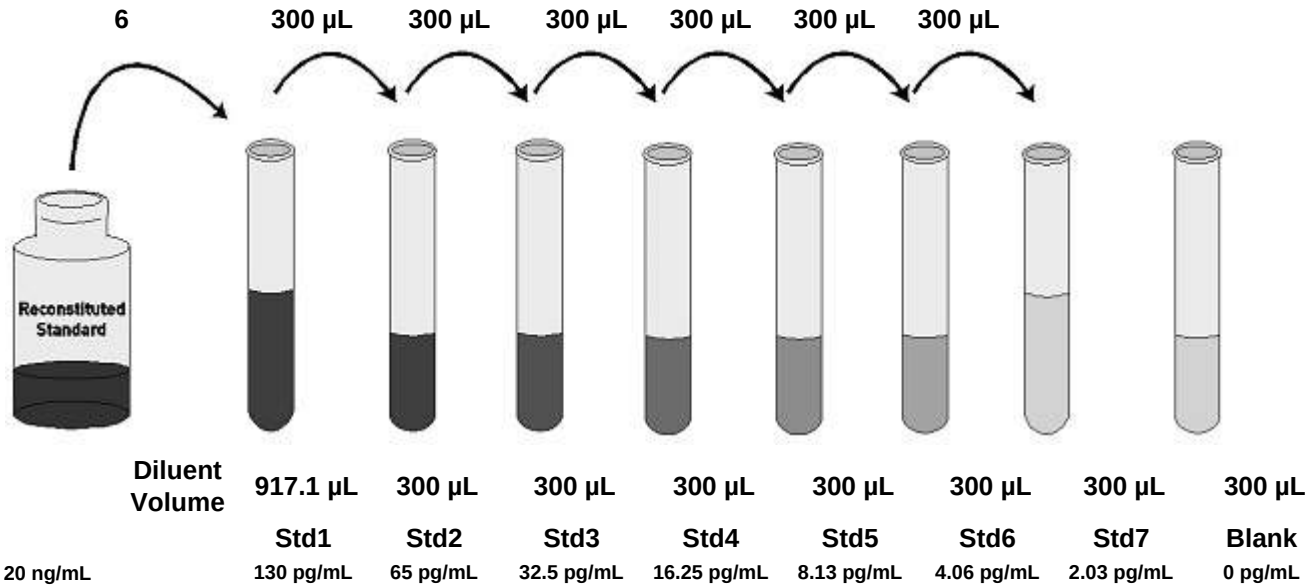
Pre-dilute samples

- 1X Assay Diluent should be used for dilution of serum, plasma, and cell culture supernatant samples.
- Dilute **serum and plasma** 2-fold.
- Because conditions may vary, it is recommended that each investigator determine the optimal dilution to be used for each application.

Dilute standards

Note: Use glass or plastic tubes for diluting standards.

1. Briefly spin down a vial of lyophilized standard.
2. Add 1ml 1X Assay Diluent (Assay Diluent should be diluted 5-fold with deionized or distilled water before use) into the lyophilized standard vial to prepare a 20 ng/mL standard solution. Dissolve the powder thoroughly by gentle mixing. Add 6µL of Glucagon standard solution from the vial of reconstituted standard, into a tube with 917.1µL 1X Assay Diluent to prepare a 130 pg/mL standard solution. Pipette 300 µL 1X Assay Diluent into each tube. Use the 130 pg/mL standard solution to produce a dilution series (shown below). Mix each tube thoroughly before the next transfer. 1X Assay Diluent serves as the zero standard (0 pg/mL).



Prepare 1X Streptavidin-HRP solution

Note: Prepapre the Streptavidin-HRP within 15 minutes of usage.

1. Briefly spin the Streptavidin-HRP and pipette up and down to mix gently before use, as precipitates may form during storage.
2. Dilute Streptavidin-HRP 500-fold with 1X Assay Diluent.
3. Do not store diluted solution for future use.

Perform ELISA (Total assay time: 4 hours and 45 minutes)

Allow all reagents to reach room temperature before use. Mix all liquid reagents prior to use.

IMPORTANT! Perform a standard curve with each assay.

Determine the number of 8-well strips required for the assay. Insert the strips in the frames for use. Re-bag any unused strips and frames, and store at 2 to 8°C for future use.

1 **Bind antigen**

a. For the standard curve, add 100 µL of standards to the appropriate wells (see Dilute standards). For samples, add 100 µL of diluted samples (see Dilute samples) to the wells.

b. Cover wells and incubate for 2.5 hours at room temperature or over night at 4°C with gentle shaking.

c. Discard the solution and wash 4 times with 1X Wash Buffer. Wash by filling each well with Wash Buffer (300 µL) using a multi-channel Pipette or autowasher. Complete removal of liquid at each step is essential for good performance. After the last wash, remove any remaining Wash Buffer by aspirating or decanting. Invert the plate and blot it against clean paper towels.

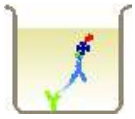
2 **Add biotin conjugate**

a. Add 100 µL of prepared biotin conjugate (see Prepare biotin conjugate) to each well.

b. Incubate for 1 hour at room temperature with gentle shaking.

c. Discard the solution. Repeat the wash as in step 3.

3 **Add Streptavidin-HRP**



a. Add 100 µL of prepared Streptavidin-HRP solution (see Prepare Streptavidin-HRP solution) to each well.

b. Incubate for 45 minutes at room temperature with gentle shaking.

c. Discard the solution. Repeat the wash as in step 3.

4 **Add TMB substrate**

a. Add 100 µL of TMB Substrate to each well. The substrate will begin to turn blue.

b. Incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature **in the dark** with gentle shaking.

5 **Add stop solution**

Add 50 µL of Stop Solution to each well. Tap the side of the plate gently to mix. The solution in the well changes from blue to yellow.

Read the plate and generate the standard curve

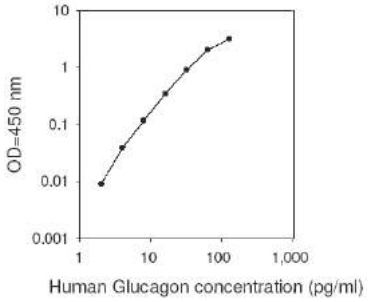
1. Read the absorbance at 450 nm. Read the plate within 30 minutes after adding the Stop Solution.
2. Use curve-fitting software to generate the standard curve. A four parameter algorithm provides the best standard curve fit. Optimally, the background absorbance may be subtracted from all data points, including standards, unknowns and controls, prior to plotting.
3. Read the concentrations for unknown samples and control from the standard curve. Multiple value(s) obtained for sample(s) by the appropriate factor to correct for the sample dilution.

Note: Dilute samples producing signals greater than that of the higest standard in Standard Diluent Buffer and reanalyze. Multiply the concentration by the appropriate dilution factor.

Performance characteristics

Standard curve (example)

These standard curves are for demonstration only. A standard curve must be run with each assay.



Intra-assay precision

To determine intra-assay precision, two standard curves and 3 samples for each standard curve are run. The standard curve concentration points as well as the samples are tested in duplicates on a single plate. Two different concentration values are obtained for each sample, using the two separate standard curves. The two concentration values for each sample is compared to each other using the CV% calculation.

Intra-Assay CV%: <10%

Inter-assay precision

To evaluate inter-assay precision, the second standard curve is tested on a separate plate along with the second set of samples.

Inter-Assay CV%: <12%

Recovery

Sample Type	Average % Recovery	Range (%)
Serum	89	73-104
Plasma	86	74-99
Cell Culture Media	97	88-106

Specificity

This ELISA pair antibody detects human Glucagon. Other species not determined.

Linearity of dilution

The serum, plasma, and cell culture media samples were spiked with recombinant human glucagon, serially diluted in sample diluent and evaluated. Observed values were compared to expected values to calculate percent recovery and demonstrate the dilution linearity of the assay.

Sample Type	Average % Expected		Range (%)	
	1:2 Dilution	1:4 Dilution	1:2 Dilution	1:4 Dilution
Serum	100	72	92-108	67-78
Plasma	97	75	89-105	70-79
Cell Culture Media	99	72	91-108	67-78

Sensitivity

The minimum detecable dose of human glucagon is 2.5 pg/mL. This was determined by assaying replicates of zero and the standard curve. The mean signal of zero + 2 standard deviations read in dose from the standard curve is the LLD. This value is the smallest dose that is not zero with 95% confidence.

Limited product warranty

Life Technologies Corporation and/or its affiliate(s) warrant their products as set forth in the Life Technologies' General Terms and Conditions of Sale found on Life Technologies' website at **www.thermofisher.com/us/en/home/global/terms-andconditions.html.** If you have any questions, please contact Life Technologies at **www.thermofisher.com/support.**

Product label explanation of symbols and warnings

Catalog Number

Batch Code


Temperature limitation


Use by


Manufacturer


Consult instructions for use


Caution, consult accompanying documents

For support visit **thermofisher.com/support** or contact **techsupport@lifetech.com.**
thermofisher.com
12-Apr-21

ThermoFisher SCIENTIFIC

Corticosterone ELISA Kit

Assaypro LLC
30 Triad South Drive
St. Charles, MO 63304
T (636) 447-9175
F (636) 447-9475
www.assaypro.com

For any questions regarding troubleshooting or performing the assay, please contact our support team at support@assaypro.com.

Thank you for choosing Assaypro.

Assay Summary

Add 25 µl of standard/samples
and 25 µl of biotinylated protein per well.
Incubate 2 hours.

Wash, then add 50 µl of SP per well.
Incubate 30 minutes.

Wash, then add 50 µl of
Chromogen Substrate per well.
Incubate 12 minutes.

Add 50 µl of Stop Solution per well.
Read at 450 nm immediately.

Assay Template

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
A												
B												
C												
D												
E												
F												
G												
H												

AssayMax Corticosterone ELISA Kit

Catalog No. EC3001-1
Sample Insert/Reference Only

Introduction

Corticosterone is the adrenal steroid, the major glucocorticoid. Glucocorticoid hormones are also known as corticosteroid hormones and are synthesized mainly in the adrenal cortex; however, more recently the enzymes involved in their synthesis have been found in a variety of cells and tissues, including the heart. The effects of these hormones are mediated via both cytoplasmic mineralocorticoid receptors (MRs) and glucocorticoid receptors (GRs), which act as ligand-inducible transcription factor (1). Corticosterone has profound effect on the structure and function of the hippocampus (2, 3). Brain corticosterone action through the glucocorticoid receptor may involve memory storage (4). Emotional stress might cause increases in plasma corticosterone (5).

Principle of the Assay

The AssayMax Corticosterone ELISA kit is designed for detection of corticosterone in plasma, serum, urine, milk, saliva, and cell culture supernatant. This assay employs a quantitative competitive enzyme immunoassay technique that measures corticosterone in less than 3 hours. A polyclonal antibody specific for corticosterone has been pre-coated onto a 96-well microplate with removable strips. Corticosterone in standards and samples is competed with a biotinylated corticosterone sandwiched by the immobilized antibody and streptavidin-peroxidase conjugate. All unbound material is then washed away and a peroxidase enzyme substrate is added. The color development is stopped and the intensity of the color is measured.

Caution and Warning

- **Prepare all reagents (working diluent buffer, wash buffer, standards, biotinylated protein, and SP conjugate) as instructed, prior to running the assay.**

- **Prepare all samples prior to running the assay. The dilution factors for the samples are suggested in this protocol. However, the user should determine the optimal dilution factor.**
- **Spin down the SP conjugate vial before opening and using contents.**
- This kit is for research use only.
- The kit should not be used beyond the expiration date.
- The Stop Solution is an acidic solution.

Reagents

- **Corticosterone Microplate:** A 96 well polystyrene microplate (12 strips of 8 wells) coated with a polyclonal antibody against corticosterone.
- **Sealing Tapes:** Each kit contains 3 precut, pressure sensitive sealing tapes, which can be cut to fit the format of the individual assay.
- **Corticosterone Standard:** Corticosterone in a buffered protein base (100 ng/ml, 0.5 ml).
- **Biotinylated Corticosterone:** 1 vial, lyophilized.
- **EIA Diluent Concentrate (10x)**: A 10-fold concentrated buffered protein base (20 ml).
- **Wash Buffer Concentrate (20x)**: A 20-fold concentrated buffered surfactant (30 ml).
- **Streptavidin-Peroxidase Conjugate (SP Conjugate, 100x)**: A 100-fold concentrate (80 µl).
- **Chromogen Substrate**: A ready-to-use stabilized peroxidase chromogen substrate tetramethylbenzidine (8 ml).
- **Stop Solution**: A 0.5 N hydrochloric acid to stop the chromogen substrate reaction (12 ml).

Storage Condition

- Store components of the kit at 2-8°C or -20°C upon arrival up to the expiration date.
- Store standard and SP Conjugate at -20°C.
- Store Microplate, Diluent Concentrate (10x), Wash Buffer, Stop Solution, and Chromogen Substrate at 2-8°C.

- Unused microplate wells may be returned to the foil pouch with the desiccant packs and resealed. May be stored for up to 30 days in a vacuum desiccator.
- Diluent (1x) may be stored for up to 30 days at 2-8°C.
- Store biotinylated protein at 2-8°C before reconstituting with diluent and at -20°C after reconstitution.

Other Supplies Required

- Microplate reader capable of measuring absorbance at 450 nm.
- Pipettes (1-20 µl, 20-200 µl, 200-1000 µl and multiple channel).
- Deionized or distilled reagent grade water.

Sample Collection, Preparation and Storage

- **Plasma:** Collect plasma using one-tenth volume of 0.1 M sodium citrate as an anticoagulant. Centrifuge samples at 3000 x *g* for 10 minutes. Dilute human plasma 1:10, rat plasma 1:200, and mouse plasma 1:200 into EIA Diluent and assay. The undiluted samples can be stored at -20°C or below for up to 3 months. Avoid repeated freeze-thaw cycles. (EDTA or Heparin can also be used as an anticoagulant).
- **Serum:** Samples should be collected into a serum separator tube. After clot formation, centrifuge samples at 3000 x *g* for 10 minutes and remove serum. Dilute human serum 1:10, rat serum 1:200, and mouse serum 1:200 into EIA Diluent and assay. The undiluted samples can be stored at -20°C or below for up to 3 months. Avoid repeated freeze-thaw cycles.
- **Cell Culture Supernatants:** Centrifuge cell culture media at 3000 x *g* for 10 minutes to remove debris. Collect supernatants and assay. The undiluted samples can be stored at -20°C or below for up to 3 months. Avoid repeated freeze-thaw cycles.
- **Urine:** Collect urine using sample pot. Centrifuge samples at 800 x *g* for 10 minutes. Dilute human urine 1:10, rat urine 1:20, and mouse urine 1:20 into EIA Diluent and assay. Store samples at -20°C or below for up to 3 months. Avoid repeated freeze-thaw cycles.
- **Saliva:** Collect human saliva using sample tube. Centrifuge samples at 800 x *g* for 10 minutes and assay. Store samples at -20°C or below for up to 3 months. Avoid repeated freeze-thaw cycles.

- **Milk:** Collect human milk using sample tube. Centrifuge samples at 800 x *g* for 10 minutes and assay. Store samples at -20°C or below for up to 3 months. Avoid repeated freeze-thaw cycles.

Reagent Preparation

- Freshly dilute all reagents and bring all reagents to room temperature before use.
- **EIA Diluent Concentrate (10x):** If crystals have formed in the concentrate, mix gently until the crystals have completely dissolved. Dilute the EIA Diluent 1:10 with reagent grade water. Store for up to 30 days at 2-8°C.
- **Standard Curve:** Allow the standard to warm to room temperature prior to making dilutions. Prepare duplicate or triplicate standard points by serially diluting the standard solution (100 ng/ml) 1:4 with EIA Diluent to produce 25, 6.25, 1.563, and 0.391 ng/ml solutions. EIA Diluent serves as the zero standard (0 ng/ml). Any remaining solution should be frozen at -20°C and used within 60 days.

Standard Point	Dilution	[Cort] (ng/ml)
P1	Standard (100 ng/ml)	100.00
P2	1 part P1 + 3 parts EIA Diluent	25.00
P3	1 part P2 + 3 parts EIA Diluent	6.250
P4	1 part P3 + 3 parts EIA Diluent	1.563
P5	1 part P4 + 3 parts EIA Diluent	0.391
P6	EIA Diluent	0.000

- **Biotinylated Corticosterone (2x):** Dilute Biotinylated Corticosterone with 4 ml EIA Diluent to produce a 2-fold stock solution. Allow the biotin to sit for 10 minutes with gentle agitation prior to making dilutions. The stock solution should be further diluted 1:2 with EIA Diluent. Any remaining solution should be frozen at -20°C and used within 60 days.
- **Wash Buffer Concentrate (20x):** If crystals have formed in the concentrate, mix gently until the crystals have completely dissolved. Dilute the Wash Buffer Concentrate 1:20 with reagent grade water.

- **SP Conjugate (100x):** Spin down the SP Conjugate briefly and dilute the desired amount of the conjugate 1:100 with EIA Diluent. Any remaining solution should be frozen at -20°C.

Assay Procedure

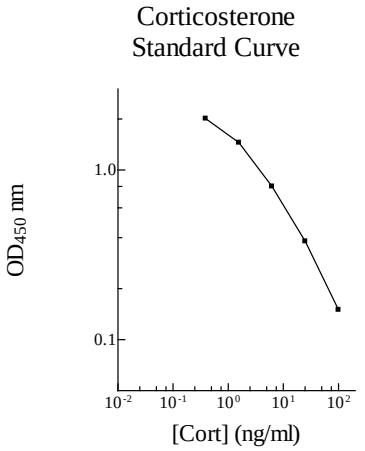
- Prepare all reagents, working standards and samples as instructed. Bring all reagents to room temperature before use. The assay is performed at room temperature (20-30°C).
- Remove excess microplate strips from the plate frame and return them immediately to the foil pouch with desiccants inside. Reseal the pouch securely to minimize exposure to water vapor and store in a vacuum desiccator.
- Add 25 µl of standard and/or sample per well, and immediately add 25 µl of Biotinylated Corticosterone to each well (on top of the standard or sample). Cover wells with a sealing tape and incubate for 2 hours at room temperature. Start the timer after the last sample addition.
- Wash five times with 200 µl of Wash Buffer manually. Invert the plate each time and decant the contents; hit 4-5 times on absorbent material to completely remove the liquid. If using a machine, wash six times with 300 µl of Wash Buffer and then invert the plate, decanting the contents; hit 4-5 times on absorbent material to completely remove the liquid.
- Add 50 µl of Streptavidin-Peroxidase conjugate to each well and incubate for 30 minutes. Turn on the microplate reader and set up the program in advance.
- Wash the microplate as described above.
- Add 50 µl of Chromogen Substrate per well and incubate for about 12 minutes or until the optimal blue color density develops. Gently tap plate to ensure thorough mixing and break the bubbles in the well with pipette tip.
- Add 50 µl of Stop Solution to each well. The color will change from blue to yellow.
- Read the absorbance on a microplate reader at a wavelength of 450 nm immediately. If wavelength correction is available, subtract readings at 570 nm from those at 450 nm to correct optical imperfections. Otherwise, read the plate at 450 nm only. Please note that some unstable black particles may be generated at high concentration points after stopping the reaction for about 10 minutes, which will reduce the readings.

Data Analysis

- Calculate the mean value of the duplicate or triplicate readings for each standard and sample.
- To generate a standard curve, plot the graph using the standard concentrations on the x-axis and the corresponding mean 450 nm absorbance on the y-axis. The best-fit line can be determined by regression analysis using four-parameter or log-log logistic curve-fit.
- Determine the unknown sample concentration from the standard curve and multiply the value by the dilution factor.

Standard Curve

- The curve is provided for illustration only. A standard curve should be generated each time the assay is performed.



Performance Characteristics

- The minimum detectable dose of corticosterone is typically ~0.3 ng/ml.
- Intra-assay and inter-assay coefficients of variation were 5.0 % and 7.2 % respectively.

Linearity

	Average Percentage of Expected Value	
Sample Dilution	**Human Plasma**	**Human Serum**
No dilution	107%	106%
1:5	98%	93%
1:10	95%	94%

Recovery

Standard Added Value	0.5 - 25 ng/ml
Recovery %	84 - 112%
Average Recovery %	95 %

Reference Value

- The normal human plasma levels of corticosterone are 10-20 ng/ml.

Cross-Reactivity

Name	% Cross Reactivity
PROGESTERONE	< 2%
ALLOPREGNANOLONE	< 0.1%
CORTEXOLONE	< 1%
DEOXYCORTICOSTERONE	< 30%
CORTISONE	None
CORTEXOLONE HEMISUCCINATE	None
CORTICOSTERONE	100%
6-KETO-17β-ESTRADIOL	None
5-ANDROSTEN-3β-OL-7, 17-DIONE	None
6-KETO-17α-ESTRADIOL	None
3-KETO-5α, 16-ANDROSTENE	None
4-ANDROSTEN-17α-OL-3-ONE	None
ALDOSTERONE	< 2%
ETHYNYLESTRADIOL	None
6-KETOESTRIOL	None
6-KETOESTRONE	None
17β-HYDROXY-4-ANDROSTENE-3, 11-DIONE	< 0.1%
CORTISONE Acetate	None
ALDOSTERONE 21-HEMISUCCINATE	< 0.3%
4-PREGNEN-17, 20β- DIOL-3-ONE	< 0.2%
11α-HYDROXYTESTOSTERONE	None

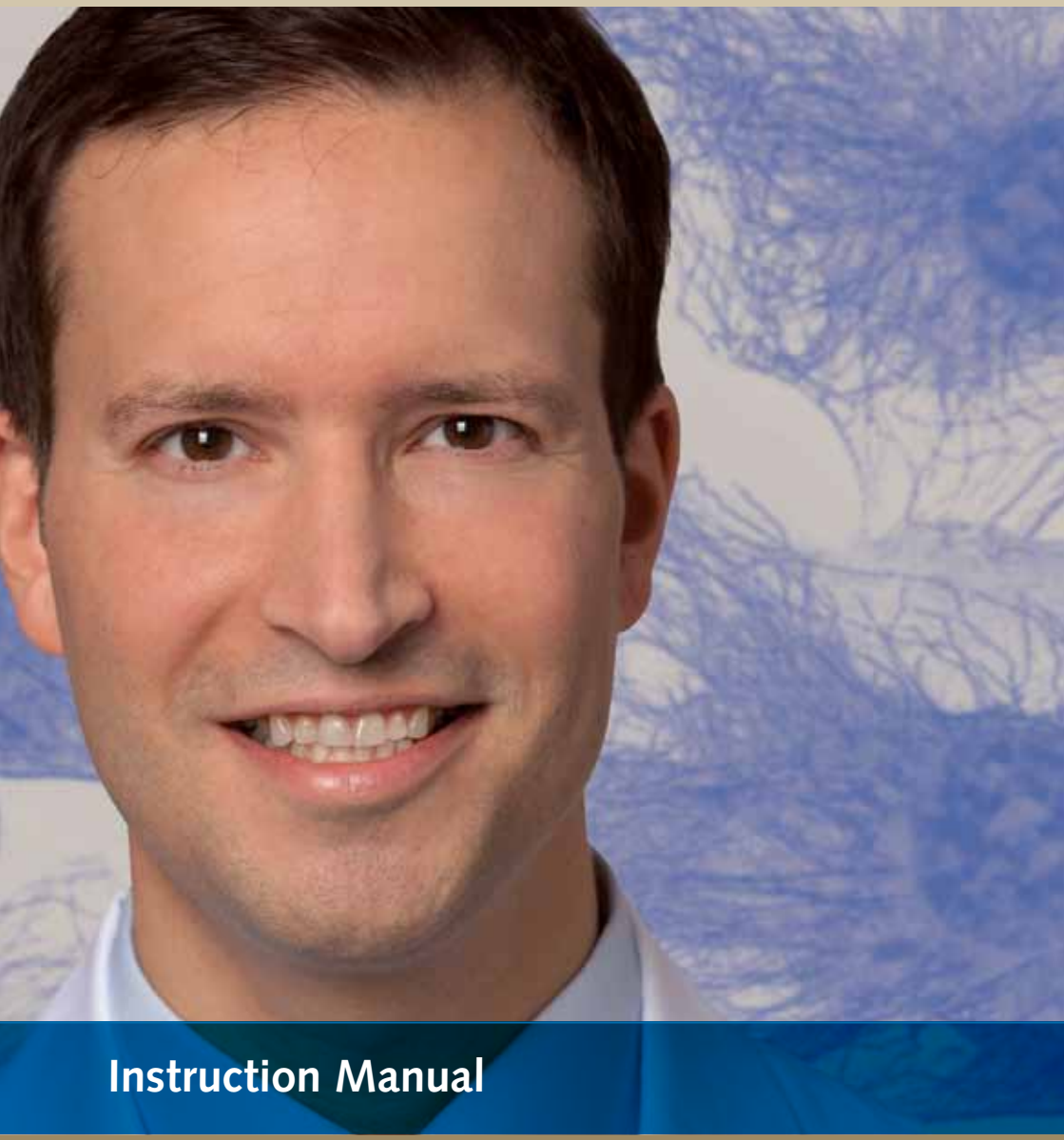
20α-HYDROXYPROGESTERONE	None
6β-HYDROXYPROGESTERONE	< 0.1%
HYDROCORTISONE	None
17-HYDROXYPROGESTERONE	< 0.1%
CORTISOL	< 0.1%

References

(1) Sheppard KE. (2003) Vitam *Horm* 66:77-112
(2) Schaaf MJ *et. al.* (2000) *Stress* 3(3):201-8
(3) Herbert J. (1998) *Exp Gerontol* 33(7-8): 713-27
(4) Sandi C. (1998) *Neural Plast* 6(3): 41-52
(5) Tanaka M. (1999) *Ind Health* 37(2): 143-56

Version 8.8

Human Insulin ELISA Kit



Instruction Manual

PromoKine

Contents

Introduction

The PromoKine Human Insulin ELISA (Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay) kit is an *in vitro* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for the quantitative measurement of human Insulin and Proinsulin in serum, plasma, and cell culture supernatants. This assay employs an antibody specific for human Insulin coated on a 96-well plate. Standards and samples are pipetted into the wells and Insulin present in a sample is bound to the wells by the immobilized antibody. The wells are washed and biotinylated anti-human Insulin antibody is added. After washing away unbound biotinylated antibody, HRP-conjugated streptavidin is pipetted to the wells. The wells are again washed, a TMB substrate solution is added to the wells and color develops in proportion to the amount of Insulin bound. The Stop Solution changes the color from blue to yellow, and the intensity of the color is measured at 450 nm.

Reagents

Component	Size / Description	Storage/Stability After Preparation
Insulin Microplate (Item A)	96 wells (12 strips x 8 wells) coated with anti-Human Insulin.	1 month at 4°C*
Wash Buffer Concentrate (20X) (Item B)	25 ml of 20X concentrated solution.	1 month at 4°C
Standard Protein (Item C)	2 vials of Human Insulin. 1 vial is enough to run each standard in duplicate.	1 week at -80°C
Detection Antibody Insulin (Item F)	2 vials of biotinylated anti-Human Insulin. Each vial is enough to assay half the microplate.	5 days at 4°C
HRP-Streptavidin Concentrate (Item G)	200 µl 500X concentrated HRP-conjugated streptavidin.	Do not store and reuse.
TMB One-Step Substrate Reagent (Item H)	12 ml of 3,3,5,5'-tetramethyl-benzidine (TMB) in buffer solution.	N/A
Stop Solution (Item I)	8 ml of 0.2 M sulfuric acid.	N/A
Assay Diluent A (Item D)	30 ml of diluent buffer, 0.09% sodium azide as preservative.	N/A
Assay Diluent B (Item E)	15 ml of 5X concentrated buffer.	1 month at 4°C

*Return unused wells to the pouch containing desiccant pack, reseal along entire edge.

Storage

The entire kit may be stored at -20°C for up to 1 year from the date of shipment. Avoid repeated freeze-thaw cycles. The kit may be stored at 4°C for up to 6 months. For extended storage, it is recommended to store at -80°C. For prepared reagent storage, see table above.

Additional Materials Required

- Microplate reader capable of measuring absorbance at 450 nm.
- Precision pipettes to deliver 2 µl to 1 ml volumes.
- Adjustable 1-25 ml pipettes for reagent preparation.
- 100 ml and 1 liter graduated cylinders.
- Absorbent paper.
- Distilled or deionized water.
- Log-log graph paper or computer and software for ELISA data analysis.
- Tubes to prepare standard or sample dilutions.

Reagent Preparation

1. Bring all reagents and samples to room temperature (18-25°C) before use.

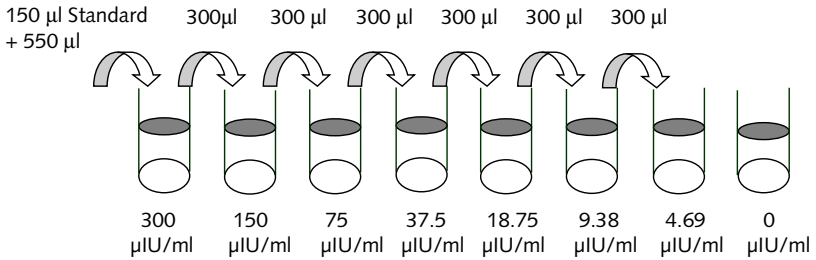
2. Assay Diluent B (Item E) should be diluted 5-fold with deionized or distilled water before use.

3. Sample dilution: If your samples need to be diluted, Assay Diluent A (Item D) should be used for dilution of serum/plasma samples. 1x Assay Diluent B (Item E) should be used for dilution of cell culture supernatants.

   Suggested dilution for normal serum/plasma: 2-10 fold*.

   *Please note that levels of the target protein may vary between different specimens. Optimal dilution factors for each sample must be determined by the investigator.

4. Preparation of standard: Briefly spin the vial of Item C and then add 400 µl Assay Diluent A (for serum/plasma samples) or 1x Assay Diluent B (for cell culture supernatants) into Item C vial to prepare a 1,400 µIU/ml standard. Dissolve the powder thoroughly by a gentle mix. Add 150 µl Insulin standard (1,400 µIU/ml) from the vial of Item C, into a tube with 550 µl Assay Diluent A or 1x Assay Diluent B to prepare a 300 µIU/ml standard solution. Pipette 300 µl Assay Diluent A or 1x Assay Diluent B into each tube. Use the 300 µIU/ml standard solution to produce a dilution series (shown below). Mix each tube thoroughly before the next transfer. Assay Diluent A or 1x Assay Diluent B serves as the zero standard (0 µIU/ml).



5. If the Wash Concentrate (20x) (Item B) contains visible crystals, warm to room temperature and mix gently until dissolved. Dilute 20 ml of Wash Buffer Concentrate into deionized or distilled water to yield 400 ml of 1x Wash Buffer.

6. Briefly spin the Detection Antibody vial (Item F) before use. Add 100 µl of 1x Assay Diluent B into the vial to prepare a detection antibody concentrate. Pipette up and down to mix gently (the concentrate can be stored at 4°C for 5 days). The detection antibody concentrate should be diluted 80-fold with 1x Assay Diluent B and used in step 4 of Part VI Assay Procedure.

7. Briefly spin the HRP-Streptavidin concentrate vial (Item G) and pipette up and down to mix gently before use. HRP-Streptavidin concentrate should be diluted 500-fold with 1x Assay Diluent B.

For example: Briefly spin the vial (Item G) and pipette up and down to mix gently . Add 30 µl of HRP-Streptavidin concentrate into a tube with 15 ml 1x Assay Diluent B to prepare a final 500-fold diluted HRP-Streptavidin solution (don't store the diluted solution for next day use). Mix well.

Assay Procedure

1. Bring all reagents and samples to room temperature (18 - 25°C) before use. It is recommended that all standards and samples be run at least in duplicate.

2. Add 100 µl of each standard (see Reagent Preparation step 2) and sample into appropriate wells. Cover well and incubate for 2.5 hours at room temperature or over night at 4°C with gentle shaking.

3. Discard the solution and wash 4 times with 1x Wash Solution. Wash by filling each well with Wash Buffer (300 µl) using a multi-channel Pipette or autowasher. Complete removal of liquid at each step is essential to good performance. After the last wash, remove any remaining Wash Buffer by aspirating or decanting. Invert the plate and blot it against clean paper towels.

4. Add 100 µl of 1x prepared biotinylated antibody (Reagent Preparation step 6) to each well. Incubate for 1 hour at room temperature with gentle shaking.

5. Discard the solution. Repeat the wash as in step 3.

6. Add 100 µl of prepared Streptavidin solution (see Reagent Preparation step 7) to each well. Incubate for 45 minutes at room temperature with gentle shaking.

7. Discard the solution. Repeat the wash as in step 3.

8. Add 100 µl of TMB One-Step Substrate Reagent (Item H) to each well. Incubate for 30 minutes at room temperature in the dark with gentle shaking.

9. Add 50 µl of Stop Solution (Item I) to each well. Read at 450 nm immediately.

Assay Procedure Summary

1. Prepare all reagents, samples and standards as instructed.

⇩

2. Add 100 µl standard or sample to each well.
   Incubate 2.5 hours at room temperature or over night at 4°C.

⇩

3. Add 100 µl prepared biotin antibody to each well.
   Incubate 1 hour at room temperature.

⇩

4. Add 100 µl prepared Streptavidin solution.
   Incubate 45 minutes at room temperature.

⇩

5. Add 100 µl TMB One-Step Substrate Reagent to each well.
   Incubate 30 minutes at room temperature.

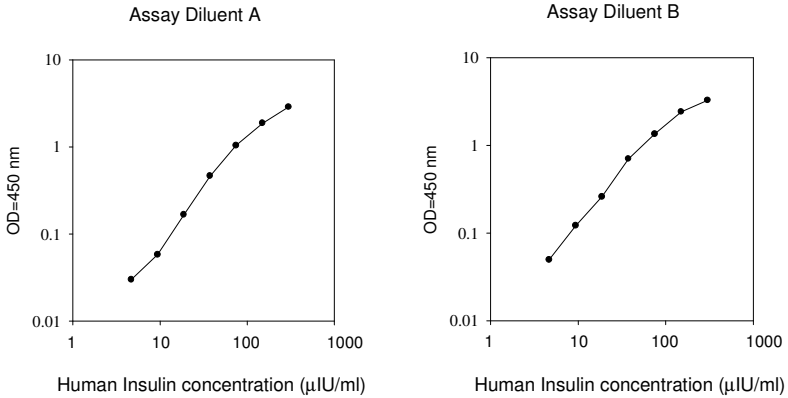
⇩

6. Add 50 µl Stop Solution to each well.
   Read at 450 nm immediately.

Calculation of Results

Calculate the mean absorbance for each set of duplicate standards, controls and samples, and subtract the average zero standard optical density. Plot the standard curve on log-log graph paper or using Sigma plot software, with standard concentration on the x-axis and absorbance on the y-axis. Draw the best-fit straight line through the standard points.

A. TYPICAL DATA
These standard curves are for demonstration only. A standard curve must be run with each assay.



B. SENSITIVITY
The minimum detectable dose of Insulin is typically less than 4 µIU/ml.
Minimum detectable dose is defined as the analyte concentration resulting in an absorbance that is 2 standard deviations higher than that of the blank (diluent buffer).

C. RECOVERY
Recovery was determined by spiking various levels of human Insulin into human serum, plasma and cell culture media. Mean recoveries are as follows:

Sample Type	Average % Recovery	Range (%)
Serum	91.40	83-102
Plasma	99.03	73-128
Cell culture media	76.16	68-88

D. LINEARITY

Sample Type	Serum	Plasma	Culture Media
1:2 Average % of Expected Range (%)	100.2 90-108	109.5 102-128	86.69 72-103
1:4 Average % of Expected Range (%)	122.1 112-135	131.7 121-140	82.43 68-90

E. REPRODUCIBILITY
Intra-Assay: CV<10%
Inter-Assay: CV<12%

Specificity

Detect Insulin and Proinsulin.

Cross Reactivity: This ELISA kit shows no cross-reactivity with the following cytokines tested: human BDNF, BLC, ENA-78, IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-2, IL-3, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-11, IL-12 p70, IL-12 p40, IL-13, IL-15, IL-309, IP-10, G-CSF, GM-CSF, IFN-γ, Leptin (OB), MCP-1, MCP-2, MCP-3, MDC, MIP-1α, MIP-1 β, MIP-1 , PARC, PDGF, RANTES, SCF, TARC, TGF-β, TIMP-1, TNF-α, TNF-β, TPO, VEGF.

Troubleshooting Guide

Problem	Cause	Solution
Poor standard curve	Inaccurate pipetting	Check pipettes
	Improper standard dilution	Ensure a brief spin of Item C and dissolve the powder thoroughly by a gentle mix.
Low signal	Too brief incubation times	Ensure sufficient incubation time; assay procedure step 2 may change to over night
	Inadequate reagent volumes or improper dilution	Check pipettes and ensure correct preparation
Large CV	Inaccurate pipetting	Check pipettes
High background	Plate insufficiently washed	Review the manual for proper wash. If using a plate washer, check that all ports are unobstructed.
	Contaminated wash buffer	Make fresh wash buffer
Low sensitivity	Improper storage of the ELISA kit	Store your standard at < -20°C after reconstitution, others at 4°C. Keep substrate solution protected from light
	Stop solution	Stop solution should be added to each well before measure

Ordering Information

Product Name	Product Description	Size	Catalog Number
Insulin ELISA Kit, human	Human Insulin ELISA Kit	96 Tests	PK-EL-60212

For in vitro research use only.
Not for diagnostic or therapeutic procedures.

PromoCell GmbH
Sickingenstr. 63/65
69126 Heidelberg
Germany

USA/Canada
Phone: 1 – 866 – 251 – 2860 (toll free)
Fax: 1 – 866 – 827 – 9219 (toll free)

Deutschland
Telefon: 0800 – 776 66 23 (gebührenfrei)
Fax: 0800 – 100 83 06 (gebührenfrei)

France
Téléphone: 0800 90 93 32 (ligne verte)
Téléfax: 0800 90 27 36 (ligne verte)

United Kingdom
Phone: 0800 – 96 03 33 (toll free)
Fax: 0800 – 169 85 54 (toll free)

Other Countries
Phone: +49 6221 – 649 34 0
Fax: +49 6221 – 649 34 40

Email: info@promokine.info

LH (Human) ELISA Kit

Catalog Number KA0214

96 assays

Version: 02

Intended for research use only

Table of Contents

Introduction

Intended Use

For the quantitative determination of luteinizing hormone (LH) concentration in human serum.

Background

Luteinizing hormone (LH) is produced in both men and women from the anterior pituitary gland in response to luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone (LH-RH or Gn-RH), which is released by the hypothalamus. LH, also called interstitial cell-stimulating hormone (ICSH) in men, is a glycoprotein with a molecular weight of approximately 30,000 daltrons. It is composed of two non-covalently associated dissimilar amino acid chains, alpha and beta. The alpha chain is similar to that found in human thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), and human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG).

The differences between these hormones lie in the amino acid composition of their beta subunits, which account for their immunological differentiation.

The basal secretion of LH in men is episodic and has the primary function of stimulating the interstitial cells (Leydig cells) to produce testosterone. The variation in LH concentrations in women is subject to the complex ovulatory cycle of healthy menstruating women, and depends upon a sequence of hormonal events along the gonado-hypothalamic-pituitary axis. The decrease in progesterone and estradiol levels from the preceding ovulation initiates each menstrual cycle. As a result of the decrease in hormone levels, the hypothalamus increases the secretion of gonadotropin-releasing factors (GnRF), which in turn stimulates the pituitary to increase FSH production and secretion. The rising FSH levels stimulate several follicles during the follicular phase; one of these will mature to contain the egg. As the follicle develops, estradiol is secreted slowly at first, but by day 12 or 13 of a normal cycle, increases rapidly. LH is released as a result of this rapid estradiol rise because of direct stimulation of the pituitary and increasing GnRF and FSH levels. These events constitute the pre-ovulatory phase.

Ovulation occurs approximately 12 to 18 hours after the LH reaches a maximum level. After the egg is released, the corpus luteum is formed which secretes progesterone and estrogen, the feedback regulators of LH.

The luteal phase rapidly follows this ovulatory phase, and is characterized by high progesterone levels, a second estradiol increase, and low LH and FSH levels. Low LH and FSH levels are the result of the negative feedback effects of estradiol and progesterone on the hypothalamic-pituitary axis. After conception, the developing embryo produces hCG, which causes the corpus luteum to continue producing progesterone and estradiol. The corpus luteum regresses if pregnancy does not occur, and the corresponding drop in progesterone and estradiol levels results in menstruation. The hypothalamus initiates the menstrual cycle again as a result of these low hormone levels.

Patients suffering from hypogonadism show increased concentrations of serum LH. A decrease in steroid hormone production in females is a result of immature ovaries, primary ovarian failure, polycystic ovary

disease, or menopause; in these cases, LH secretion is not regulated. A similar loss of regulatory hormones occurs in males when the testes develop abnormally or anorchia exists. High concentrations of LH may also be found in primary testicular failure and Klinefelter syndrome, although LH levels will not necessarily be elevated if the secretion of androgens continues. Increased concentrations of LH are also present during renal failure, cirrhosis, hyperthyroidism, and severe starvation.

A lack of secretion by the anterior pituitary may cause lower LH levels. As may be expected, low levels may result in infertility in both males and females. Low levels of LH may also be due to the decreased secretion of GnRH by the hypothalamus, although the same effect may be seen by a failure of the anterior pituitary to respond to GnRH stimulation. Low LH values may therefore indicate some dysfunction of the pituitary or hypothalamus, but the actual source of the problem must be confirmed by other tests.

In the differential diagnosis of hypothalamic, pituitary, or gonadal dysfunction, assays of LH concentration are routinely performed in conjunction with FSH assays since their roles are closely interrelated. Furthermore, the hormone levels are used to determine menopause, pinpoint ovulation, and monitor endocrine therapy.

Principle of the Assay

The LH ELISA is based on the principle of a solid phase enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). The assay system utilizes mouse monoclonal anti-α-LH for solid phase (microtiter wells) immobilization, and a mouse monoclonal anti-β-LH antibody in the antibody-enzyme (horseradish peroxidase) conjugate solution. The test sample is allowed to react simultaneously with the antibodies, resulting in the LH molecules being sandwiched between the solid phase and enzyme-linked antibodies. After 45 minute incubation at room temperature, the wells are washed with water to remove unbound-labeled antibodies. A solution of TMB Reagent is added and incubated for 20 minutes, resulting in the development of a blue color. The color development is stopped with the addition of stop solution, and the color is changed to yellow and measured spectrophotometrically at 450 nm. The concentration of LH is directly proportional to the color intensity of the test sample.

General Information

Materials Supplied

List of component

Component	Amount
Mouse monoclonal anti-α LH antibody coated microtiter plate	96 wells
Enzyme Conjugate Reagent	13 ml
LH reference standard contains 0, 5, 15, 50, 100, and 200 mIU/ml (WHO, 1st IRP, 68/40)	Lyophilized
TMB Reagent (One-Step)	11 ml
Stop Solution (1N HCl)	11 ml

Storage Instruction

Unopened test kit should be stored at 2-8℃ upon receipt and the microtiter plate should be kept in a sealed bag with desiccant to minimize exposure to damp air. Opened test will remain stable until the expiration date shown, provided it is stored as described above. A microtiter plat reader with a bandwidth of 10nm or less and an optical density range of 0-2 OD or greater at 450nm wavelength is acceptable for use in absorbance measurement.

Materials Required but Not Supplied

- ✓ Precision pipettes: 50 µl, 100 µl and 1.0 ml.
- ✓ Distilled water.
- ✓ Disposable pipette tips.
- ✓ Vortex mixer, or equivalent .
- ✓ Absorbent paper or paper towel.
- ✓ A microtiter plate reader at 450 nm wavelength, with a bandwidth of 10 nm or less and an optical density range of 0-2 OD or greater.
- ✓ Graph paper.

Precautions for Use

- Limitation of procedures
- ✓ Reliable and reproducible results will be obtained when the assay procedure is carried out with a complete understanding of the package insert instructions and with adherence to good laboratory practice.
- ✓ The wash procedure is critical. Insufficient washing will result in poor precision and falsely elevated absorbance readings.

- ✓ Serum samples demonstrating gross lipemia, gross hemolysis, or turbidity should not be used with this test.
- ✓ The results obtained from the use of this kit should be used only as an adjunct to other diagnostic procedures and information available to the physician.

Assay Protocol

Reagent Preparation

All reagents should be allowed to reach room temperature (18-25℃) before use.
Reconstitute each lyophilized standard with 1.0 mL distilled water. Allow the reconstituted material to stand for at least 20 minutes and mix gently. Reconstituted standards will be stable for up to 30 days when stored sealed at 2-8℃

Sample Preparation

Serum should be prepared from a whole blood specimen obtained by acceptable medical techniques. This kit is for use with serum samples without additives only.

Assay Procedure

1. Secure the desired number of coated wells in the holder.
2. Dispense 50 µl of standards, specimens, and controls into appropriate wells.
3. Dispense 100 µl of Enzyme Conjugate Reagent into each well.
4. Gently mix for 30 seconds. It is very important to have complete mixing in this setup.
5. Incubate at room temperature (18-25℃) for 45 minutes.
6. Remove the incubation mixture by flicking plate contents into sink.
7. Rinse and flick the microtiter wells 5 times with distilled or dionized water. (Please do not use tap water.)
8. Strike the wells sharply onto absorbent paper or paper towels to remove all residual water droplets.
9. Dispense 100µl of TMB Reagent into each well. Gently mix for 10 seconds.
10. Incubate at room temperature, in the dark, for 20 minutes.
11. Stop the reaction by adding 100µl of Stop Solution to each well.
12. Gently mix for 30 seconds. It is important to make sure that all of the blue color changes completely to yellow color completely.
13. Read optical density at 450nm with a microtiter plate reader within 15 minutes.

Data Analysis

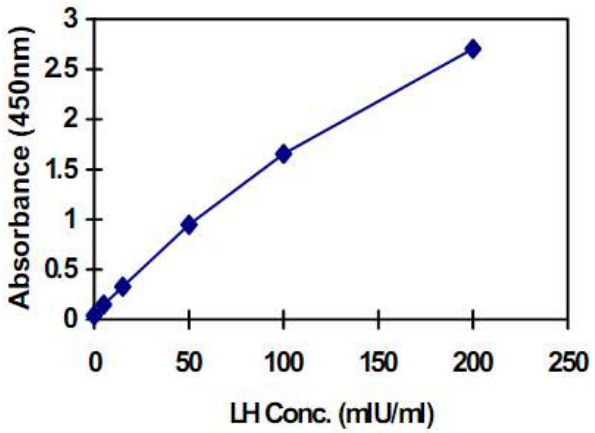
Calculation of Results

- ✓ Calculate the average absorbance value (A_{450}) for each set of reference standards, controls and samples.
- ✓ Construct a standard curve by plotting the mean absorbance obtained for each reference standard against its concentration in mIU/ml on linear graph paper, with absorbance on the vertical or Y-axis, and concentration on the horizontal or X-axis.
- ✓ Using the mean absorbance value for each sample, determine the corresponding concentration of LH in mIU/ml from the standard curve.

Example of standard curve

Results of a typical standard run with optical density readings at 450nm shown in the Y axis against LH concentrations shown in the X axis. This standard curve is for the purpose of illustration only, and should not be used to calculate unknowns. Each user should obtain his or her own data and standard curve in each experiment.

LH (mIU/mL)	Absorbance (450nm)
0	0.043
5	0.148
15	0.328
50	0.947
100	1.656
200	2.704



Performance Characteristics

- Expected Values

Each laboratory should establish its own normal range based on patient population. The information provided below is cited from Reference #6:

Adult	mIU/ml
Male	1.24-7.8
Female	
Follicular phase:	1.68-15
Ovulatory peak:	21.9-56.6
Luteal phase:	0.61-16.3
Postmenopausal:	14.2-52.3

The minimal detectable concentration of human luteinizing hormone by this assay is estimated to be 1 mIU/ml.

Resources

References

1. Knobil, E. The neuroendocrine control of the menstrual cycle. Rec. Prog. Horm. Res. 36, 52-88 (1980).
2. Harris, G.W. and Naftolinf. The hypothalamus and control of ovulation. Brit. Med. Bullet. 26, 1-9 (1970).
3. Shome, B. and Parlow, A.F.: J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metabl., 39, 199-202 (1974).
4. Shome, B. and Parlow, A.F.: J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 39, 203-205 (1974).
5. Uotila, M., Ruoslahti, E. and Engvall, e., J. Immunol. Methods, 42, 11 (1981).
6. Clinical Guide to Laboratory Tests. Ed. N.W. Tietz, 3rd Ed., W.B. Saunders Company, Philadelphia, PA 19106, 1995.

Plate Layout

12								
11								
10								
9								
8								
7								
6								
5								
4								
3								
2								
1								
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H

PRL (Human) ELISA Kit

Catalog Number KA0217

96 assays

Version: 02

Intended for research use only

www.abnova.com

Table of Contents

Introduction

Intended Use

The PRL (Human) ELISA Kit is intended for the quantitative determination of prolactin in human serum.

Background

Human prolactin (lactogenic hormone) is secreted from the anterior pituitary gland in both men and women. Human prolactin is a single chain polypeptide hormone with a molecular weight of approximately 23,000 daltons. The release and synthesis of prolactin is under neuroendocrinal control, primarily through Prolactin Releasing Factor and Prolactin Inhibiting Factor.

Women normally have slightly higher basal prolactin levels than men; apparently there is an estrogen-related rise at puberty and a corresponding decrease at menopause. The primary functions of prolactin are to initiate breast development and to maintain lactation. Prolactin also suppresses gonadal function.

During pregnancy, prolactin levels increase progressively to between 10 and 20 times of normal values, declining to non-pregnant levels by 3-4 weeks post-partum. Breast-feeding mothers maintain high levels of prolactin, and it may take several months for serum concentrations to return to non-pregnant levels.

The determination of prolactin concentration is helpful in diagnosing hypothalamic-pituitary disorders. Microadenomas (small pituitary tumors) may cause hyperprolactinemia, which is sometimes associated with male impotence.6 High prolactin levels are commonly associated with galactorrhea and amenorrhea.

Prolactin concentrations have been shown to be increased by estrogens, thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH), and several drugs affecting dopaminergic mechanisms. Prolactin levels are elevated in renal disease and hypothyroidism, and in some situations of stress, exercise, and hypoglycemia. Additionally, the release of prolactin is episodic and demonstrates diurnal variation. Mildly elevated prolactin concentrations should be evaluated taking these considerations into account. Prolactin concentrations may also be increased by drugs such as chloropromazine and reserpine, and may be lowered by bromocyptine and L-dopa.

Principle of the Assay

The PRL (Human) ELISA Kit is based on a solid phase enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). The assay system utilized mouse monoclonal anti-prolactin for solid phase (microtiter wells) immobilization and another mouse monoclonal anti-prolactin in the antibody-enzyme (horseradish peroxidase) conjugate solution. The test sample is allowed to react simultaneously with the antibodies, resulting in the prolactin molecules being sandwiched between the solid phase and enzyme-linked antibodies. After a 45 minute incubation at room temperature, the wells are washed with water to remove unbound labeled antibodies. A solution of Tetramethylbenzidine (TMB) reagent is added and incubated at room temperature for 20 minutes, resulting in

the development of a blue color. The color development is stopped with the addition of stop solution, and color is changed to yellow and measured spectrophotometrically at 450 nm. The concentration of prolactin is directly proportional to the color intensity of the test sample.

General Information

Materials Supplied

List of component

Component	Amount
Antibody-Coated Microtiter plate	96 wells
Enzyme Conjugate Reagent	13 ml
Reference Standard Set Contains 0, 5, 15, 50, 100, and 200 ng/mL (WHO, 1st IRP, 75/504).	Lyophilized
TMB Reagent (One-Step)	11 ml
Stop Solution (1N HCl)	11 ml

Storage Instruction

Unopened test kit should be stored at 2-8℃ upon receipt and the microtiter plate should be kept in a sealed bag with desiccant to minimize exposure to damp air. Opened test kit will remain stable until the expiration date shown, provided it is stored as described above.

Materials Required but Not Supplied

- ✓ Precision pipettes: 50 µl, 100 µl and 1 ml
- ✓ Distilled water
- ✓ Disposable pipette tips
- ✓ Vortex mixer or equivalent
- ✓ Absorbent paper or paper towel.
- ✓ A microtiter plate reader at 450nm wavelength, with a bandwidth of 10 nm or less and an optical density range of 0-2 OD or greater at 450 nm wavelength is acceptable for use in absorbance measurement.
- ✓ Graph paper

Precautions for Use

- Limitation of procedures
- ✓ Reliable and reproducible results will be obtained when the assay procedure is carried out with a complete understanding of the package insert instructions and with adherence to good laboratory practice.
- ✓ The wash procedure is critical. Insufficient washing will results in poor precision and falsely elevated

absorbance readings.

- ✓ Serum samples demonstrating gross lipemia, gross hemolysis, or turbidity should not be used with this test.
- ✓ The results obtained from the use of this kit should be used only as an adjunct to other diagnostic procedure and information available to the physician.

Assay Protocol

Reagent Preparation

- ✓ All reagents should be allowed to reach room temperature (18-25℃) before use.
- ✓ Reconstitute each lyophilized standard with 1.0 mL distilled H20. Allow the reconstituted material to stand for at least 20 minutes. Reconstituted standards should be stored sealed at 2-8℃, and are stable at 2-8℃ for up to 30 days.

Sample Preparation

Serum should be prepared from a whole blood specimen obtained by acceptable medical techniques. This kit is for use with serum samples without additives only.

Assay Procedure

1. Secure the desired number of coated wells in the holder.
2. Dispense 50µL of standards, specimens, and controls into appropriate wells.
3. Dispense 100µL of Enzyme Conjugate Reagent into each well.
4. Gently mix for 10 seconds. It is very important to have complete mixing in this step.
5. Incubate at room temperature for 45 minutes.
6. Remove the incubation mixture by flicking plate contents into sink.
7. Rinse and flick the microtiter wells 5 times with distilled or dionized water. (Please do not use tap water.)
8. Strike the wells sharply onto absorbent paper or paper towels to remove all residual water droplets.
9. Dispense 100µL of TMB Reagent into each well. Gently mix for 10 seconds.
10. Incubate at room temperature, in the dark, for 20 minutes.
11. Stop the reaction by adding 100µl of Stop Solution to each well.
12. Gently mix for 30 seconds. It is important to make sure that all the blue color changes to yellow color completely.
13. Read the optical density at 450nm with a microtiter plate reader within 15 minutes.

Data Analysis

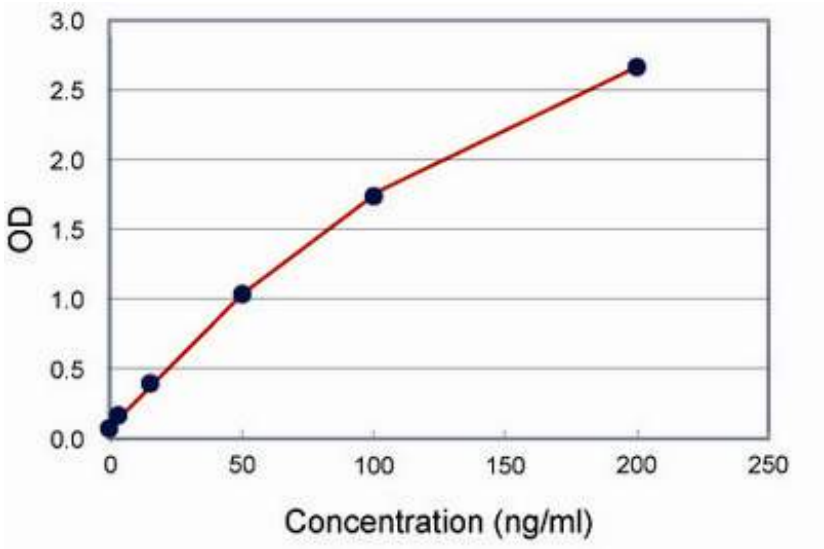
Calculation of Results

- ✓ Calculate the average absorbance value (A450) for each set of reference standards, controls and samples.
- ✓ Construct a standard curve by plotting the mean absorbance obtained for each reference standard against its concentration in ng/ml on linear graph paper, with absorbance on the vertical (y) axis and concentration on the horizontal (x) axis.
- ✓ Using the mean absorbance value for each sample, determine the corresponding concentration of prolactin in ng/ml from the standard curve.

Example of typical results:

Results of a typical standard run with optical density readings at 450nm shown in the Y axis against prolactin concentrations shown in the X axis. This standard curve is for the purpose of illustration only, and should not be used to calculate unknowns. Each user should obtain his or her own standard curve and patient data in each experiment.

Prolactin (ng/mL)	Absorbance (450nm)
0	0.052
5	0.166
15	0.383
50	1.047
100	1.737
200	2.644



Performance Characteristics

Each laboratory must establish its own normal ranges based on patient population. The minimum detectable concentration of human prolactin by this assay is estimated to be 2 ng/ml. The information provided below is cited from Reference #6.

Adult	ng/ml
Male	3.0-14.7
Female	3.8-23.2
Pregnancy, Third trimester:	 95-473

The minimum detectable concentration of human prolactin by this assay is estimated to be 2 ng/ml.

Resources

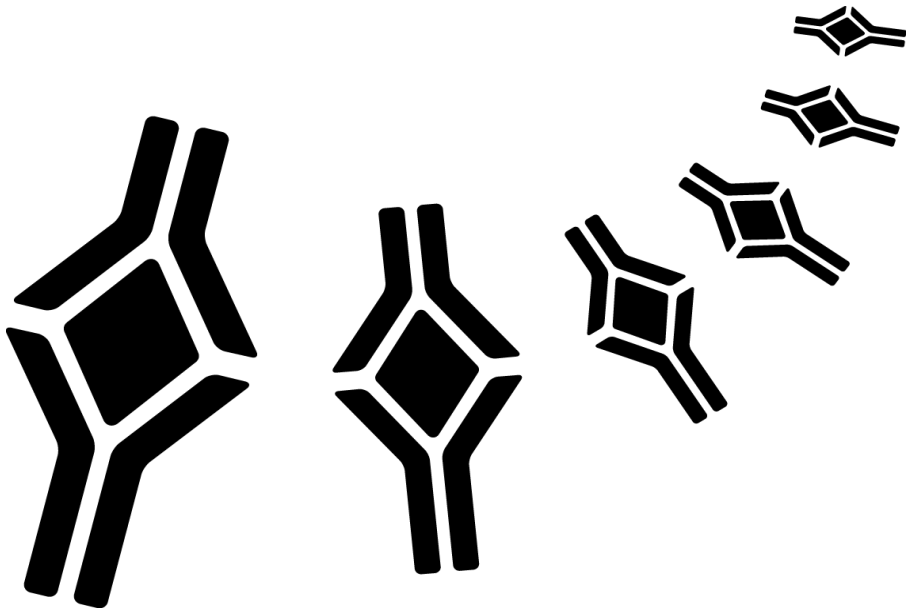
References

1. Uotila, M., Ruouslahti, E. And Engvall, E., J. Immunol. Methods, 42, 11-15, (1981).
2. Shome, B. and Parlow, A.F., J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 45, 1112-1115, (1977).
3. Cowden, E.A., Ratcliffe, W.A., Beastall, G.H., and Ratcliffe, J.G., Annals Clin. Biochem., 16, 113-121, (1979).
4. Frantz, A.G., N. Engl. J. Med., 298, 201-207, (1978).
5. Jacobs, L., Snyder, P., Wilber, J., Utiger, R., and Daughaday, W., J. Clin. Endocrin. 33:996, (1978).
6. Clinical Guide to Laboratory Tests, N.W. Tietz, Ed., 3rd Edition, W.B. Saunders Co., pp.512-513 (1995).

Plate Layout

12								
11								
10								
9								
8								
7								
6								
5								
4								
3								
2								
1								
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H

BioVendor
Research
and Diagnostic Products



HUMAN TOTAL TRIIODOTHYRONINE (T3) ELISA

Product Data Sheet

Cat. No.: RCD025R

For Research Use Only

CONTENTS

» **This kit is manufactured by:**
BioVendor – Laboratorní medicína a.s.

» **Use only the current version of Product Data Sheet enclosed with the kit!**

1. INTENDED USE

For the direct quantitative determination of Triiodothyronine by enzyme immunoassay in human serum.
For research use only.

2. PRINCIPLE OF THE TEST

The principle of the following enzyme immunoassay test follows the typical competitive binding scenario. Competition occurs between an unlabeled antigen (present in standards, controls and patient samples) and an enzyme-labelled antigen (conjugate) for a limited number of antibody binding sites on the microwell plate. The washing and decanting procedures remove unbound materials. After the washing step, the enzyme substrate is added. The enzymatic reaction is terminated by addition of the stopping solution. The absorbance is measured on a microtiter plate reader. The intensity of the colour formed is inversely proportional to the concentration of T3 in the sample. A set of standards is used to plot a standard curve from which the amount of T3 in patient samples and controls can be directly read.

3. INTRODUCTION

Triiodothyronine (T3) and thyroxine (T4) are the two active thyroid hormones found in the blood stream. About 80% of T3 is produced by the deiodination of T4 in the peripheral tissue and the other 20% is produced directly from the thyroid gland. T3 is transported through the peripheral blood stream bound to serum proteins, namely thyroxine binding globulin, thyroid binding prealbumin and albumin. About 0.3% of the total T3 is unbound and is therefore considered the free fraction.
T3 has an influence on oxygen consumption and heat production in virtually all tissues. The hormone also plays a critical role in growth, development and sexual maturation of growing organisms.
T3 is one parameter used in the clinical diagnosis and differentiation of thyroid disease, particularly hyperthyroidism. In most hyperthyroid patients, both serum T3 and serum T4 levels are elevated. Serum T3 levels are a sensitive indicator of the impending hyperthyroid state often preceeding elevated T4 and free thyroxine index values. Serum T3 levels are clinically significant in both the diagnosis of thyroid disease and in the detection of T3-thyrotoxicosis. However, it has been demonstrated that T3 levels may be affected by a number of medications, acute and chronic stress, and a variety of acute and chronic non-thyroidal illnesses. It is therefore necessary to differentiate those results that are due to thyroid dysfunction from those related to non-thyroidal diseases.

4. PROCEDURAL CAUTIONS AND WARNINGS

1. Users should have a thorough understanding of this protocol for the successful use of this kit. Reliable performance will only be attained by strict and careful adherence to the instructions provided.
2. Control materials or serum pools should be included in every run at a high and low level for assessing the reliability of results.
3. When the use of water is specified for dilution or reconstitution, use deionized or distilled water.
4. In order to reduce exposure to potentially harmful substances, gloves should be worn when handling kit reagents and human specimens.
5. All kit reagents and specimens should be brought to room temperature and mixed gently but thoroughly before use. Avoid repeated freezing and thawing of reagents and specimens.
6. A calibrator curve must be established for every run.
7. The kit controls should be included in every run and fall within established confidence limits.
8. Improper procedural techniques, imprecise pipetting, incomplete washing as well as improper reagent storage may be indicated when assay values for the controls do not reflect established ranges.
9. When reading the microplate, the presence of bubbles in the microwells will affect the optical densities (ODs). Carefully remove any bubbles before performing the reading step.
10. The substrate solution (TMB) is sensitive to light and should remain colourless if properly stored. Instability or contamination may be indicated by the development of a blue colour, in which case it should not be used.
11. When dispensing the substrate and stopping solution, do not use pipettes in which these liquids will come into contact with any metal parts.
12. To prevent contamination of reagents, use a new disposable pipette tip for dispensing each reagent, sample, standard and control.
13. Do not mix various lot numbers of kit components within a test and do not use any component beyond the expiration date printed on the label.
14. Kit reagents must be regarded as hazardous waste and disposed of according to national regulations.

5. LIMITATIONS

1. All the reagents within the kit are calibrated for the direct determination of T3 in human serum. The kit is not calibrated for the determination of T3 in other specimens of human or animal origin.
2. Do not use grossly hemolyzed, grossly lipemic, icteric or improperly stored serum.
3. Any samples or control sera containing azide or thimerosal are not compatible with this kit, as they may lead to false results.
4. Only calibrator A may be used to dilute any high serum samples. The use of any other reagent may lead to false results.
5. The results obtained with this kit should never be used as the sole basis for clinical diagnosis. For example, the occurrence of heterophilic antibodies in patients regularly exposed to animals or animal products has the potential of causing interferences in immunological tests. Consequently, the clinical diagnosis should include all aspects of a patient's background including the frequency of exposure to animals/products if false results are suspected.

6. SAFETY CAUTIONS AND WARNINGS

6.1 Potential biohazardous material

Human serum that may be used in the preparation of the standards and control has been tested and found to be non-reactive for Hepatitis B surface antigen and has also been tested for the presence of antibodies to HCV and Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) and found to be negative. However no test method can offer complete assurance that HIV, HCV and Hepatitis B virus or any infectious agents are absent. The reagents should be considered a potential biohazard and handled with the same precautions as applied to any blood specimen.

6.2 Chemical hazards

Avoid contact with reagents containing TMB, hydrogen peroxide and sulfuric acid. If contacted with any of these reagents, wash with plenty of water. TMB is a suspected carcinogen.

7. SPECIMEN COLLECTION AND STORAGE

Approximately 0.1 ml of serum is required per duplicate determination. Collect 4-5 ml of blood into an appropriately labelled tube and allow it to clot. Centrifuge and carefully remove the serum layer. Store at 4°C for up to 24 hours or at -10°C or lower if the analyses are to be done at a later date. Consider all human specimens as possible biohazardous materials and take appropriate precautions when handling.

7.1 Specimen pretreatment

This assay is a direct system; no specimen pretreatment is necessary.

8. REAGENTS AND EQUIPMENT NEEDED BUT NOT PROVIDED

1. Precision pipettes to dispense 50, 150, 200 and 300 µl
2. Disposable pipette tips
3. Distilled or deionized water
4. Plate shaker
5. Microwell plate reader with a filter set at 450nm and an upper OD limit of 3.0 or greater* (see assay procedure step 10).

9. REAGENTS PROVIDED

1. Rabbit Anti-T3 Antibody Coated Microwell Plate-Break Apart Wells - Ready To Use.
Contents: One 96 well (12x8) polyclonal antibody-coated microwell plate in a resealable pouch with desiccant.
Storage: Refrigerate at 2-8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.

2. T3-Horseradish Peroxidase (HRP) Conjugate Concentrate (x50) - Requires Preparation.
Contents: T3-HRP conjugate in a protein-based buffer with a non-mercury preservative.
Volume: 300 µl/vial
Storage: Refrigerate at 2-8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.
Preparation: Dilute 1:50 in assay buffer before use (eg. 40 µl of HRP in 2 ml of assay buffer). If the whole plate is to be used dilute 240 µl of HRP in 12 ml of assay buffer. Discard any that is left over.

3. T3 Calibrators - Ready To Use.
Contents: Five vials containing T3 in a protein-based buffer with a non-mercury preservative. Prepared by spiking buffer with a defined quantity of T3.
*Listed below are approximate concentrations, please refer to vial labels for exact concentrations.

Calibrator	Concentration	Volume
Calibrator A	0 ng/ml	2.0 ml
Calibrator B	0.2 ng/ml	0.5 ml
Calibrator C	1 ng/ml	0.5 ml
Calibrator D	3 ng/ml	0.5 ml
Calibrator E	10 ng/ml	0.5 ml

Storage: Refrigerate at 2-8°C
Stability: 12 months in unopened vials or as indicated on label. Once opened, the standards should be used within 14 days or aliquoted and stored frozen. Avoid multiple freezing and thawing cycles.

4. Controls - Ready To Use.
Contents: Two vials containing T3 in a protein-based buffer with a non-mercury preservative. Prepared by spiking serum with defined quantities of T3. Refer to vial labels for the acceptable range.
Volume: 0.5 ml/vial
Storage: Refrigerate at 2-8°C
Stability: 12 months in unopened vial or as indicated on label. Once opened, the controls should be used within 14 days or aliquoted and stored frozen. Avoid multiple freezing and thawing cycles.

5. Wash Buffer Concentrate (x10) - Requires Preparation.
Contents: One bottle containing buffer with a
non-ionic detergent and a non-mercury preservative.
Volume: 50 ml/bottle
Storage: Refrigerate at 2-8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.
Preparation: Dilute 1:10 in distilled or deionized water before use. If the whole plate is to be used dilute 50 ml of the wash buffer concentrate in 450 ml of water.

6. Assay Buffer - Ready To Use.
Contents: One bottle containing a protein-based buffer with a non-mercury preservative.
Volume: 15 ml/vial
Storage: Refrigerate at 2-8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.

7. TMB Substrate - Ready To Use.
Contents: One bottle containing tetramethylbenzidine and hydrogen peroxide in a non-DMF or DMSO containing buffer.

Volume: 16 ml/bottle
Storage: Refrigerate at 2-8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.

8. Stopping Solution - Ready To Use.
Contents: One vial containing 1M sulfuric acid.
Volume: 6 ml/vial
Storage: Refrigerate at 2-8°C
Stability: 12 months or as indicated on label.

10. ASSAY PROCEDURE

All reagents must reach room temperature before use. Calibrators, controls and specimen samples should be assayed in duplicate. Once the procedure has been started, all steps should be completed without interruption.

1. Prepare working solutions of the T3-HRP conjugate and wash buffer.
2. Remove the required number of microwell strips. Reseal the bag and return any unused strips to the refrigerator.
3. Pipette 50 µl of each calibrator, control and specimen sample into correspondingly labelled wells in duplicate.
4. Pipette 100 µl of the conjugate working solution into each well (We recommend using a multichannel pipette).
5. Incubate on a plate shaker (approximately 200 rpm) for 1 hour at room temperature.
6. Wash the wells 3 times with 300 µl of diluted wash buffer per well and tap the plate firmly against absorbent paper to ensure that it is dry (The use of a washer is recommended).
7. Pipette 150 µl of TMB substrate into each well at timed intervals.
8. Incubate on a plate shaker for 10-15 minutes at room temperature (or until calibrator A attains dark blue colour for desired OD).
9. Pipette 50 µl of stopping solution into each well at the same timed intervals as in step 7.
10. Read the plate on a microwell plate reader at 450 nm within 20 minutes after addition of the stopping solution.

* If the OD exceeds the upper limit of detection or if a 450 nm filter is unavailable, a 405 or 415 nm filter may be substituted. The optical densities will be lower, however, this will not affect the results of patient/control samples. *If the OD exceeds the upper limit of detection or if a 450 nm filter is unavailable, a 405 or 415 nm filter may be substituted. The optical densities will be lower, however, this will not affect the results of patient/control samples.

11. CALCULATIONS

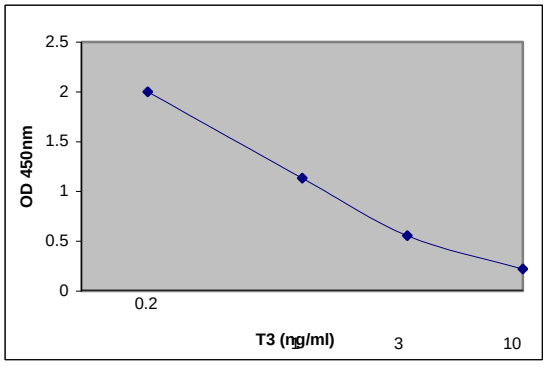
1. Calculate the mean optical density of each calibrator duplicate.
2. Draw a calibrator curve on semi-log paper with the mean optical densities on the Y-axis and the calibrator concentrations on the X-axis. If immunoassay software is being used, a 4-parameter or 5-parameter curve is recommended.
3. Calculate the mean optical density of each unknown duplicate.
4. Read the values of the unknowns directly off the calibrator curve.
5. If a sample reads more than 10 ng/ml then dilute it with calibrator A at a dilution of no more than 1:8. The result obtained should be multiplied by the dilution factor.

12. TYPICAL TABULATED DATA

Calibrator	OD 1	OD 2	Mean OD	Value (ng/ml)
A	2.454	2.480	2.467	0
B	2.009	1.986	1.998	0.2
C	1.139	1.129	1.134	1.0
D	0.553	0.555	0.554	3.0
E	0.220	0.225	0.223	10
Unknown	1.092	1.056	1.074	1.1

13. TYPICAL CALIBRATOR CURVE

Sample curve only. **Do not** use to calculate results.



14. PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

14.1 Sensitivity

The lower detection limit is calculated from the standard curve by determining the resulting concentration of the mean OD of Calibrator A (based on 10 replicate analyses) minus 2 SD. Therefore, the sensitivity of the BioVendor T3 ELISA kit is **0.16 ng/ml.**

14.2 Specificity (Cross-Reactivity)

The following compounds were tested for cross-reactivity with the T3 ELISA kit with T3 cross-reacting at 100%.

Compound	%Cross Reactivity
L-Triiodothyronine	100
D-Triiodothyronine	34
Triiodothyropropionic acid	20
Diiodo-D-thyronine	0.5
D-Thyroxine	0.2
L-Thyroxine	0.1

The following compounds were tested but cross-reacted at less than 0.1%: Diiodotyrosine, Iodotyrosine, Phenytoin, Sodium salicylate and r-Triiodothyronine.

14.3 Precision

Intra-Assay

Three samples were assayed ten times each on the same calibrator curve. The results (in ng/ml) are tabulated below:

Sample	Mean	SD	CV%
1	0.65	0.08	12.3
2	1.19	0.14	11.7
3	5.16	0.21	4.1

Inter-Assay

Three samples were assayed ten times over a period of four weeks. The results (in ng/ml) are tabulated below:

Sample	Mean	SD	CV%
1	0.64	0.07	10.4
2	1.24	0.12	9.7
3	4.86	0.44	9.0

14.4 Recovery

Spiked samples were prepared by adding defined amounts of T3 to a serum pool. The results (in ng/ml) are tabulated below:

Sample	Obs.Result	Exp.Result	Recovery%
1 Unspiked	1.3	-	-
+2.0	3.8	3.3	115.1
+3.3	5.0	4.6	108.7
+5.0	5.7	6.3	90.5

14.5 Linearity

Three patient serum samples were diluted with calibrator A. The results (in ng/ml) are tabulated below:

Sample	Obs.Result	Exp.Result	Recovery%
1	2.90	-	-
1:2	1.50	1.45	103.4
1:4	0.71	0.73	97.3
1:8	0.40	0.36	111.1
2	5.10	-	-
1:2	2.60	2.55	102.0
1:4	1.20	1.28	93.8
1:8	0.80	0.64	125.0
3	8.00	-	-
1:2	4.45	4.00	112.3
1:4	2.30	2.00	115.0
1:8	1.00	1.00	100.0

15. REFERENCE VALUES

As for all assays each laboratory should collect data and establish their own range of expected normal values. The following reference range (pg/ml) was established with 44 apparently healthy adults:

Group	Range (ng/ml)
Healthy Normal Males and Females	0.7-2.1

16. REFERENCES

1. Larson, P.R. Triiodothyronine: Review of Recent Studies of its Physiology and Pathophysiology in Man. Metabolism. 21:1073-1092 1972.
2. S. Unger, R.D. Serum Triiodothyronine in Man. Annual Review of Medicine. 25:289-302, 1974.
3. Sterline, K. and J.H. Laxarus. The Thyroid and its Control. Annual Review of Physiology 39:349-371, 1977.
4. Eastman, C.J., Corcoran, J.M., Ekins, R.P. et.al. The Radioimmunoassay of Triiodothyronine and its Clinical Application. Journal of Clinical Pathology. 28:225-230, 1975.
5. Hollander, C.S. et. al. Clinical Laboratory Observations in Cases of Triiodothyronine Toxicosis Confirmed by Radioimmunoassay. Lancet 1:609-611, 1972.
6. Berger, S. and J.L. Quinn Thyroid Function, In Fundamentals of Clinical Chemistry. E. Tietz, N.W., 2nd Edition, p.843. Saunders Press, Philadelphia, 1976.
7. Brown, B.L.,Ekins, R.P., Ellis. S.M. et. al. Specific Antibodies to Triiodothyronine Hormone, Nature 226:359-362, 1970.
8. Chopra, I.J., Ruey, S.H., and R. Lam. An Improved Radioimmunoassay of Triiodothyronine in Serum: Its Applications to Clinical and Physiological Studies. J.Lab.Clin. Med. 80:729-739, 1972.
9. Rastogi, G.K. and R.C. Sawhney, Triidothyronine Radioimmunoassay in Unextracted Serum. Ind. J. Med. Res. 82:225-232, 1974.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
A												
B												
C												
D												
E												
F												
G												
H												

BioVendor – Laboratorní medicína, a.s.
Karasek 1767/1, 621 00 Brno, Czech Republic
Phone: +420-549-124-185, Fax: +420-549-211-460
E-mail: info@biovendor.com, sales@biovendor.com
Web: www.biovendor.com

There are BioVendor branches and distributors near you.
To find the office closest to you, visit **www.biovendor.com/contact**

BioVendor
Research and Diagnostic Products

T4 (Total) (Human) ELISA Kit

Catalog Number KA0200

96 assays

Version: 02

Intended for research use only

www.abnova.com

Table of Contents

Introduction

Intended Use

For the quantitative determination of the Total Thyroxine (T4) concentration in human serum.

Background

L-Thyroxine (T4) is a hormone that is synthesized and stored in the thyroid gland. Proteolytic cleavage of follicular thyroglobulin releases T4 into the bloodstream. Greater than 99% of T4 is reversibly bound to three plasma proteins in blood - thyroxine binding globulin (TBG) binds 70%, thyroxine binding pre-albumin (TBPA) binds 20%, and albumin binds 10%. Approximately 0.03% of T4 is in the free, unbound state in blood at any one time.

Diseases affecting thyroid function may present a wide array of confusing symptoms. Measurement of total T4 by immunoassay is the most reliable and convenient screening test available to determine the presence of thyroid disorders in patients. Increased levels of T4 have been found in hyper-thyroidism due to Grave's disease and Plummer's disease and in acute and subacute thyroiditis. Low levels of T4 have been associated with congenital hypothyroidism, myxedema, chronic thryoiditis (Hashimoto's disease), and with some genetic abnormalities.

Principle of the Assay

In the T4 EIA, a certain amount of anti-T4 antibody is coated on microtiter wells. A measured amount of patient serum, and a constant amount of T4 conjugated with horseradish peroxidase are added to the microtiter wells. During incubation, T4 and conjugated T4 compete for the limited binding sites on the anti-T4 antibody. After 60 minutes incubation at room temperature, the wells are washed 5 times by water to remove unbound T4 conjugate. A solution of TMB Reagent is then added and incubated for 20 minutes, resulting in the development of blue color. The color development is stopped with the addition of Stop Solution, and the absorbance is measured spectrophotometrically at 450nm. The intensity of the color formed is proportional to the amount of enzyme present and is inversely related to the amount of unlabeled T4 in the sample. By reference to a series of T4 standards assayed in the same way, the concentration of T4 in the unknown sample is quantified.

General Information

Materials Supplied

List of component

Component	Amount
Sheep anti-T4 coated microtiter wells	96 wells
T4 Reference Standards: 0, 2, 5, 10, 15, and 25 ug/dl, ready to use	1 set, 1ml/vial
Enzyme Conjugate Reagent Concentrate (11x)	1.3 ml
Enzyme Conjugate Diluent	13 ml
TMB Reagent (One-Step)	11 ml
Stop Solution (1N HCl)	11 ml

Storage Instruction

Unopened test kits should be stored at 2-8℃ upon receipt and the microtiter plate should be kept in a sealed bag with desiccants to minimize exposure to damp air. Opened test kits will remain stable until the expiration date shown, provided it is stored as described above. A microtiter plate reader with a bandwidth of 10nm or less and an optical density range of 0-2 OD or greater at 450 nm wavelength is acceptable for use in absorbance measurement.

Materials Required but Not Supplied

- ✓ Precision pipettes: 25 µl, 100 µl and 1.0 ml.
- ✓ Disposable pipette tips.
- ✓ Distilled water.
- ✓ Vortex mixer or equivalent.
- ✓ Absorbent paper or paper towel.
- ✓ Graph paper.
- ✓ Microtiter plate reader.

Precautions for Use

- Limitation of procedures
- ✓ Reliable and reproducible results will be obtained when the assay procedure is carried out with a complete understanding of the package insert instructions and with adherence to good laboratory practice.
- ✓ The wash procedure is critical. Insufficient washing will result in poor precision and falsely elevated absorbance readings.

- ✓ Serum samples demonstrating gross lipemia, gross hemolysis, or turbidity should not be used with this test.
- ✓ The results obtained from the use of this kit should be used only as an adjunct to other diagnostic procedures and information available to the physician.

Assay Protocol

Reagent Preparation

1. All reagents should be allowed to reach room temperature (18-25℃) before use.
2. To prepare Working T4-HRPO Conjugate Reagent, add 0.1 ml of T4-HRPO Conjugate Concentrate (11×) to 1.0 ml of T4 Conjugate Diluent (1:10 dilution), and mix well.
   Note: Prepare only the amount of Conjugate that is required each time. Working Conjugate Reagent should be used within 24 hours. Discard the excess after use.

Sample Preparation

Serum should be prepared from a whole blood specimen obtained by acceptable medical techniques. This kit is for use with serum samples without additives only.

Assay Procedure

1. Secure the desired number of coated wells in the holder.
2. Pipette 25 µl of standard, specimens, and controls into appropriate wells.
3. Dispense 100 µl of Working Conjugate Reagent into each well.
4. Thoroughly mix for 30 seconds. It is very important to mix completely.
5. Incubate at room temperature (18-25℃) for 60 minutes.
6. Remove the incubation mixture by flicking plate contents into a waste container.
7. Rinse and flick the microtiter wells 5 times with distilled or deionized water. (Please do not use tap water.)
8. Strike the wells sharply onto absorbent paper or paper towels to remove all resiual water droplets.
9. Dispense 100 µl of TMB Reagent into each well. Gently mix for 10 seconds.
10. Incubate at room temperature in the dark for 20 minutes.
11. Stop the reaction by adding 100 µl of Stop Solution to each well.
12. Gently mix for 30 seconds. It is important to make sure that all the blue color changes to yellow color completely.
13. Read absorbance at 450 nm with a microtiter well reader within 15 minutes.

Data Analysis

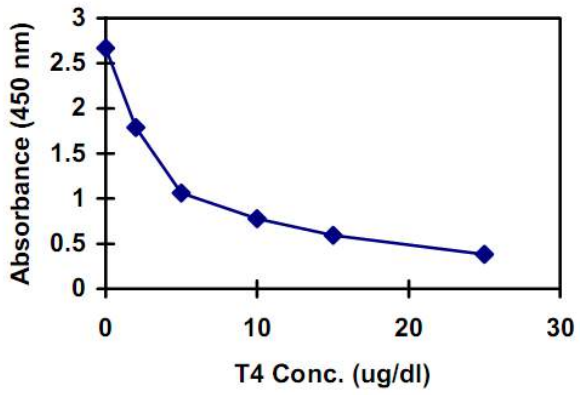
Calculation of Results

- ✓ Calculate the average absorbance values (A450) for each set of reference standards, control, and samples.
- ✓ Construct a standard curve by plotting the mean absorbance obtained for each reference standard against its concentration in ug/dl on linear graph paper, with absorbance on the vertical (y) axis and concentration on the horizontal (x) axis.
- ✓ Using the mean absorbance value for each sample, determine the corresponding concentration of T4 in ng/ml from the standard curve.

Example of standard curve

Results of a typical standard run with optical density readings at 450 nm shown in the Y axis against T4 concentrations shown in the X axis. This standard curve is for the purpose of illustration only, and should not be used to calculate unknowns. Each user should obtain his or her own data and standard curve. Note: This standard curve is for the purpose of illustration only, and should not be used to calculate unknowns. Each laboratory must provide its own data and standard curve in each experiment.

T4 (µg/dl)	Absorbance (450 nm)
0	2.667
2	1.786
5	1.060
10	0.778
15	0.591
25	0.384



Performance Characteristics

- Expected Values

The T4 EIA was performed in a study of 200 euthyroid patients in one geographic location and yielded a range of 4.8 to 12.0µg/dl. It is recommended that laboratories adjust values to reflect geographic and population differences specific to the patients they serve. The minimum detectable concentration of thyroxine by this assay is estimated to be 0.4 µg/dl.

Resources

References

1. Skelley, D., Brown, L., and Besch, P. Radioimmunoassay. Clin. Chem. 19:146; 1973.
2. Wistom, G.B. Enzyme-Immunoassay. Clin. Chem. 22:1243; 1976.
3. Ravel, R. Clinical Laboratory Medicine, Year Book Medical Publ., Chicago (1973).
4. Robbins, J., Radioassay and Thyroid Gland, Metabolism, 22 (8): 1021(1973).
5. Schuurs, A.H.W.M. and Van Weeman, B.K. Review, Enzyme-Immunoassay. Clin. Chem. Acta. 81:1; 1977.

Plate Layout

12								
11								
10								
9								
8								
7								
6								
5								
4								
3								
2								
1								
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H

Testosterone (Human) ELISA Kit

Catalog Number KA0236

96 assays

Version: 02

Intended for research use only

www.abnova.com

Table of Contents

Introduction

Intended Use

Testosterone (Human) ELISA Kit is intended for the quantitative determination of testosterone in human serum.

Background

Testosterone (17β-hydroxyandrost-4-ene-3-one), a C_{19} steroid, is the most potent naturally secreted androgen. It is secreted primarily by the Leydig cells of the testes, the androgen and the ovaries, and is the most important secreted into the blood. In males, testosterone is secreted primarily by the Leydig cells of the testes; in females approximately 50% of circulating testosterone is derived from peripheral conversion of androstenedione, with the remainder from direct secretion of testosterone from the adrenal and ovaran glands. In males, testosterone levels increase during the last trimester of fetal life due to placental and fetal pituitary gonadotropin stimulation, and then decline and increase again 30-60 days postnatally. After this, testosterone concentrations decline to low levels in childhood. At the onset of male puberty, gonadotrophin secretion leads to increased testicular production of testosterone. In adult men, serum testosterone levels show a circadian variation, with peak levels in the morning.

Testosterone is responsible for the development of secondary male sex characteristics and its measurement and helpful in evaluating hypogonadal states. In prepubertal males, elevated testosterone levels are found in both gonadotrophin-dependent and independent precocious puberty (e.g. testotoxicosis, adrenal hyperplasia or adrenal tumor), as well as in androgen receptor defects. In adult males, high levels of testosterone are associated with various pathologic conditions, including primary hypogonadism (e.g. testicular dysgenesis, Klinefelter syndrome) and gonadotrophin deficiencies (e.g. hypogonadism, Kallman syndrome).

In woman, there is a much smaller increase in serum testosterone levels during the third trimester, followed by low levels in childhood, and a small increase during puberty. In females of all ages, elevated testosterone levels can be associated with variety of virilizing conditions, including congenital adrenal hyperplasia, arrhenoblastoma, mix-gonadal dysgenesis, polycystic ovarian disease, and ovarian and adrenal tumors.

Testosterone measurements may also be utilized in women for the monitoring and adjustment of androgen suppressing drugs and dosages. Testosterone concentration in serum may be raised by certain drugs, such as 19-nortestosterone, epitestosterone, ethisterone and Danazol. Similarly, common oral contraceptive drugs, drugs containing cyprotarone acetate (CPA), and gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) analogues are very effective in suppression of testosterone concentrations.

Testosterone measurement in the immediate postnatal period can aid in differential diagnosis of ambiguous genitalia, while measurements before and after exogenous gonadotropin administration can help to detect cryptorchidism and other structural abnormalities.

The Testosterone (Human) ELISA Kit provide a sensitive and reliable assay for the measurement of total testosterone in human serum. The kit features a standard range of 1.0 to 18 ng/ml and will determine a minimum detectable concentration of 0.06 ng/ml. the assay must results in a microtiter plate format.

Principle of the Assay

The Testosterone ELISA is based on the principle of competitive binding between Testosterone in the test specimen and testosterone-horseradish peroxidase (HRP) conjugate for a constant amount of rabbit anti-Testosterone. In the incubation, goat anti-rabbit IgG-coated wells are incubated with testosterone standards, controls, patient samples, testosterone-HRP conjugate reagent and rabbit anti-testosterone reagent for 90 minutes. During the incubation, a fixed amount of HRP-labeled testosterone competes with the testosterone in the standard, sample, or quality control serum for a fixed number of binding sites of the specific testosterone antibody. Thus, the amount of testosterone-HRP immunologically bound to the well progressively decreases as the concentration of Testosterone in the specimen increases.

Unbound testosterone-peroxidase conjugate is then removed and the wells washed, followed by addition of TMB Reagent resulting in the development of blue color. The color development is stopped and the absorbance is measured spectrophotometrically at 450 nm. The intensity of the color formed is proportional to the amount of enzyme present and is inversely related to the amount of unlabeled testosterone in the sample. A standard curve is obtained by plotting the concentration of the standard versus the absorbance. The testosterone concentration of the specimens and controls run concurrently with the standards can be calculated from the standard curve.

General Information

Materials Supplied

List of component

Component	Amount
Antibody-Coated Wells: microtiter wells coated with goat anti-rabbit IgG	1 plate, 96 wells
Reference Standard Set: Contains 0, 0.1, 0.5, 2.0, 6.0 and 18.0 ng/ml testosterone in human serum with preservatives, liquid, ready to use.	0.5 ml/ vial
Rabbit Anti-Testosterone Reagent: Contains rabbit anti-testosterone in bovine serum albumin (BSA) buffer with preservatives	7 ml
Testosterone-HRP Conjugate Reagent: Contains testosterone conjugated to HRP	12 ml
Testosterone Control 1 and 2: Contains approximately 1.0 and 12 ng/ml testosterone respectively, in human serum. Liquid, 0.5 ml each, ready to use	0.5 ml/ vial
TMB Reagent: Contains 3, 3', 5, 5'-TMB stabilized in buffer solution	11 ml
Stop Solution: Diluted hydrochloric acid (1N HCl)	11 ml

Storage Instruction

- ✓ Store the unopened kits at 2-8℃ upon receipt and when it is not in use, until the expiration show on the kit label. Refer to the package label for the expiration date.
- ✓ The opened and used reagents are stable until the expiration date if stored properly at 2-8℃.
- ✓ Keep microtiter plate in a sealed bag with desiccants to minimize exposure to damp air.

Materials Required but Not Supplied

- ✓ Distilled or deionized water.
- ✓ Precision pipettes: 10 µl, 50 µl, 100 µl, and 1.0 ml.
- ✓ Disposable pipette tips.
- ✓ Microtiter well reader capable of reading absorbance at 450 nm.
- ✓ Vortex mixer, or equivalent.
- ✓ Absorbent paper
- ✓ Linear-linear graph paper.

Precautions for Use

- Warnings and precautions
- ✓ Caution: The kit contains human material. The source material used for manufacture of this kit tested negative for HBsAg, HIV 1/2 and HCV by FDA-approved methods. However, no method can completely

assure absence of these agents. Therefore, all human blood products, including serum samples, should be considered potentially infectious. Handling and disposal should be as defined by an appropriate national biohazard safety guideline or regulation, where it exists.[21]

- ✓ Do not use reagents after expiration date and do not mix or use components from kits with different lot numbers.
- ✓ Do not use the reagent when it becomes cloudy or contamination is suspected.
- ✓ Do not use the reagent if the vial is damaged.
- ✓ Replace caps on reagents immediately. Do not switch caps.
- ✓ Each well can be used only once.
- ✓ Do not pipette reagents by mouth.
- ✓ Solutions containing additives or preservatives, such as sodium azide, should not be used in the enzyme reaction.
- ✓ Avoid contact with 1N HCl. It may cause skin irritation and burns. If contact occurs, wash with copious amounts of water and seek medical attention if irritation persists.

- Procedural Notes:

- ✓ Manual pipetting: It is recommended that no more than 32 wells be used for each assay run. Pipetting of all standards samples, and controls should be completed within 3 minutes.
- ✓ Automated Pipetting: A full plate of 96 wells may be used in each assay run. However, it is recommended that pipetting of all standards, samples, and control be completed within 3 minutes.
- ✓ All standards, samples, and controls should be run in duplicate concurrently so that all conditions of testing are same.
- ✓ It is recommended that the wells be read within 15 minutes following addition of Stop Solution.

- Limitation of procedures

- ✓ Reliable and reproducible results will be obtained when the assay procedure is carried out with a complete understanding of the package insert instructions and with adherence to good laboratory practice.
- ✓ The results obtained from the use of this kit should be used only as an adjunct to other diagnostic procedures and information available to the physician.
- ✓ Serum samples demonstrating gross lipemia, gross hemolysis, or turbidity should not be used with this test.
- ✓ The wash procedure is critical. Insufficient washing will results in poor precision and falsely elevated absorbance readings.

Assay Protocol

Reagent Preparation

- ✓ All reagents should be brought to room temperature (18-25℃) before use.
- ✓ All reagents should be mixed by gentle inversion or swirling prior to use. Do not induce foaming.
- ✓ Samples with expected testosterone concentrations over 18 ng/ml may be quantitated by dilution with diluent available from your vendor.

Sample Preparation

- ✓ Serum should be used in the test.
- ✓ No special pretreatment of sample is necessary.
- ✓ Serum samples may be stored at 2-8℃ for up to 24 hours, and should be frozen at -20℃ or lower for longer periods. Avoid grossly hemolytic (bright red), lipemic (milky), or tubid samples.
- ✓ Please note: Samples containing sodium azide should not be used in the assay.

Assay Procedure

1. Secure the desired number of coated wells in the holder.
2. Dispense 10 µl of standards, specimens and controls into appropriate wells.
3. Dispense 100 µl of Testosterone-HRP Conjugate Reagent into each well.
4. Dispense 50 µl of rabbit anti-Testosterone reagent to each well. Thoroughly mix for 30 seconds. It is very important to mix them completely.
5. Incubate at 37℃ for 90 minutes.
6. Remove the incubation mixture by ficking plate contents into a waste container. Rinse and flick the microtiter wells 5 times with deionized or distilled water. Do not use tap water.
7. Strike the wells sharply onto absorbent paper or paper towels to remove all residual water droplets.
8. Dispense 100 µl of TMB Reagent into each well. Gently mix for 5 seconds.
9. Incubate at room temperature for 20 minutes.
10. Stop the reaction by adding 100 µl of Stop Solution to each well.
11. Gently mix 30 seconds. It is important to make sure that all the blue color changes to yellow color completely.
12. Read absorbance at 450 nm with a microtiter well reader within 15 minutes.

Data Analysis

Calculation of Results

- ✓ Calculate the mean absorbance value (OD_{450}) for each set of reference standards, controls and samples.
- ✓ Construct a standard curve by plotting the mean absorbance obtained for each reference standard against its concentration in ng/ml on a linear-linear graph paper, with absorbance values on the vertical (y) axis, and concentrations on the horizontal (x) axis.
- ✓ Use the mean absorbance values for each specimen to determine the corresponding concentration of testosterone in ng/ml from the standard curve. Depending on experience and/or the availability of computer capability, other methods of data reduction may be employed.
- ✓ Any values obtained for diluted samples must be further converted by applying the appropriate dilution factor in the calculations.

- Example of standard curve:

  Results of a typical standard run with absorbency readings at 450 nm shown in the Y axis against testosterone concentrations shown in the X axis.

  Note: This standard curve is for the purpose of illustration only, and should not be used to calculate unknowns. Each laboratory must provide its own data and standard curve in each experiment.

Testosterone (ng/ml)	Absorbance (450 nm)
0	2.432
0.1	1.750
0.5	1.161
2.0	0.832
6.0	0.537
18.0	0.208

- Quality Control

- ✓ Good laboratory practice requires that quality control specimens (controls) be run with each calibration curve to verify assay performance. To ensure proper performance, control material should be assayed repeatedly to establish mean values and acceptable ranges.
- ✓ We recommend using Bio-Rad Lyphochek Immunoassay Control Sera as controls. The Testosterone ELISA kit also provides with internal controls, Level 1 and 2.
- ✓ Controls containing sodium azide cannot be used.

Performance Characteristics

- Sensitivity

  The minimum detectable concentration of the Testosterone ELISA assay as measured by 2 SD from the mean of a zero standard is estimated to be 0.05 ng/ml.

- Precision

✓ Intra-Assay Precision

Within-run precision was determined by replicate determinations of four different serum samples in one assay. Within-assay variability is shown below:

Samples	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**
# Replicates	24	24	24	24
Mean Testosterone (ng/ml)	0.44	3.7	5.1	12.7
S.D.	0.03	0.4	0.4	0.6
C.V. (%)	6.4	10.0	8.3	5.0

✓ Inter-Assay Precision

Between-run precision was determined by replicate measurements of six different serum samples over a series of individually calibrated assays. Between-assay variability is shown below:

Samples	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**
# Replicates	20	20	20	20
Mean Testosterone (ng/ml)	0.45	3.4	5.0	13.3
S.D.	0.02	0.3	0.2	0.5
C.V. (%)	4.4	8.4	4.4	3.7

- Recovery Study

  Various patient serum samples of known Testosterone levels were combined and assayed in duplicate. The mean recovery was 95.3%.

Pair No.	**Expected [Testosterone] (ng/ml)**	**Observed [Testosterone] (ng/ml)**	**% Recovery**
1	8.7	9.2	105.9
2	9.3	9.6	103.6
3	6.3	5.2	83.2
4	5.0	5.0	99.9
5	2.6	3.3	127.5
6	2.4	2.3	97.5
7	0.66	0.46	70.4
8	0.61	0.46	74.6

- Specificity

  The following materials have been checked for cross reactivity. The percentage indicates cross reactivity at 50% displacement compared to Testosterone.

  Data on the cross-reactivity for several endogenous and pharmaceutical steroids are summarized in the following table:

  Cross-reactivity (%) = Observed Estradiol Concentration / Steroid Concentration × 100

Steroid	**Cross-Reactivity**
Testosterone	100%
Dihydrotestosterone	0.86%
Androstenedione	0.89%
Androsterone	1.0%
17β Estradiol	0.05%
Progesterone	<0.05%
Epitestosterone	<0.05%
17-OH-Progesterone	<0.05%
Estriol	<0.05%
Cortisol	<0.05%
DHEA-Sulphate	<0.05%

Resources

References

1. Chen, A., Bookstein, J.J., Meldrum, D.R., Diagnosis of a testosterone-secreting adrenal adenoma by selective venous catheterization. Fertil. Steril., 1991; 55: 1202-1203.
2. Granoff, A.B. and Abraham, G.E., Peripheral and adrenal venous levels of steroids in a patient with virilizing adrenal adenoma. Obstet. Gynecol., 1979; 53:111-115.
3. Bricaire, C., Raynaud, A., Benotmane, A., et al., Selective venous catheterization in the evaluation of hyperandrogenism. J. Endocrinol Invest., 1991; 14: 949-956.
4. Heinonen, P.K., Androgen production by epithelial ovarian tumours in post-menopausal women. Maturitas, 1991; 13: 117-117-122.
5. Tietz, N.W. ed., Clinical Guide to Laboratory Tests, 3rd Edition, W.B. Saunders, Co., Philadelphia, 1995: 578-580.
6. USA Center for Disease Control/National Institute of Health Manual, “Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories"” 1984.
7. ICN Guide to Endocrine Testing. Diagnostic Division, ICN Biomedicals, Inc. pp. 2:33-35; 3:4-6.

Plate Layout

12								
11								
10								
9								
8								
7								
6								
5								
4								
3								
2								
1								
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H

WHO laboratory manual for the Examination and processing of human semen

FIFTH EDITION

World Health Organization

WHO laboratory manual for the

Examination and processing of human semen

FIFTH EDITION

World Health Organization

WHO Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

WHO laboratory manual for the examination and processing of human semen - 5th ed.

Previous editions had different title : WHO laboratory manual for the examination of human semen and sperm-cervical mucus interaction.

1.Semen - chemistry. 2.Semen - laboratory manuals. 3.Spermatozoa - laboratory manuals. 4.Sperm count. 5.Sperm-ovum interactions - laboratory manuals. 6.Laboratory techniques and procedures - standards. 7.Quality control. I.World Health Organization.

ISBN 978 92 4 154778 9 (NLM classification: QY 190)

Printed in Switzerland.

Cover photo: courtesy of C. Brazil

CONTENTS

FIGURES

BOXES

TABLES

Acknowledgements

This publication was produced by the UNDP/UNFPA/WHO/World Bank Special Programme of Research, Development and Research Training in Human Reproduction (HRP), WHO Department of Reproductive Health and Research (RHR). The participation of the following individuals in the preparation and editing of this manual is gratefully acknowledged:

Editor-in-chief

Dr Trevor G Cooper
Centre of Reproductive Medicine and Andrology of the University,
Münster, Germany
(WHO Collaborating Centre for Research in Male Reproduction)

Editorial team

Dr John Aitken
Biological Sciences
School of Life and Environmental Sciences
University Drive
Callaghan, New South Wales, Australia

Dr Jacques Auger
Service de Biologie de la Réproduction
Pavillon Cassini Hôpital Cochin
Paris, France

Dr HW Gordon Baker
University of Melbourne
Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology
Royal Women's Hospital
Carlton, Victoria, Australia

Dr Chris LR Barratt
Division of Maternal and Child Health Sciences
The Medical School
Ninewells Hospital
Dundee, Scotland

Dr Hermann M Behre
Centre for Reproductive Medicine and Andrology
Martin-Luther-University
Halle, Germany

Dr Lars Björndahl
Andrology Centre,
Karolinska University Hospital and Institute,
Stockholm, Sweden

Ms Charlene Brazil
Center for Health and the Environment
University of California
Davis, CA, USA

Dr Christopher De Jonge
University of Minnesota
Reproductive Medicine Center
Minneapolis, MN, USA

Dr Gustavo F Doncel
CONRAD
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology Eastern Virginia Medical School
Norfolk, VA, USA

Dr Daniel Franken
Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology
Tygerberg Hospital
Tygerberg, South Africa

Dr Trine B Haugen
Faculty of Health Sciences
Oslo University College
Oslo, Norway

Dr Aucky Hinting
Andrology Unit,
Department of Biomedicine
School of Medicine
Airlangga University,
Surabaya, Indonesia

Mr Godwin E Imade
Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology
Faculty of Medical Sciences University of Jos
Jos, Nigeria

Dr Thinus F Kruger
Reproductive Biology Unit
Stellenbosch University
Tygerberg, South Africa

Dr Hesbon O Odongo
Department of Zoology
University of Nairobi
Nairobi, Kenya

Ms Elizabeth Noonan
Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center
Statistical Center for HIV/AIDS Research and Prevention
Seattle, WA, USA

Dr Steven M Schrader
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Cincinnati, OH, USA

Dr Christina CL Wang
Harbor-UCLA Medical Center
Torrance, CA, USA

Dr William Shu-Biu Yeung
Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology
University of Hong Kong
Hong Kong SAR, China

WHO Secretariat, Department of Reproductive Health and Research

Dr Kirsten M Vogelsong
Scientist
Research Area Manager

Dr Sigrid von Eckardstein
Former Acting Research Area Manager

Dr Michael T Mbizvo
Director *ad interim*

Ms Maud Keizer
Secretary

Additional thanks go to: Ms Cathy Treece, Ms Charlene Tollner and Professor Jim Overstreet (University of California, Davis, CA, USA) for producing the morphology micrographs and checking the media; Dr Rune Eliasson (Sophiahemmet Hospital, Stockholm, Sweden) for help in defining non-sperm cells; Dr Timothy Farley (World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland) for review of the sections on quality control; and Dr Gary N Clarke (The Royal Women's Hospital, Carlton, Australia), Dr Roelof Menkveld (Tygerberg Academic Hospital and University of Stellenbosch, Tygerberg, South Africa), and Professor Pieter Wranz (University of Stellenbosch, Tygerberg, South Africa) for providing additional information used in the compilation of the manual.

The financial support of the International Society of Andrology is gratefully acknowledged.

This edition of the manual is dedicated to the memory of the late Geoffrey Waites (1928–2005), former manager of the WHO Task Force on Methods for the Regulation of Male Fertility and co-editor of the second, third and fourth editions of this laboratory manual. The editorial committee's devotion to its task was driven by its appreciation of Geoff's honesty, fairness and concern for the underprivileged.

Acronyms and abbreviations used in this manual

Ab	antibody
AI	artificial insemination
AID	artificial insemination with donor semen
AIH	artificial insemination with husband's semen
ALH	amplitude of lateral head displacement
ANOVA	analysis of variance
APAAP	alkaline phosphatase–anti-alkaline phosphatase complex
AR	acrosome-reacted
ART	assisted reproductive technology
ASA	anti-sperm antibody
BAEE	N-benzoyl-L-arginine ethyl ester
BCF	beat-cross frequency (Hz)
BSA	bovine serum albumin
BWW	Biggers, Whitten and Whittingham
CASA	computer-aided sperm analysis
CASMA	computer-aided sperm morphometric assessment
CBAVD	congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens
CD	compact disk
CD	cytoplasmic droplet
CD45	cluster of determination 45 (pan-leukocyte marker)
CD46	cluster of determination 46 (acrosomal antigen)
CI	confidence interval
CL	confidence limits
CO_2	carbon dioxide
DMSO	dimethyl sulfoxide
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid
DPBS	Dulbecco's phosphate-buffered saline
DVD	digital versatile disc
EDTA	ethylenediamine tetra-acetic acid
EQA	external quality assurance
EQC	external quality control
ERC	excess residual cytoplasm
FITC	fluorescein isothiocyanate
FMLP	formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine
GIFT	gamete intrafallopian transfer
GPC	glycerophosphocholine
H_2O_2	hydrogen peroxide
HBSS	Hanks' balanced salt solution
HBV	hepatitis B virus
hCG	human chorionic gonadotrophin
HCV	hepatitis C virus
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HOP	hamster oocyte penetration
HOS	hypo-osmotic swelling
HPF	high-power field
HRP	horseradish peroxidase

HSA	human serum albumin
HTF	human tubal fluid
IB	immunobead
IBT	immunobead test
ICSI	intracytoplasmic sperm injection
Ig	immunoglobulin
IM	immotility
IQC	internal quality control
IU	international unit
IUI	intrauterine insemination
IVF	in-vitro fertilization
KRM	Krebs–Ringer Medium
LIN	linearity
LLQ	lower limit of quantification
LPF	low-power field
MAD	mean angular displacement
MAI	multiple anomalies index
MAR	mixed antiglobulin reaction
NA	numerical aperture
NP	non-progressive (motility)
PBS	phosphate-buffered saline
PDCA	plan, do, check, act
PMA	phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate
PMSG	pregnant mare serum gonadotrophin
PNPG	*p*-nitrophenol glucopyranoside
PR	progressive (motility)
PSA	*Pisum sativum* agglutinin
QA	quality assurance
QC	quality control
RCF	relative centrifugal force
RI	refractive index
RNA	ribonucleic acid
ROS	reactive oxygen species
r.p.m.	revolutions per minute
SD	standard deviation
SDI	sperm deformity index
SDS	sodium dodecyl sulfate
SE	standard error
SOP	standard operating procedure
STR	straightness (VSL/VAP)
TBS	Tris-buffered saline
TGG	Tyrode's glucose glycerol
TZI	teratozoospermia index
VAP	average path velocity
VCL	curvilinear velocity
VSL	straight-line (rectilinear) velocity
WHO	World Health Organization
WOB	wobble (VAP/VCL)

CHAPTER 1 Background

1.1 Introduction

The *WHO laboratory manual for the examination of human semen and sperm–cervical mucus interaction* was first published in 1980, in response to a growing need for the standardization of procedures for the examination of human semen. It has since been updated three times, and translated into a number of languages. Over the past 30 years, the manual has been recognized as providing global standards and has been used extensively by research and clinical laboratories throughout the world.

Despite this success, it has become apparent that some recommendations from previous editions of the manual needed to be revised in light of new evidence, and that some concepts needed more explanation and supporting evidence. Prompted by these considerations, WHO established an editorial committee to review all the methods described in the manual, with a view to endorsing, changing or updating them. In many instances, this proved difficult, as insufficient data had been obtained using the methods described in the manual. In some cases, single well-accredited laboratories were obtaining consistent results, but these had not been confirmed by others. For these situations, the editorial committee developed a consensus position after evaluating the pertinent literature.

Additional recommendations were received from technicians and scientists, notably regarding the need for more detail for many of the methods described. Lack of detail in previous editions has meant that some laboratories have preferred to use methods described elsewhere, or have developed their own versions of methods, while still claiming to perform semen analysis according to the WHO manual. In order to make global comparisons easier, this edition of the manual therefore includes much greater detail, and the rationale is explained when alternative methods of analysis are presented. It is recommended that, when reporting results in published articles, laboratories should indicate which specific method was used when they refer to this manual.

1.2 The fifth edition

The fifth edition comprises three parts: semen analysis (Chapters 2–4), sperm preparation (Chapters 5 and 6) and quality assurance (Chapter 7). Part I, dealing with semen analysis, resembles that in previous editions, but is divided into three chapters: standard methods, which are robust routine procedures for determining semen quality; optional tests, which may be used in certain situations or by choice of the laboratory; and research tests, which are not currently regarded as routine. As semen culture is not normally performed in an andrology laboratory, this is mentioned only in the section on sterile collection of semen. The section on sperm preparation extends beyond the ejaculate to include spermatozoa obtained from the testis and epididymis. Interspersed with bulleted methodological instructions are Notes (explanations of methodology), Comments (interpretation of results) and Boxes (containing additional explanatory material).

The main features of this fifth edition are outlined below.

- The chapters on semen analysis include details of all working solutions, procedures, calculations and interpretation, so that any given methodology is essentially complete, with minimal cross-referencing to other parts of the manual.
- The section on sperm preparation has been expanded, and a chapter on cryopreservation of spermatozoa has been added. Procedures related to the analysis of cervical mucus have been divided between the chapter on optional procedures and an appendix on characteristics of mucus.
- There are fewer appendices than in earlier editions, and they are restricted to specialized or only rarely needed information.
- *Assessment of sperm numbers*. The semen dilutions and the areas of the counting chamber used to assess the number of spermatozoa in a semen sample have been changed to allow 200 spermatozoa per replicate to be counted. The importance of sampling errors, and the certainty of the numerical results obtained, is emphasized. The editorial committee considered that total sperm number per ejaculate provides a more accurate assessment of testicular function than does sperm concentration, but for this semen volume has to be measured accurately.
- *Assessment of azoospermia.* Although superficially simple, the diagnosis of azoospermia is confounded by many factors, including large errors associated with counting few spermatozoa, the large number of microscopic fields to be analysed and difficulties in examining debris-laden sperm pellets. Recommended changes include examining fixed, uncentrifuged samples and indicating the sensitivity of the counting methods employed. However, centrifugation methods necessary for accumulating sufficient numbers of cells for therapeutic procedures, and methods for the detection of motile spermatozoa in unfixed samples for assessment of post-vasectomy semen, are also included.
- *Assessment of sperm motility.* A major change from previous editions is in the categorization of sperm motility. It is now recommended that spermatozoa should be categorized as progressively motile, non-progressively motile and immotile (instead of grades a, b, c or d).
- *Assessment of sperm morphology.* Some laboratories assess only normal forms, while others consider the type, location and extent of abnormality to be more important. Whether these or differential or semiquantitative assessments increase the value of semen analysis remains contentious. Evidence supporting the relationship between the percentage of normal forms (as defined by strict categorization or computer-aided assessment of morphology) and fertilization rates in vivo justifies trying to determine a morphologically distinct subpopulation of spermatozoa within semen. In this edition, more and better-quality micrographs of spermatozoa considered normal and borderline are included, accompanied by explanations of why each spermatozoon has been classified the way it has. This should help in training technicians to categorize spermatozoa consistently. Recent data from a fertile population have allowed reference values for the percentage of morphologically normal forms to be given.

- *Quality control.* This chapter has been completely rewritten. Rigorous quality assurance for semen analysis is necessary for analytical methods to be robust. Hints and suggestions are given on how to improve laboratory performance when quality control results are unsatisfactory.
- *Reference ranges and reference limits.* Data characterizing the semen quality of fertile men, whose partners had a time to pregnancy of 12 months or less, provided the reference ranges for this manual. Raw data from between about 400 and 1900 semen samples, from recent fathers in eight countries on three continents, were used to generate the reference ranges. Conventional statistical tradition is to take the 2.5th centile from a two-sided reference interval as the threshold below which values may be considered to come from a different population. However, a one-sided reference interval was considered to be more appropriate for semen, since high values of any parameter are unlikely to be detrimental to fertility. The 5th centile is given as the lower reference limit, and the complete distribution for each semen parameter is also given in Appendix 1.

1.3 Scope of the manual

The methods described here are intended as guidelines to improve the quality of semen analysis and comparability of results. They should not necessarily be taken as obligatory by local, national or global laboratory accreditation bodies. Semen analysis may be useful in both clinical and research settings, for investigating male fertility status as well as monitoring spermatogenesis during and following male fertility regulation.

PART I.

Semen analysis

CHAPTER 2 Standard procedures

2.1 Introduction

During ejaculation, semen is produced from a concentrated suspension of spermatozoa, stored in the paired epididymides, mixed with, and diluted by, fluid secretions from the accessory sex organs. It is emitted in several boluses. Comparison of pre- and post-vasectomy semen volumes reveals that about 90% of semen volume is made up of secretions from the accessory organs (Weiske, 1994), mainly the prostate and seminal vesicles, with minor contributions from the bulbourethral (Cowper's) glands and epididymides.

Semen has two major quantifiable attributes:

- the total number of spermatozoa: this reflects sperm production by the testes and the patency of the post-testicular duct system;
- the total fluid volume contributed by the various accessory glands: this reflects the secretory activity of the glands.

The nature of the spermatozoa (their vitality, motility and morphology) and the composition of seminal fluid are also important for sperm function.

During sexual intercourse, the initial, sperm-rich prostatic fraction of the ejaculated semen may come into contact with cervical mucus extending into the vagina (Sobrero & MacLeod, 1962), with the rest of the fluid remaining as a pool in the vagina. In contrast, in the laboratory setting, the entire ejaculate is collected in one container, where spermatozoa are trapped in a coagulum developed from proteins of seminal vesicular origin. This coagulum is subsequently liquefied by the action of prostatic proteases, during which time its osmolality rises (Björndahl & Kvist, 2003; Cooper et al., 2005).

There is some evidence that the quality of semen specimens varies depending on how the ejaculate is produced. Ejaculates produced by masturbation and collected into containers in a room near the laboratory can be of lower quality than those recovered from non-spermicidal condoms used during intercourse at home (Zavos & Goodpasture, 1989). This difference may reflect a different form of sexual arousal, since the time spent producing a sample by masturbation—reflecting the extent of seminal emission before ejaculation—also influences semen quality (Pound et al., 2002).

Under given conditions of collection, semen quality depends on factors that usually cannot be modified, such as sperm production by the testes, accessory organ secretions and recent (particularly febrile) illness, as well as other factors, such as abstention time, that should be recorded and taken into account in interpreting the results.

The results of laboratory measurements of semen quality will depend on:

- Whether a complete sample is collected. During ejaculation the first semen fractions voided are mainly sperm-rich prostatic fluids, whereas later fractions are dominated by seminal vesicular fluid (Björndahl & Kvist, 2003). Therefore,

losing the first (sperm-rich) portion of the ejaculate has more influence on the results of semen analysis than does losing the last portion.

- The activity of the accessory sex glands, the fluids of which dilute the concentrated epididymal spermatozoa at ejaculation (Eliasson, 2003). Sperm concentration is not a direct measure of testicular sperm output, as it is influenced by the functioning of other reproductive organs; however, the total number of sperm ejaculated (sperm concentration multiplied by semen volume) is. For example, sperm concentrations in semen from young and old men may be the same, but total sperm numbers may differ, as both the volume of seminal fluid and total sperm output decrease with age, at least in some populations (Ng et al., 2004).
- The time since the last sexual activity. In the absence of ejaculation, spermatozoa accumulate in the epididymides, then overflow into the urethra and are flushed out in urine (Cooper et al., 1993; De Jonge et al., 2004). Sperm vitality and chromatin are unaffected by increased length of abstinence (Tyler et al., 1982b; De Jonge et al., 2004) unless epididymal function is disturbed (Correa-Perez et al., 2004).
- The penultimate abstinence period. As the epididymides are not completely emptied by one ejaculation (Cooper et al., 1993), some spermatozoa remain from the time of the previous ejaculation. This influences the range of age and quality of spermatozoa in the ejaculate (Tyler et al., 1982a). The extent of this influence is difficult to ascertain and it is rarely taken into account.
- The size of the testis, which influences the total number of spermatozoa per ejaculate (Handelsman et al., 1984; WHO, 1987; Behre et al., 2000; Andersen et al., 2000). Testicular size reflects the level of spermatogenic activity, which also affects sperm morphology (Holstein et al., 2003).

Comment: The large biological variation in semen quality (Castilla et al., 2006) reflects the many factors listed above, and requires that all measurements on semen be precise.

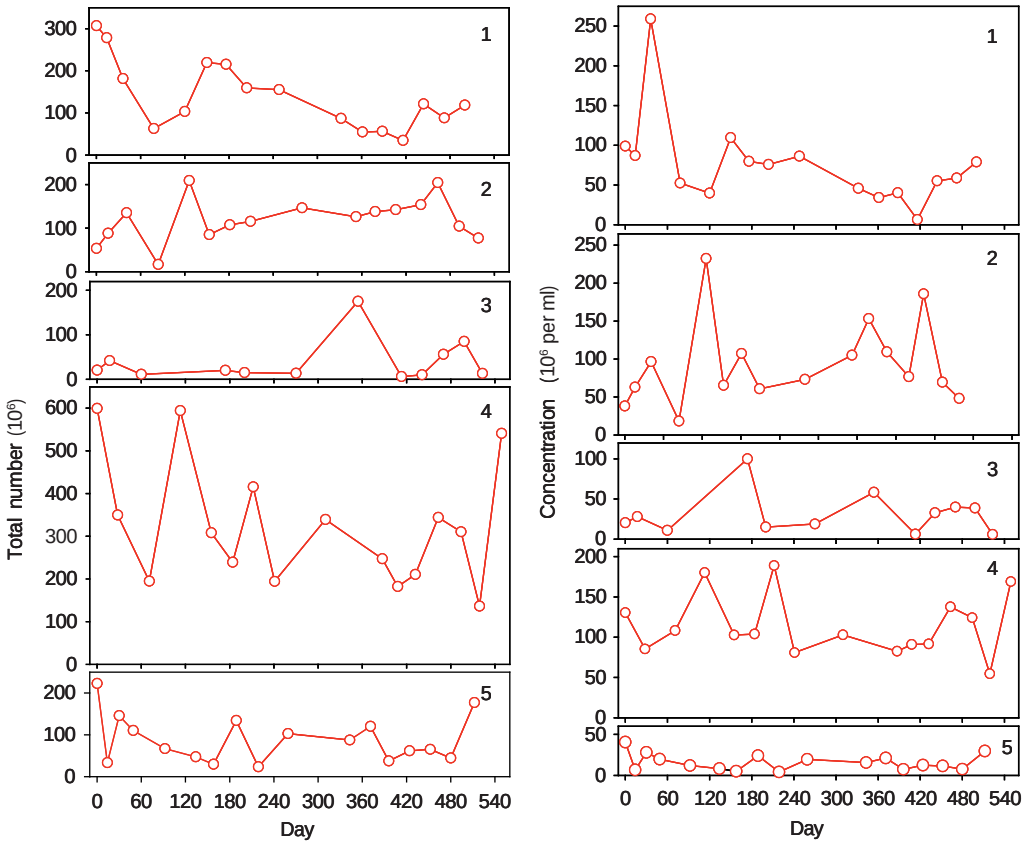
These variable, and largely uncontrollable, factors explain the well-known intra-individual variation in semen composition (Baker & Kovacs, 1985; Alvarez et al., 2003). Fig. 2.1 shows the variations over time in semen composition, as assessed by WHO-recommended methods, of five healthy young volunteers participating in the placebo arm of a male hormonal contraception study. Such variablility has consequences for the interpretation of semen analyses:

- It is impossible to characterize a man's semen quality from evaluation of a single semen sample.
- It is helpful to examine two or three samples to obtain baseline data (Poland et al., 1985; Berman et al., 1996; Carlsen et al., 2004; Castilla et al., 2006; Keel, 2006).

While measurements made on the whole population of ejaculated spermatozoa cannot define the fertilizing capacity of the few that reach the site of fertilization, semen analysis nevertheless provides essential information on the clinical status

of an individual. All aspects of semen collection and analysis must be done by properly standardized procedures if the results are to provide valid, useful information. The tests described in this chapter are accepted procedures that constitute the essential steps in semen evaluation.

Fig. 2.1 Variation in total number of spermatozoa and sperm concentration over a one-and-a-half-year period



Data courtesy of Schering Plough and Bayer Schering Pharma AG.

Semen analysis involves the following steps (which are described in detail in subsequent sections).

In the first 5 minutes:

- Placing the specimen container on the bench or in an incubator (37 °C) for liquefaction.

Between 30 and 60 minutes:

- Assessing liquefaction and appearance of the semen.
- Measuring semen volume.

- Measuring semen pH (if required).
- Preparing a wet preparation for assessing microscopic appearance, sperm motility and the dilution required for assessing sperm number.
- Assessing sperm vitality (if the percentage of motile cells is low).
- Making semen smears for assessing sperm morphology.
- Making semen dilutions for assessing sperm concentration.
- Assessing sperm number.
- Performing the mixed antiglobulin reaction (MAR) test (if required).
- Assessing peroxidase-positive cells (if round cells are present).
- Preparing spermatozoa for the immunobead test (if required).
- Centrifuging semen (if biochemical markers are to be assayed).

Within 3 hours:

- Sending samples to the microbiology laboratory (if required).

After 4 hours:

- Fixing, staining and assessing smears for sperm morphology.

Later on the same day (or on a subsequent day if samples are frozen):

- Assaying accessory gland markers (if required).
- Performing the indirect immunobead test (if required).

2.2 Sample collection

2.2.1 Preparation

- The sample should be collected in a private room near the laboratory, in order to limit the exposure of the semen to fluctuations in temperature and to control the time between collection and analysis (see Sections 2.2.5 and 2.2.6 for exceptions).
- The sample should be collected after a minimum of 2 days and a maximum of 7 days of sexual abstinence. If additional samples are required, the number of days of sexual abstinence should be as constant as possible at each visit.
- The man should be given clear written and spoken instructions concerning the collection of the semen sample. These should emphasize that the semen sample needs to be complete and that the man should report any loss of any fraction of the sample.
- The following information should be recorded on the report form (see Appendix 6, section A6.1): the man's name, birth date and personal code number, the period of abstinence, the date and time of collection, the completeness of the sample, any difficulties in producing the sample, and the interval between collection and the start of the semen analysis.

2.2.2 Collection of semen for diagnostic or research purposes

- The sample should be obtained by masturbation and ejaculated into a clean, wide-mouthed container made of glass or plastic, from a batch that has been confirmed to be non-toxic for spermatozoa (see Box 2.1).
- The specimen container should be kept at ambient temperature, between 20 °C and 37 °C, to avoid large changes in temperature that may affect the spermatozoa after they are ejaculated into it. It must be labelled with the man's name and identification number, and the date and time of collection.
- The specimen container is placed on the bench or in an incubator (37 °C) while the semen liquefies.
- Note in the report if the sample is incomplete, especially if the first, sperm-rich fraction may be missing. If the sample is incomplete, a second sample should be collected, again after an abstinence period of 2–7 days.

Box 2.1 Confirming the compatibility of semen collection vessels

Select several semen samples with high sperm concentration and good sperm motility. Place half of each specimen in a container known to be non-toxic (control) and the other half in the container being tested. Assess sperm motility (see Section 2.5) at hourly intervals in replicate at room temperature or at 37 °C for 4 hours. If there are no differences at each time point between control and test assessments ($P>0.05$ as judged by a paired *t*-test), the test containers can be considered to be non-toxic to spermatozoa and to meet semen collection requirements.

2.2.3 Sterile collection of semen for assisted reproduction

This is performed as for diagnostic collection (see Section 2.2.2) but the specimen containers, pipette tips and pipettes for mixing must be sterile.

2.2.4 Sterile collection of semen for microbiological analysis

In this situation, microbiological contamination from non-semen sources (e.g. commensal organisms from the skin) must be avoided. The specimen containers, pipette tips and pipettes for mixing must be sterile.

The man should:

- Pass urine.
- Wash hands and penis with soap, to reduce the risk of contamination of the specimen with commensal organisms from the skin.
- Rinse away the soap.
- Dry hands and penis with a fresh disposable towel.
- Ejaculate into a sterile container.

Note: The time between collection of the semen sample and the start of the investigation by the microbiological laboratory should not exceed 3 hours.

2.2.5 Collection of semen at home

- A sample may be collected at home in exceptional circumstances, such as a demonstrated inability to produce a sample by masturbation in the clinic or the lack of adequate facilities near the laboratory.
- The man should be given clear written and spoken instructions concerning the collection and transport of the semen sample. These should emphasize that the semen sample needs to be complete, i.e. all the ejaculate is collected, including the first, sperm-rich portion, and that the man should report any loss of any fraction of the sample. It should be noted in the report if the sample is incomplete.
- The man should be given a pre-weighed container, labelled with his name and identification number.
- The man should record the time of semen production and deliver the sample to the laboratory within 1 hour of collection.
- During transport to the laboratory, the sample should be kept between 20 °C and 37 °C.
- The report should note that the sample was collected at home or another location outside the laboratory.

2.2.6 Collection of semen by condom

- A sample may be collected in a condom during sexual intercourse only in exceptional circumstances, such as a demonstrated inability to produce a sample by masturbation.
- Only special non-toxic condoms designed for semen collection should be used; such condoms are available commercially.
- The man should be given information from the manufacturer on how to use the condom, close it, and send or transport it to the laboratory.
- The man should record the time of semen production and deliver the sample to the laboratory within 1 hour of collection.
- During transport to the laboratory, the sample should be kept between 20 °C and 37 °C.
- The report should note that the sample was collected by means of a special condom during sexual intercourse at home or another location outside the laboratory.

Note: Ordinary latex condoms must not be used for semen collection because they contain agents that interfere with the motility of spermatozoa (Jones et al., 1986).

Comment 1: Coitus interruptus is not a reliable means of semen collection, because the first portion of the ejaculate, which contains the highest number of spermatozoa, may be lost. Moreover, there may be cellular and bacteriological contamination of the sample, and the low pH of the vaginal fluid could adversely affect sperm motility.

Comment 2: If a man cannot provide a semen sample, the postcoital test (see Section 3.3.1) may provide some information about his spermatozoa.

2.2.7 Safe handling of specimens

Semen samples may contain dangerous infectious agents (e.g. human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis viruses or herpes simplex virus) and should therefore be handled as a biohazard. If the sample is to be processed for bioassay, intra-uterine insemination (IUI), in-vitro fertilization (IVF) or intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) (see Section 5.1), or if semen culture is to be performed (see Section 2.2.4), sterile materials and techniques must be used. Safety guidelines as outlined in Appendix 2 should be strictly followed; good laboratory practice is fundamental to laboratory safety (WHO, 2004).

2.3 Initial macroscopic examination

Semen analysis should begin with a simple inspection soon after liquefaction, preferably at 30 minutes, but no longer than 1 hour after ejaculation, to prevent dehydration or changes in temperature from affecting semen quality.

2.3.1 Liquefaction

Immediately after ejaculation into the collection vessel, semen is typically a semi-solid coagulated mass. Within a few minutes at room temperature, the semen usually begins to liquefy (become thinner), at which time a heterogeneous mixture of lumps will be seen in the fluid. As liquefaction continues, the semen becomes more homogeneous and quite watery, and in the final stages only small areas of coagulation remain. The complete sample usually liquefies within 15 minutes at room temperature, although rarely it may take up to 60 minutes or more. If complete liquefaction does not occur within 60 minutes, this should be recorded. Semen samples collected at home or by condom will normally have liquefied by the time they arrive in the laboratory.

Normal liquefied semen samples may contain jelly-like granules (gelatinous bodies) which do not liquefy; these do not appear to have any clinical significance. The presence of mucus strands, however, may interfere with semen analysis.

Note 1: Liquefaction can be recognized both macroscopically, as described above, and microscopically. Immobilized spermatozoa gain the ability to move as the semen liquefies. If immobilized spermatozoa are observed on microscopic examination, more time must be allowed for the liquefaction process to be completed.

Note 2: During liquefaction, continuous gentle mixing or rotation of the sample container on a two-dimensional shaker, either at room temperature or in an incubator set at 37 °C, can help to produce a homogeneous sample.

Note 3: If the semen does not liquefy within 30 minutes, do not proceed with semen analysis but wait for another 30 minutes. If liquefaction has not occurred within 60 minutes, proceed as in Section 2.3.1.1.

2.3.1.1 Delayed liquefaction

Occasionally samples may not liquefy, making semen evaluation difficult. In these cases, additional treatment, mechanical mixing or enzymatic digestion may be necessary.

1. Some samples can be induced to liquefy by the addition of an equal volume of physiological medium (e.g. Dulbecco's phosphate-buffered saline; see Appendix 4, section A4.2), followed by repeated pipetting.
2. Inhomogeneity can be reduced by repeated (6–10 times) gentle passage through a blunt gauge 18 (internal diameter 0.84 mm) or gauge 19 (internal diameter 0.69 mm) needle attached to a syringe.
3. Digestion by bromelain, a broad-specificity proteolytic enzyme (EC 3.4.22.32), may help to promote liquefaction (see Box 2.2).

Box 2.2 Preparation of bromelain

Prepare 10 IU/ml bromelain in Dulbecco's phosphate-buffered saline (see Appendix 4, section A4.2); it is difficult to dissolve but, with mixing, most should dissolve within 15–20 minutes. Dilute semen 1 + 1 (1:2) with the 10 IU/ml bromelain, stir with a pipette tip, and incubate at 37 °C for 10 minutes. Mix the sample well before further analysis.

Comment: These treatments may affect seminal plasma biochemistry, sperm motility and sperm morphology, and their use must be recorded. The 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution of semen with bromelain must be accounted for when calculating sperm concentration.

2.3.2 Semen viscosity

After liquefaction, the viscosity of the sample can be estimated by gently aspirating it into a wide-bore (approximately 1.5 mm diameter) plastic disposable pipette, allowing the semen to drop by gravity and observing the length of any thread. A normal sample leaves the pipette in small discrete drops. If viscosity is abnormal, the drop will form a thread more than 2 cm long.

Alternatively, the viscosity can be evaluated by introducing a glass rod into the sample and observing the length of the thread that forms upon withdrawal of the rod. The viscosity should be recorded as abnormal when the thread exceeds 2 cm.

In contrast to a partially unliquefied sample, a viscous semen specimen exhibits homogeneous stickiness and its consistency will not change with time. High viscosity can be recognized by the elastic properties of the sample, which adheres strongly to itself when attempts are made to pipette it. The methods to reduce viscosity are the same as those for delayed liquefaction (see Section 2.3.1.1).

Comment: High viscosity can interfere with determination of sperm motility, sperm concentration, detection of antibody-coated spermatozoa and measurement of biochemical markers.

2.3.3 Appearance of the ejaculate

A normal liquefied semen sample has a homogeneous, grey-opalescent appearance. It may appear less opaque if the sperm concentration is very low; the colour may also be different, i.e. red-brown when red blood cells are present (haemospermia), or yellow in a man with jaundice or taking certain vitamins or drugs.

2.3.4 Semen volume

The volume of the ejaculate is contributed mainly by the seminal vesicles and prostate gland, with a small amount from the bulbourethral glands and epididymides. Precise measurement of volume is essential in any evaluation of semen, because it allows the total number of spermatozoa and non-sperm cells in the ejaculate to be calculated.

The volume is best measured by weighing the sample in the vessel in which it is collected.

- Collect the sample in a pre-weighed, clean, disposable container.
- Weigh the vessel with semen in it.
- Subtract the weight of the container.
- Calculate the volume from the sample weight, assuming the density of semen to be 1 g/ml (Auger et al., 1995). (Semen density varies between 1.043 and 1.102 g/ml (Huggins et al., 1942; Brazil et al., 2004a; Cooper et al., 2007).)

Note: Empty specimen containers may have different weights, so each container should be individually pre-weighed. The weight may be recorded on the container before it is given to the client. Use a permanent marker pen on the vessel itself or on a label. If a label is used for recording the weight, it should be attached before the empty container is weighed.

Alternatively, the volume can be measured directly.

- Collect the sample directly into a modifed graduated glass measuring cylinder with a wide mouth. These can be obtained commercially.
- Read the volume directly from the graduations (0.1 ml accuracy).

Note: Measuring volume by aspirating the sample from the specimen container into a pipette or syringe, or decanting it into a measuring cylinder, is not recommended, because not all the sample will be retrieved and the volume will therefore be underestimated. The volume lost can be between 0.3 and 0.9 ml (Brazil et al., 2004a; Iwamoto et al., 2006; Cooper et al., 2007).

Comment 1: Low semen volume is characteristic of obstruction of the ejaculatory duct or congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens (CBAVD) (de la Taille et al., 1998; Daudin et al., 2000; von Eckardstein et al., 2000; Weiske et al., 2000), a condition in which the seminal vesicles are also poorly developed.

Comment 2: Low semen volume can also be the result of collection problems (loss of a fraction of the ejaculate), partial retrograde ejaculation or androgen deficiency.

Comment 3: High semen volume may reflect active exudation in cases of active inflammation of the accessory organs.

2.3.4.1 Lower reference limit

The lower reference limit for semen volume is 1.5 ml (5th centile, 95% confidence interval (CI) 1.4–1.7).

2.3.5 Semen pH

The pH of semen reflects the balance between the pH values of the different accessory gland secretions, mainly the alkaline seminal vesicular secretion and the acidic prostatic secretion. The pH should be measured after liquefaction at a uniform time, preferably after 30 minutes, but in any case within 1 hour of ejaculation since it is influenced by the loss of CO_2 that occurs after production.

For normal samples, pH paper in the range 6.0 to 10.0 should be used.

- Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
- Spread a drop of semen evenly onto the pH paper.
- Wait for the colour of the impregnated zone to become uniform (<30 seconds).
- Compare the colour with the calibration strip to read the pH.

Note: The accuracy of the pH paper should be checked against known standards.

For viscous samples, the pH of a small aliquot of the semen can be measured using a pH meter designed for measurement of viscous solutions (Haugen & Grotmol, 1998).

2.3.5.1 Reference values

There are currently few reference values for the pH of semen from fertile men. Pending more data, this manual retains the consensus value of 7.2 as a lower threshold value.

Comment 1: If the pH is less than 7.0 in a semen sample with low volume and low sperm numbers, there may be ejaculatory duct obstruction or congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens (de la Taille et al., 1998; Daudin et al., 2000; von Eckardstein et al., 2000; Weiske et al., 2000), a condition in which seminal vesicles are also poorly developed.

Comment 2: Semen pH increases with time, as natural buffering decreases, so high pH values may provide little clinically useful information.

2.4 Initial microscopic investigation

A phase-contrast microscope is recommended for all examinations of unstained preparations of fresh semen (see Appendix 3 for how to set up a microscope). An initial microscopic examination of the sample involves scanning the preparation at a total magnification of ×100 (i.e. a combination of a ×10 objective lens with a ×10 ocular lens).

This provides an overview of the sample, to reveal:

- mucus strand formation;
- sperm aggregation or agglutination;
- the presence of cells other than spermatozoa, e.g. epithelial cells, “round cells” (leukocytes and immature germ cells) and isolated sperm heads or tails.

The preparation should then be observed at ×200 or ×400 total magnification (i.e. a combination of a ×20 or a ×40 objective with a ×10 ocular). This permits:

- assessment of sperm motility (see Section 2.5);
- determination of the dilution required for accurate assessment of sperm number (see Section 2.8).

2.4.1 Thorough mixing and representative sampling of semen

The nature of the liquefied ejaculate makes taking a representative sample of semen for analysis problematical. If the sample is not well mixed, analysis of two separate aliquots may show marked differences in sperm motility, vitality, concentration and morphology. To be certain of obtaining reproducible data, the sample should be thoroughly mixed before aliquots are taken for assessment (see Box 2.3), and results for replicate aliquots should agree before the values are accepted. Agreement between replicates is determined for sperm numbers by the Poisson distribution (see Boxes 2.7 and 2.10, and Tables 2.4 and 2.5) and for percentages by the binomial distribution (see Boxes 2.5 and 2.6, and Table 2.1).

Box 2.3 Thorough mixing of semen

Before removing an aliquot of semen for assessment, mix the sample well in the original container, but not so vigorously that air bubbles are created. This can be achieved by aspirating the sample 10 times into a wide-bore (approximately 1.5 mm diameter) disposable plastic pipette (sterile when necessary). Do not mix with a vortex mixer at high speed as this will damage spermatozoa.

2.4.2 Making a wet preparation

- Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
- Remove an aliquot of semen immediately after mixing, allowing no time for the spermatozoa to settle out of suspension.
- Remix the semen sample before removing replicate aliquots.

The volume of semen and the dimensions of the coverslip must be standardized, so that the analyses are carried out on a preparation of fixed depth of about 20 μm (see Box 2.4), which allows the spermatozoa to swim freely:

- Place a standard volume of semen, e.g. 10 μl, onto a clean glass slide.
- Cover it with a coverslip, e.g. 22 mm × 22 mm for 10 μl, to provide a chamber approximately 20 μm deep (see Box 2.4). The weight of the coverslip spreads the sample.
- Take care to avoid the formation and trapping of air bubbles between the coverslip and the slide.
- Assess the freshly made wet preparation as soon as the contents are no longer drifting.

Box 2.4 Depth of wet preparations

The depth of a preparation (D, μm) is obtained by dividing the volume of the sample (V, μl = mm^3) by the area over which it is spread (A, mm^2): $D = V/A$. Thus, a volume of 10 μl of semen delivered onto a clean glass slide and covered with a 22 mm × 22 mm coverslip (area 484 mm^2) provides a chamber of depth of 20.7 μm; a 6.5 μl sample covered with an 18 mm × 18 mm coverslip (area 324 mm^2) provides a depth of 20.1 μm; an 11 μl sample covered by a 21 mm × 26 mm coverslip (area 546 mm^2) provides a depth of 20.1 μm. Occasionally, a deeper chamber may be required: a 40 μl sample covered by a 24 mm × 50 mm coverslip (area 1200 mm^2) provides a depth of 33.3 μm.

Note 1: A chamber depth of less than 20 μm constrains the rotational movement of spermatozoa (Le Lannou et al., 1992; Kraemer et al., 1998).

Note 2: If the chamber is too deep, it will be difficult to assess spermatozoa as they move in and out of focus.

Note 3: If the number of spermatozoa per visual field varies considerably, the sample is not homogeneous. In such cases, the semen sample should be mixed again thoroughly (see Box 2.3) and a new slide prepared as above.

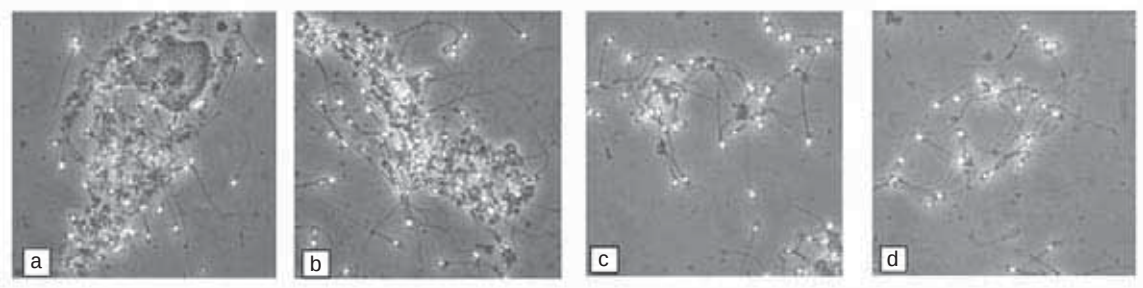
Note 4: Lack of homogeneity may also result from abnormal consistency, abnormal liquefaction (see Section 2.3.1), aggregation of spermatozoa (see Section 2.4.3) or sperm agglutination (see Section 2.4.4).

2.4.3 Aggregation of spermatozoa

The adherence either of immotile spermatozoa to each other or of motile spermatozoa to mucus strands, non-sperm cells or debris is considered to be non-specific aggregation (Fig. 2.2) and should be recorded as such.

Fig. 2.2 Non-specific aggregation of spermatozoa in semen

Views of spermatozoa aggregated with an epithelial cell (a), debris (b) or spermatozoa (c, d).



Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

2.4.4 Agglutination of spermatozoa

Agglutination specifically refers to motile spermatozoa sticking to each other, head-to-head, tail-to-tail or in a mixed way. The motility is often vigorous with a frantic shaking motion, but sometimes the spermatozoa are so agglutinated that their motion is limited. Any motile spermatozoa that stick to each other by their heads, tails or midpieces should be noted.

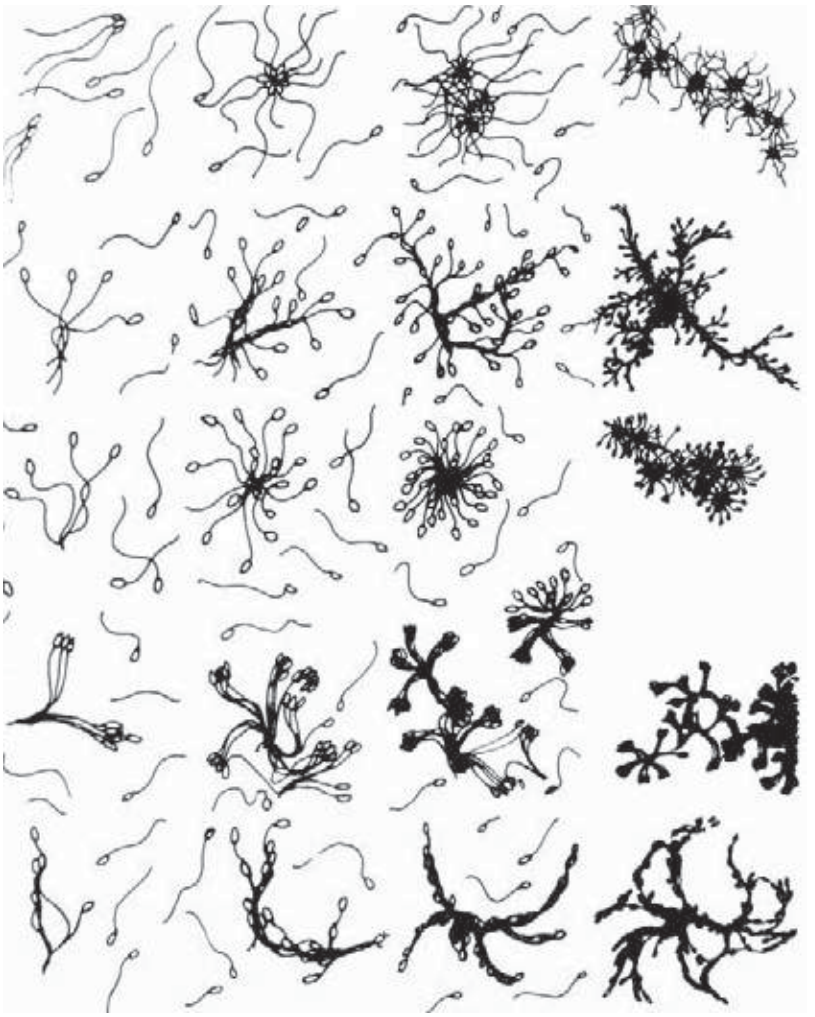
The major type of agglutination (reflecting the degree (grades 1–4) and the site of attachment (grades A–E) should be recorded (Rose et al., 1976) (see Fig. 2.3):

- grade 1: isolated — <10 spermatozoa per agglutinate, many free spermatozoa
- grade 2: moderate — 10–50 spermatozoa per agglutinate, free spermatozoa
- grade 3: large — agglutinates of >50 spermatozoa, some spermatozoa still free
- grade 4: gross — all spermatozoa agglutinated and agglutinates interconnected

Note: Motile spermatozoa stuck to cells or debris or immotile spermatozoa stuck to each other (aggregation) should not be scored as agglutination.

Fig. 2.3 Schematic diagram of different extents of sperm agglutination

Parts involved	Degree of agglutination			
	1. Isolated (<10 sperm/ agglutinate, many free sperm)	2. Moderate (10–50 sperm/ agglutinate, free sperm)	3. Large (agglutinates >50 sperm, some sperm still free)	4. Gross (all sperm agglutinated, and agglutinates interconnected)
A. Head-to-head				
B. Tail-to-tail (heads are seen to be free and move clear of agglutinates)				
C. Tail-tip-to-tail-tip				
D. Mixed (clear head-to-head and tail-to-tail agglutinations)				
E. Tangle (heads and tails enmeshed. Heads are not clear of agglutinates as they are in tail-to-tail agglutination)				



Reproduced from Rose et al. (1976) by permission of Wiley-Blackwell.

Comment 1: The presence of agglutination is not sufficient evidence to deduce an immunological cause of infertility, but is suggestive of the presence of anti-sperm antibodies; further testing is required (see Section 2.20).

Comment 2: Severe agglutination can affect the assessment of sperm motility and concentration.

2.4.5 Cellular elements other than spermatozoa

The ejaculate contains cells other than spermatozoa, some of which may be clinically relevant. These include epithelial cells from the genitourinary tract, as well as leukocytes and immature germ cells, the latter two collectively referred to as "round cells" (Johanisson et al., 2000). They can be identified by examining a stained smear at ×1000 magnification (see Section 2.12, Plates 13 and 14, and Section 2.19). These cells can be more precisely identified and quantified by detecting peroxidase activity (see Section 2.18) or the antigen CD45 (see Section 3.2). Their concentration can be estimated as for spermatozoa, from wet preparations (see Section 2.18.1.5) or from the ratio of these cells to the number of spermatozoa on the stained smear and the sperm concentration (see Section 2.12.1).

2.5 Sperm motility

The extent of progressive sperm motility (see Section 2.5.1) is related to pregnancy rates (Jouannet et al., 1988; Larsen et al., 2000; Zinaman et al., 2000). Methods of motility assessment involving computer-aided sperm analysis (CASA) are described in Section 3.5.2.

Sperm motility within semen should be assessed as soon as possible after liquefaction of the sample, preferably at 30 minutes, but in any case within 1 hour, following ejaculation, to limit the deleterious effects of dehydration, pH or changes in temperature on motility.

- Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
- Remove an aliquot of semen immediately after mixing, allowing no time for the spermatozoa to settle out of suspension.
- Remix the semen sample before removing a replicate aliquot.
- For each replicate, prepare a wet preparation approximately 20 μm deep (see Section 2.4.2).
- Wait for the sample to stop drifting (within 60 seconds).
- Examine the slide with phase-contrast optics at ×200 or ×400 magnification.
- Assess approximately 200 spermatozoa per replicate for the percentage of different motile categories.
- Compare the replicate values to check if they are acceptably close. If so, proceed with calculations; if not, prepare new samples.

Note 1: The procedure may be performed at room temperature or at 37 °C with a heated microscope stage, but should be standardized for each laboratory. If sperm motility is to be assessed at 37 °C, the sample should be incubated at this temperature and the preparation made with prewarmed slides and coverslips.

Note 2: The use of an eyepiece reticle with grid (see Fig. 2.4a) is recommended to limit the area viewed; this allows the same area of the slide to be assessed during both stages of scoring. Assess progressive motility first, then non-progressive motility and immotility (see Section 2.5.1). Limiting the area, and thus the number of spermatozoa assessed, ensures that several areas of the preparation are examined for motility.

2.5.1 Categories of sperm movement

A simple system for grading motility is recommended that distinguishes spermatozoa with progressive or non-progressive motility from those that are immotile. The motility of each spermatozoon is graded as follows:

- Progressive motility (PR): spermatozoa moving actively, either linearly or in a large circle, regardless of speed.
- Non-progressive motility (NP): all other patterns of motility with an absence of progression, e.g. swimming in small circles, the flagellar force hardly displacing the head, or when only a flagellar beat can be observed.
- Immotility (IM): no movement.

Comment 1: The previous edition of this manual recommended that progressively motile spermatozoa should be categorized as rapid or slow, with a speed of >25 μm/sec at 37 °C defining “grade a” spermatozoa. However, it is difficult for technicians to define the forward progression so accurately without bias (Cooper & Yeung, 2006).

Comment 2: When discussing sperm motility, it is important to specify total motility (PR + NP) or progressive motility (PR).

2.5.2 Preparing and assessing a sample for motility

- If motility is to be assessed at 37 °C, turn the stage warmer on 10 minutes in advance, to allow the temperature to stabilize.
- Prepare a wet preparation 20 μm deep (see Section 2.4.2).
- Examine the slide with phase-contrast optics at ×200 or ×400 magnification.
- Wait for the sample to stop drifting.
- Look for spermatozoa in an area at least 5 mm from the edge of the coverslip (see Fig. 2.4b), to prevent observation of effects of drying on motility.

- Systematically scan the slide to avoid repeatedly viewing the same area. Change fields often. Avoid choosing fields on the basis of the number of motile sperm seen (field choice should be random).
- Start scoring a given field at a random instant. Do not wait for spermatozoa to swim into the field or grid to begin scoring.
- Assess the motility of all spermatozoa within a defined area of the field. This is most easily achieved by using an eyepiece reticle (see Fig. 2.4a). Select the portion of the field or grid to be scored from the sperm concentration, i.e. score only the top row of the grid if the sperm concentration is high; score the entire grid if the sperm concentration is low.
- Scan and count quickly to avoid overestimating the number of motile spermatozoa. The goal is to count all motile spermatozoa in the grid section instantly; avoid counting both those present initially plus those that swim into the grid section during scoring, which would bias the result in favour of motile spermatozoa.
- Initially scan the grid section being scored for PR cells (see Section 2.5.1). Next count NP spermatozoa and finally IM spermatozoa in the same grid section. With experience, it may be possible to score all three categories of sperm movement at one time, and to score larger areas of the grid.
- Tally the number of spermatozoa in each motility category with the aid of a laboratory counter.
- Evaluate at least 200 spermatozoa in a total of at least five fields in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.5).
- Calculate the average percentage and difference between the two percentages for the most frequent motility grade (PR, NP or IM) in the replicate wet preparations.
- Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.1 or Fig. A7.2, Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between two percentages that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone.)
- If the difference between the percentages is acceptable, report the average percentage for each motility grade (PR, NP and IM). If the difference is too high, take two new aliquots from the semen sample, make two new preparations and repeat the assessment (see Box 2.6).
- Report the average percentage for each motility grade to the nearest whole number.

Note 1: Assess only intact spermatozoa (defined as having a head and a tail; see Section 2.7.3), since only intact spermatozoa are counted for sperm concentration. Do not count motile pinheads.

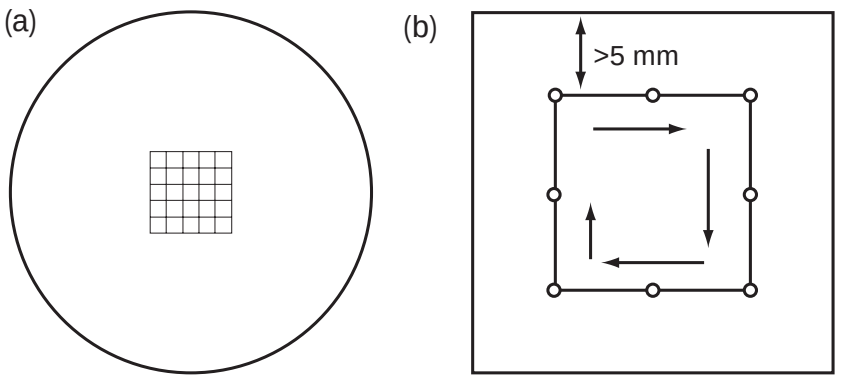
Note 2: If spermatozoa are being scored in two stages (i.e. PR first, followed by NP and IM from the same area) and a count of 200 spermatozoa is achieved before all motility categories from that area have been scored, counting must continue beyond 200 spermatozoa until all categories have been counted, in order to avoid bias towards the motility category scored first.

Note 3: It is common to overestimate sperm motility, but this can often be avoided by reversing the order of analysis (NP and IM first), using an eyepiece reticle, and being aware of, and avoiding, to the extent possible, potential sources of bias (see Section 7.13.3).

Note 4: On rare occasions, with inhomogeneous samples, even a third set of replicates may provide unacceptable differences. In this case, calculate the mean of all replicates and note this in the report.

Fig. 2.4 Aids to assessing sperm motility

(a) An eyepiece reticle makes it easier to count motile and immotile spermatozoa. (b) Systematic selection of fields for assessment of sperm motility, at least 5 mm from the edges of the coverslip.



Box 2.5 Errors in estimating percentages

How certain your estimate of a percentage is depends not only on the number (N) of spermatozoa counted but also on the true, but unknown, percentage (p) (binomial distribution). The approximate standard error (SE) is $\sqrt{((p(100–p))/N)}$ for percentages between 20 and 80. Outside this range, a more appropriate method to use is the angular transformation (arc sin square root), $z = \sin^{-1}\sqrt{(p/100)}$, with a standard deviation of $1/(2\sqrt{N})$ radians, which depends only on the number of spermatozoa counted and not the true percentage.

Table 2.1 Acceptable differences between two percentages for a given average, determined from replicate counts of 200 spermatozoa (total 400 counted)

Average (%)	Acceptable Difference*
0	1
1	2
2	3
3–4	4
5–7	5
8–11	6
12–16	7
17–23	8
24–34	9
35–65	10

Average (%)	Acceptable Difference*
66–76	9
77–83	8
84–88	7
89–92	6
93–95	5
96–97	4
98	3
99	2
100	1

**Based on the rounded 95% confidence interval.*

Box 2.6 Comparison of replicate percentages

Percentages should be rounded to the nearest whole number. The convention is to round 0.5% to the nearest even number, e.g. 32.5% is rounded down to 32% but 3.5% is rounded up to 4%. Note that the rounded percentages may not add up to 100%.

If the difference between the replicate percentages is less than or equal to that indicated in Table 2.1 for the given average, the estimates are accepted and the average is taken as the result.

Larger than acceptable differences suggest that there has been miscounting or errors of pipetting, or that the cells were not mixed well, with non-random distribution in the chamber or on the slide.

When the difference between percentages is greater than acceptable, discard the first two values and reassess. (Do not count a third sample and take the mean of the three values, or take the mean of the two closest values.)

For estimates of sperm motility, or vitality by eosin alone and for the hypo-osmotic swelling (HOS) test, prepare fresh replicates from new aliquots of semen. For estimates of vitality from eosin–nigrosin smears and sperm morphology, reassess the slides in replicate.

With these 95% CI cut-off values, approximately 5% of replicates will be outside the limits by chance alone (see Appendix 7, section A7.3). Exact binomial confidence limits can now be computer-generated, and these are used in this manual for the graphs and tables provided to assess agreement of replicates.

2.5.3 Worked examples

Example 1. Sperm motility estimates in replicate counts of 200 spermatozoa are: progressive, 30% and 50%; non-progressive, 5% and 15%; immotile, 65% and

35%. The most common category is immotile, with an average of 50% and a difference of 30%. From Table 2.1, it is seen that for an average of 50%, a difference of up to 10% would be expected to occur by chance alone. As the observed difference exceeds this, the results are discarded and two fresh slides are prepared and the sperm motility re-estimated.

Example 2. Sperm motility estimates in replicate counts of 200 spermatozoa are: progressive, 37% and 28%; non-progressive, 3% and 6%; immotile 60% and 66%. The most common category is immotile, with an average of 63% and a difference of 6%. From Table 2.1, it is seen that for an average of 63%, a difference of up to 10% would be expected to occur by chance alone. As the observed difference is less than this, the results are accepted and the mean values reported: PR 32%, NP 4%, IM 63%.

2.5.4 Lower reference limit

The lower reference limit for total motility (PR + NP) is 40% (5th centile, 95% CI 38–42).

The lower reference limit for progressive motility (PR) is 32% (5th centile, 95% CI 31–34).

Comment: The total number of progressively motile spermatozoa in the ejaculate is of biological significance. This is obtained by multiplying the total number of spermatozoa in the ejaculate (see Section 2.8.7) by the percentage of progressively motile cells.

2.6 Sperm vitality

Sperm vitality, as estimated by assessing the membrane integrity of the cells, may be determined routinely on all samples, but is especially important for samples with less than about 40% progressively motile spermatozoa. This test can provide a check on the motility evaluation, since the percentage of dead cells should not exceed (within sampling error) the percentage of immotile spermatozoa. The percentage of viable cells normally exceeds that of motile cells.

The percentage of live spermatozoa is assessed by identifying those with an intact cell membrane, from dye exclusion or by hypotonic swelling. The dye exclusion method is based on the principle that damaged plasma membranes, such as those found in non-vital (dead) cells, allow entry of membrane-impermeant stains. The hypo-osmotic swelling test presumes that only cells with intact membranes (live cells) will swell in hypotonic solutions. Examples of each test are described below.

Sperm vitality should be assessed as soon as possible after liquefaction of the semen sample, preferably at 30 minutes, but in any case within 1 hour of ejaculation, to prevent observation of deleterious effects of dehydration or of changes in temperature on vitality.

Comment 1: It is clinically important to know whether immotile spermatozoa are alive or dead. Vitality results should be assessed in conjunction with motility results from the same semen sample.

Comment 2: The presence of a large proportion of vital but immotile cells may be indicative of structural defects in the flagellum (Chemes & Rawe, 2003); a high percentage of immotile and non-viable cells (necrozoospermia) may indicate epididymal pathology (Wilton et al., 1988; Correa-Perez et al., 2004).

2.6.1 Vitality test using eosin–nigrosin

This one-step staining technique uses nigrosin to increase the contrast between the background and the sperm heads, which makes them easier to discern. It also permits slides to be stored for re-evaluation and quality-control purposes (Björndahl et al., 2003).

2.6.1.1 Preparing the reagents

1. Eosin Y: dissolve 0.67 g of eosin Y (colour index 45380) and 0.9 g of sodium chloride (NaCl) in 100 ml of purified water with gentle heating.
2. Eosin–nigrosin: add 10 g of nigrosin (colour index 50420) to the 100 ml of eosin Y solution.
3. Boil the suspension, then allow to cool to room temperature.
4. Filter through filter paper (e.g. 90 g/m^2) to remove coarse and gelatinous precipitates and store in a sealed dark-glass bottle.

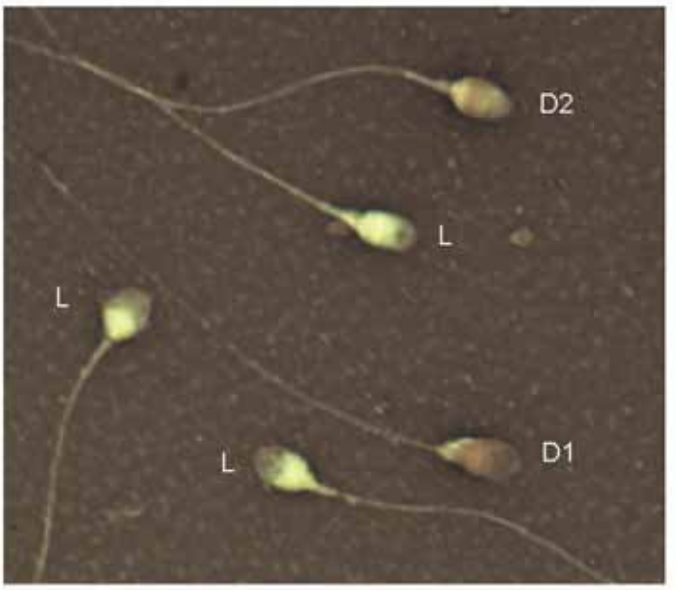
2.6.1.2 Procedure

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
2. Remove a 50-µl aliquot of semen and mix with an equal volume of eosin–nigrosin suspension, e.g. in a porcelain spot plate well or test-tube, and wait for 30 seconds.
3. Remix the semen sample before removing a replicate aliquot and mixing with eosin–nigrosin and treating as in step 2 above.
4. For each suspension make a smear on a glass slide (see Section 2.13.2) and allow it to dry in air.
5. Examine immediately after drying, or later after mounting with a permanent non-aqueous mounting medium (see Section 2.14.2.5).
6. Examine each slide with brightfield optics at ×1000 magnification and oil immersion.
7. Tally the number of stained (dead) or unstained (vital) cells with the aid of a laboratory counter.

8. Evaluate 200 spermatozoa in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.5).
9. Calculate the average and difference of the two percentages of vital cells from the replicate slides.
10. Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.1 or Fig. A7.2, Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between two percentages that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone.)
11. If the difference between the percentages is acceptable, report the average percentage of vital spermatozoa. If the difference is too high, make two new preparations from two fresh aliquots of the semen sample and repeat the assessment (see Box 2.6).
12. Report the average percentage of vital spermatozoa to the nearest whole number.

Fig. 2.5 Eosin–nigrosin smear observed in brightfield optics

Spermatozoa with red (D1) or dark pink (D2) heads are considered dead (membrane-damaged), whereas spermatozoa with white heads (L) or light pink heads are considered alive (membrane-intact).



Micrograph courtesy of TG Cooper.

2.6.1.3 Scoring

1. The nigrosin provides a dark background that makes it easier to discern faintly stained spermatozoa.

2. With brightfield optics, live spermatozoa have white heads and dead spermatozoa have heads that are stained red or dark pink (see Fig. 2.5). Spermatozoa with a faint pink head are assessed as alive.
3. If the stain is limited to only a part of the neck region, and the rest of the head area is unstained, this is considered a "leaky neck membrane", not a sign of cell death and total membrane disintegration. These cells should be assessed as alive.

2.6.1.4 Lower reference limit

The lower reference limit for vitality (membrane-intact spermatozoa) is 58% (5th centile, 95% CI 55–63).

Comment: The total number of membrane-intact spermatozoa in the ejaculate is of biological significance. This is obtained by multiplying the total number of spermatozoa in the ejaculate (see Section 2.8.7) by the percentage of membrane-intact cells.

2.6.2 Vitality test using eosin alone

This method is simple and rapid, but the wet preparations cannot be stored for quality control purposes.

2.6.2.1 Preparing the reagents

1. NaCl, 0.9% (w/v): dissolve 0.9 g of NaCl in 100 ml purified water.
2. Eosin Y, 0.5% (w/v): dissolve 0.5 g of eosin Y (colour index 45380) in 100 ml of 0.9% NaCl.

Note: Some commercially available eosin solutions are hypotonic aqueous solutions that will stress the spermatozoa and give false-positive results (Björndahl et al., 2004). If using such a solution, add 0.9 g of NaCl to 100 ml of solution to raise the osmolality.

2.6.2.2 Procedure

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
2. Remove an aliquot of 5 µl of semen and combine with 5 µl of eosin solution on a microscope slide. Mix with a pipette tip, swirling the sample on the slide.
3. Cover with a 22 mm × 22 mm coverslip and leave for 30 seconds.
4. Remix the semen sample, remove a replicate aliquot, mix with eosin and treat as in steps 2 and 3 above.
5. Examine each slide, preferably with negative-phase-contrast optics (positive-phase-contrast makes faint pink heads difficult to discern) at ×200 or ×400 magnification.

6. Tally the number of stained (dead) and unstained (vital) cells with the aid of a laboratory counter.
7. Evaluate 200 spermatozoa in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.5).
8. Calculate the average and difference of the two percentages of vital cells from the replicate preparations.
9. Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.1 or Fig. A7.2, Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between two percentages that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone.)
10. If the difference between the percentages is acceptable, report the average percentage vitality. If the difference is too high, make two new preparations from two new aliquots of semen and repeat the assessment (see Box 2.6).
11. Report the average percentage of vital spermatozoa to the nearest whole number.

2.6.2.3 Scoring

1. Live spermatozoa have white or light pink heads and dead spermatozoa have heads that are stained red or dark pink.
2. If the stain is limited to only a part of the neck region, and the rest of the head area is unstained, this is considered a “leaky neck membrane”, not a sign of cell death and total membrane disintegration. These cells should be assessed as alive.
3. If it is difficult to discern the pale pink stained head, use nigrosin to increase the contrast of the background (see Section 2.6.1).

2.6.2.4 Lower reference limit

The lower reference limit for vitality (membrane-intact spermatozoa) is 58% (5th centile, 95% CI 55–63).

Comment: The total number of membrane-intact spermatozoa in the ejaculate is of biological significance. This is obtained by multiplying the total number of spermatozoa in the ejaculate (see Section 2.8.7) by the percentage of membrane-intact cells.

2.6.3 Vitality test using hypo-osmotic swelling

As an alternative to dye exclusion, the hypo-osmotic swelling (HOS) test may be used to assess vitality (Jeyendran et al., 1984). This is useful when staining of spermatozoa must be avoided, e.g. when choosing spermatozoa for ICSI. Spermatozoa with intact membranes swell within 5 minutes in hypo-osmotic medium and all flagellar shapes are stabilized by 30 minutes (Hossain et al., 1998).

Thus, use:

- 30 minutes incubation for routine diagnostics; but
- 5 minutes incubation when spermatozoa are to be processed for therapeutic use.

2.6.3.1 Preparing the reagents

1. Swelling solution for diagnostic purposes: dissolve 0.735 g of sodium citrate dihydrate and 1.351 g of D-fructose in 100 ml of purified water. Freeze 1-ml aliquots of this solution at –20 °C.
2. For therapeutic use: dilute the medium to be used 1 + 1 (1:2) with sterile, purified water.

2.6.3.2 Procedure

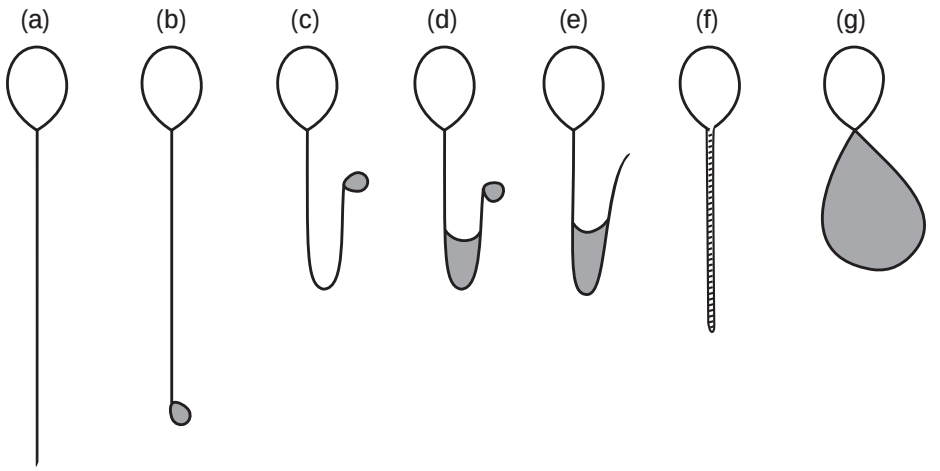
1. Thaw the frozen swelling solution and mix well before use.
2. Warm 1 ml of swelling solution or 1 ml of 1 + 1 (1:2) diluted medium in a closed microcentrifuge tube at 37 °C for 5 minutes.
3. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
4. Remove a 100-µl aliquot of semen and add to the swelling solution. Mix gently by drawing it in and out of the pipette.
5. Incubate at 37 °C for exactly 5 minutes or 30 minutes (see above), then transfer a 10-µl aliquot to a clean slide and cover with a 22 mm × 22 mm coverslip.
6. Remix the semen sample, remove a replicate aliquot, mix with swelling solution, incubate and prepare a replicate slide, as above.
7. Examine each slide with phase-contrast optics at ×200 or ×400 magnification.
8. Tally the number of unswollen (dead) and swollen (vital) cells with the aid of a laboratory counter.
9. Evaluate 200 spermatozoa in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.5).
10. Calculate the average and difference of the two percentages of vital cells from the replicate preparations.
11. Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.1 or Fig. A7.2, Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between two percentages that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone.)
12. If the difference between the percentages is acceptable, report the average percentage vitality. If the difference is too high, make two new preparations from two new aliquots of semen and repeat the assessment (see Box 2.6).
13. Report the average percentage of vital spermatozoa to the nearest whole number.

2.6.3.3 Scoring

1. Swollen spermatozoa are identified by changes in the shape of the cell, as indicated by coiling of the tail (Fig. 2.6).
2. Live cells are distinguished by evidence of swelling of the sperm tail; score all forms of swollen tails as live spermatozoa.

Fig. 2.6 Schematic representation of typical morphological changes in human spermatozoa subjected to hypo-osmotic stress

(a) No change. (b)–(g) Various types of tail changes. Swelling in tail is indicated by the grey area.



Reproduced from Jeyendran RS, Van der Ven HH, Perez-Pelaez M, Crabo BG, Zaneveld LJD. (1984) Journal of Reproduction and Fertility, 70: 219–228. © Society for Reproduction and Fertility (1984). Reproduced by permission.

2.6.3.4 Lower reference limit

HOS test values approximate those of the eosin test (Carreras et al., 1992).

The lower reference limit for vitality (membrane-intact spermatozoa) is 58% (5th centile, 95% CI 55–63).

Comment: The total number of membrane-intact spermatozoa in the ejaculate is of biological significance. This is obtained by multiplying the total number of spermatozoa in the ejaculate (see Section 2.8.7) by the percentage of membrane-intact cells.

2.7 Sperm numbers

The total number of spermatozoa per ejaculate and the sperm concentration are related to both time to pregnancy (Slama et al., 2002) and pregnancy rates (WHO, 1996; Zinaman et al., 2000) and are predictors of conception (Bonde et al., 1998;

Larsen et al., 2000). More data correlating total sperm numbers with reproductive outcome are warranted.

The number of spermatozoa in the ejaculate is calculated from the concentration of spermatozoa, which is measured during semen evalulation. For normal ejaculates, when the male tract is unobstructed and the abstinence time short, the total number of spermatozoa in the ejaculate is correlated with testicular volume (Handelsman et al., 1984; WHO, 1987; Andersen et al., 2000; Behre et al., 2000) and thus is a measure of the capability of the testes to produce spermatozoa (MacLeod & Wang, 1979) and the patency of the male tract. The concentration of spermatozoa in the semen, while related to fertilization and pregnancy rates, is influenced by the volume of the secretions from the seminal vesicles and prostate (Eliasson, 1975) and is not a specific measure of testicular function.

Comment 1: The terms “total sperm number” and “sperm concentration” are not synonymous. Sperm concentration refers to the number of spermatozoa per unit volume of semen and is a function of the number of spermatozoa emitted and the volume of fluid diluting them. Total sperm number refers to the total number of spermatozoa in the entire ejaculate and is obtained by multiplying the sperm concentration by the semen volume.

Comment 2: The generalization that total sperm number reflects testicular sperm productivity may not hold for electro-ejaculates from men with spinal cord injury, those with androgen deficiency, or for samples collected after prolonged abstinence or partial retrograde ejaculation.

Comment 3: The term “sperm density” (mass per unit volume) should not be used when sperm concentration (number per unit volume) is meant.

Determination of sperm number comprises the following steps (which are described in detail in subsequent sections).

- Examining a well-mixed, undiluted preparation of liquefied semen on a glass slide under a coverslip, to determine the appropriate dilution and appropriate chambers to use (see Section 2.8.1). This is usually the wet preparation (see Section 2.4.2) used for evaluation of motility.
- Mixing semen and preparing dilutions with fixative.
- Loading the haemocytometer chamber and allowing spermatozoa to settle in a humid chamber.
- Assessing the samples within 10–15 minutes (after which evaporation has noticeable effects on sperm position within the chamber).
- Counting at least 200 spermatozoa per replicate.
- Comparing replicate counts to see if they are acceptably close. If so, proceeding with calculations; if not, preparing new dilutions.
- Calculating the concentration in spermatozoa per ml.
- Calculating the total number of spermatozoa per ejaculate.

2.7.1 Types of counting chamber

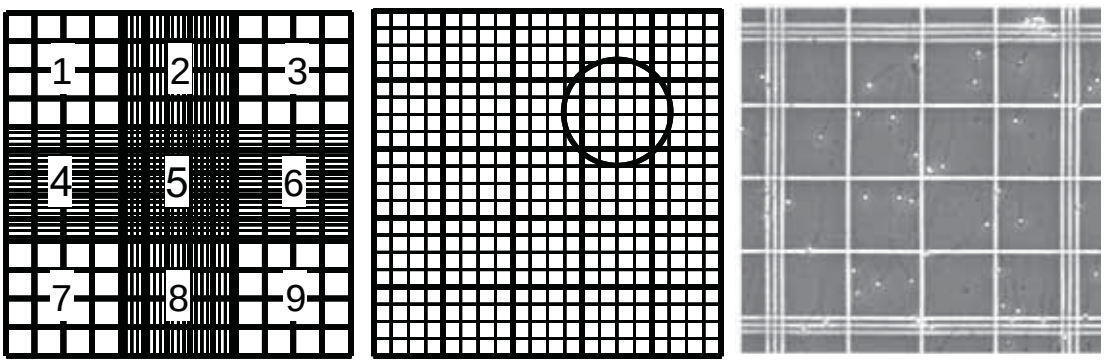
The use of 100-μm-deep haemocytometer chambers is recommended. Dilution factors for the improved Neubauer haemocytometer chamber are given here. Other deep haemocytometer chambers may be used, but they will have different volumes and grid patterns and will require different factors for calculation. Disposable chambers are available for determining sperm concentration (Seaman et al., 1996; Mahmoud et al., 1997; Brazil et al., 2004b), but they may produce different results from those of the improved Neubauer haemocytometer. Shallow chambers that fill by capillary action may not have a uniform distribution of spermatozoa because of streaming (Douglas-Hamilton et al., 2005a, 2005b). It may be possible to correct for this (Douglas-Hamilton et al., 2005a) but it is not advised (Björndahl & Barratt, 2005). The validity of these alternative counting chambers must be established by checking chamber dimensions (see Appendix 7, section A7.8), comparing results with the improved Neubauer haemocytometer method, and obtaining satisfactory performance as shown by an external quality-control programme. For accurate assessment of low sperm concentrations, large-volume counting chambers may be necessary (see Section 2.11.2).

2.7.2 The improved Neubauer haemocytometer

The improved Neubauer haemocytometer has two separate counting chambers, each of which has a microscopic 3 mm × 3 mm pattern of gridlines etched on the glass surface. It is used with a special thick coverslip (thickness number 4, 0.44 mm), which lies over the grids and is supported by glass pillars 0.1 mm above the chamber floor. Each counting area is divided into nine 1 mm × 1 mm grids. These grids are referred to by the numbers shown in Fig. 2.7.

Fig. 2.7 The improved Neubauer haemocytometer

Sketches of the inscribed area showing: all nine grids in one chamber of the haemocytometer (*left panel*); the central grid (number 5) of 25 large squares (*middle panel*); and a micrograph of part of a filled chamber *(right panel)*, showing one of the 25 squares of the central grid (the circled square in the middle panel) bounded by triple lines and containing 16 smaller squares.



Micrograph courtesy of C Brazil.

With a depth of 100 μm, each grid holds 100 nl. Four of these grids (nos 1, 3, 7 and 9) contain four rows of four squares, each holding 6.25 nl; two grids (nos 2 and 8) contain four rows of five squares, each of 5 nl; two grids (nos 4 and 6) contain five rows of four squares, each of 5 nl; and the central grid (number 5) contains five rows of five squares, each of 4 nl (Fig. 2.7, middle panel). Each of the 25 squares of the central grid (number 5) is subdivided into 16 smaller squares (Fig. 2.7, right panel). Thus, grids 1, 2, 3, 7, 8 and 9 each have four rows holding 25 nl per row, while grids 4, 5 and 6 each have five rows holding 20 nl per row.

Depending on the dilution and the number of spermatozoa counted, different areas of the chamber are used for determining sperm concentration. For 1 + 19 (1:20) and 1 + 4 (1:5) dilutions, rows from grid number 5 are assessed and, when necessary, from grids numbers 4 and 6 (see Section 2.8). For 1 + 1 (1:2) dilutions, all nine grids can be assessed if necessary to achieve a count of 200 spermatozoa (see Section 2.11.1).

2.7.3 Using the haemocytometer grid

- Count only whole spermatozoa (with heads and tails).
- Whether or not a spermatozoon is counted is determined by the location of its head; the orientation of its tail is unimportant. The boundary of a square is indicated by the middle line of the three; thus, a spermatozoon is counted if most of its head lies between the two inner lines, but not if most of its head lies between the two outer lines (Fig. 2.8, left panel).
- To avoid counting the same spermatozoon in adjacent squares, a spermatozoon with its head on the line dividing two adjacent squares should be counted only if that line is one of two perpendicular boundary lines. For example, cells may be counted if most of the sperm head lies on the lower or left centre boundaries, which form an “L” shape (see Fig. 2.8, middle panel), but not if it lies on the upper or right centre boundary line (Fig. 2.8, right panel).

Note: If there are many headless sperm tails (pinheads) or heads without tails, their presence should be recorded in the report. If considered necessary, their concentration can be assessed in the same way as for spermatozoa (see Section 2.8), or their prevalence relative to spermatozoa can be determined from stained preparations (see Section 2.17.6).

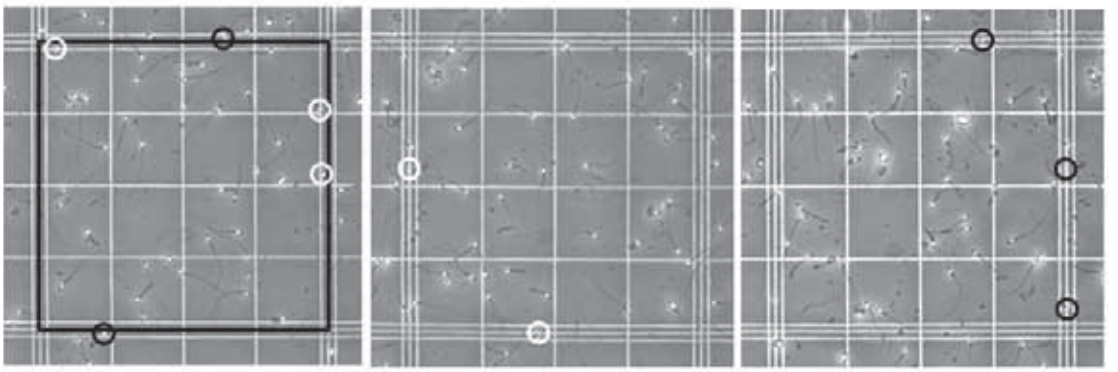
2.7.4 Care of the counting chamber

Haemocytometer counting chambers must be used with the special thick coverslips (thickness number 4, 0.44 mm).

- Clean the haemocytometer chamber and coverslip with water and dry well with tissue after use, as any dried residue can inhibit loading. Rubbing the grid surface will remove any residual spermatozoa from the previous sample.
- Soak reusable chambers and coverslips overnight in disinfectant (see Appendix 2, section A2.4) to avoid contamination with potentially infectious agents in semen.

Fig. 2.8 Which spermatozoa to count in the grid squares

The middle of the three lines defines the square's boundary (black line, *left panel*). All spermatozoa within the central square are counted, as well as those with their heads between the two inner lines (white circles), but not those whose heads lie between the outer two lines (black circles). A spermatozoon with most of its head lying on the central line is counted only if that line is the lower or left-hand line of the square (white circles, *middle panel*) but not if it is the upper or right hand line of the square (black circles, *right panel*).



Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

2.7.5 Fixative for diluting semen

1. Dissolve 50 g of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) and 10 ml of 35% (v/v) formalin in 1000 ml of purified water.
2. If desired, add 0.25 g of trypan blue (colour index 23859) or 5 ml of saturated (>4 mg/ml) gentian violet (colour index 42555) to highlight the sperm heads.
3. Store at 4 °C. If crystals form in the solution, pass it through a 0.45-μm filter before use.

2.7.6 Importance of counting sufficient spermatozoa

To reduce sampling errors, a critical number of spermatozoa have to be counted (preferably a total of at least 400, from replicate counts of approximately 200) (see Box 2.7 and Table 2.2).

Box 2.7 Errors in estimating numbers

The precision of the estimate of sperm number depends on the number of spermatozoa counted. In a Poisson distribution, the standard error (SE) of a count (N) is its square root ($\sqrt{N}$) and the 95% confidence interval (CI) for the number of spermatozoa in the volume of semen is approximately $N \pm 1.96 \times \sqrt{N}$ (or $N \pm$ approximately $2 \times \sqrt{N}$).

If 100 spermatozoa are counted, the SE is 10 ($\sqrt{100}$), and the 95% CI is 80–120 (100 ± 20). If 200 spermatozoa are counted, the SE is 14 ($\sqrt{200}$), and the 95% CI is 172–228 (200 ± 28). If 400 spermatozoa are counted, the SE is 20 ($\sqrt{400}$) and the 95% CI is 360–440 (400 ± 40).

The sampling errors can be conveniently expressed as a percentage of the count ($100 \times (\sqrt{N}/N)$). These are shown in Table 2.2.

Note: These values are only approximate, as confidence intervals are not always symmetrical around the estimate. The exact 95% confidence intervals, based on the properties of the Poisson distribution, are 361–441 for a count of 400, 81.4–121 for a count of 100, 4.80–18.4 for a count of 10, 0.03–5.57 for a count of 1, and 0.00–3.70 for a count of 0.

Table 2.2 Rounded sampling errors (%) according to total number of spermatozoa counted

Total (*N*)	Sampling error (%)	Total (*N*)	Sampling error (%)	Total (*N*)	Sampling error (%)
1	100	25	20	85	10.8
2	70.7	30	18.3	90	10.5
3	57.7	35	16.9	95	10.3
4	50	40	15.8	100	10
5	44.7	45	14.9	150	8.2
6	40.8	50	14.1	200	7.1
7	37.8	55	13.5	250	6.3
8	35.4	60	12.9	300	5.8
9	33.3	65	12.4	350	5.3
10	31.6	70	12	400	5
15	25.8	75	11.5	450	4.7
20	22.4	80	11.2	500	4.5

Comment 1: Counting too few spermatozoa will produce an uncertain result (see Appendix 7, section A7.1), which may have consequences for diagnosis and therapy (see Appendix 7, section A7.2). This may be unavoidable when spermatozoa are taken for therapeutic purposes and sperm numbers are low (see Section 5.1).

Comment 2: When semen volume is small and fewer spermatozoa are counted than recommended, the precision of the values obtained will be significantly reduced. If fewer than 200 spermatozoa are counted per replicate, report the sampling error as given in Table 2.2.

2.8 Routine counting procedure

The dilutions 1 + 4 (1:5) and 1 + 19 (1:20) are appropriate for a range of sperm concentrations, yielding about 200 spermatozoa in one or all of the haemocytometer grid numbers 4, 5 and 6 (see Table 2.3 and Box 2.8).

Box 2.8 Achieving 200 spermatozoa per replicate in the central three grids of the improved Neubauer chamber

If there are 100 spermatozoa per high-power field (HPF) of 4 nl (see Box 2.9) in the initial wet preparation, there are theoretically 25 per nl (25 000 per μl or 25 000 000 per ml). As the central grid (number 5) of the improved Neubauer chamber holds 100 nl, there would be 2500 spermatozoa within it. Diluting the sample 1 + 4 (1:5) would reduce the background and the sperm number to about 500 per grid, which is sufficient for an acceptably low sampling error.

If there are 10 spermatozoa per HPF of the wet preparation, there would be 2.5 per nl and 250 per central grid. Diluting the sample 1 + 1 (1:2) as suggested would reduce the background and the sperm number to about 125 per grid; this would give 375 in the three grids numbered 4, 5 and 6—again, this is sufficient for an acceptably low sampling error.

Note: These calculated concentrations can only be rough estimates because so few spermatozoa are counted and volumes may not be accurate. The concentrations estimated from the undiluted preparations can be between 30% and 130% of the concentrations derived from diluted samples in counting chambers.

2.8.1 Determining the required dilution

The dilution of semen required to allow sperm number to be measured accurately is assessed from an undiluted semen preparation. This is usually the wet preparation (see Section 2.4.2) used for evaluation of motility.

- Examine one of the wet preparations, made as described in Section 2.4.2, to estimate the number of spermatozoa per HPF (×200 or ×400).
- One HPF is equivalent to approximately 16 nl (at ×200) or 4 nl (at ×400) (see Box 2.9).
- If spermatozoa are observed, count them, determine the necessary dilution from Table 2.3, and proceed as in Section 2.8.2.
- If no spermatozoa are observed, examine the replicate wet preparation. If no spermatozoa are found in the second preparation, proceed as in Section 2.9.

Box 2.9 Volume observed per high-power field of a 20-μm-deep wet preparation

The volume of semen observed in each microscopic field depends on the area of the field (πr^2, where π is approximately 3.142 and r is the radius of the microscopic field) and the depth of the chamber (20.7 μm for the wet preparation). The diameter of the microscopic field can be measured with a stage micrometer or can be estimated by dividing the diameter of the aperture of the ocular lens by the magnification of the objective lens.

With a ×40 objective and a ×10 ocular of aperture 20 mm, the microscope field has a diameter of approximately 500 μm (20 mm/40). In this case, r = 250 μm, r^2 = 62 500 μm², πr^2 = 196 375 μm² and the volume is 4 064 962 μm³ or about 4 nl.

With a ×20 objective and a ×10 ocular of aperture 20 mm, the microscope field has a diameter of approximately 1000 μm (20 mm/20). In this case, r = 500 μm, r^2 = 250 000 μm², πr^2 = 785 500 μm² and the volume is 16 259 850 μm³ or about 16 nl.

Table 2.3 Semen dilutions required, how to make them, which chambers to use and potential areas to assess

Spermatozoa per ×400 field	Spermatozoa per ×200 field	Dilution required	Semen (μl)	Fixative (μl)	Chamber	Area to be assessed
>101	>404	1:20 (1 + 19)	50	950	Improved Neubauer	Grids 5, 4, 6
16–100	64–400	1:5 (1 + 4)	50	200	Improved Neubauer	Grids 5, 4, 6
2–15	8–60	1:2 (1 + 1)	50	50	Improved Neubauer	Grids 5, 4, 6
<2	<8	1:2 (1 + 1)	50	50	Improved Neubauer or large-volume	All 9 grids or Entire slide

Note 1: White-blood-cell pipettes and automatic pipettes that rely on air displacement are not accurate enough for making volumetric dilutions of viscous semen; use positive-displacement pipettes.

Note 2: For diagnostic purposes, semen samples for analysis should be not less than 50 μl in volume, to avoid pipetting errors associated with small volumes.

Note 3: If there are too few spermatozoa per field of view at the recommended dilution, prepare another, lower, dilution. If there are too many overlapping spermatozoa per field of view at the recommended dilution, prepare another, higher, dilution.

Note 4: If a 1 + 19 (1:20) dilution is inadequate, use 1 + 49 (1:50).

Comment 1: If the number of spermatozoa in the initial wet preparation is low (<4 per ×400 HPF: approximately 1×10^6/ml) an accurate sperm number may not be required (see Section 2.10).

Comment 2: For accurate assessment of low sperm concentrations (<2 per ×400 HPF: < approximately 0.5×10^6/ml), it is recommended to use all nine grids of the improved Neubauer chamber (see Section 2.11.1) or a large-volume disposable chamber with fluorescence detection (see Section 2.11.2).

2.8.2 Preparing the dilutions and loading the haemocytometer chambers

- Make the haemocytometer surface slightly damp by breathing on it.
- Secure the coverslip on the counting chambers by pressing it firmly onto the chamber pillars. Iridescence (multiple Newton's rings) between the two glass surfaces confirms the correct positioning of the coverslip. The more lines there are, the better the fit; only one or two lines may indicate problems with variation in chamber depth.

- Use a positive-displacement pipette to dispense the appropriate amount of fixative (see Table 2.3) into two dilution vials.
- Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
- Aspirate the appropriate volume of semen immediately after mixing, allowing no time for the spermatozoa to settle out of suspension (see Table 2.3).
- Wipe the semen off the outside of the pipette tip, taking care not to touch the opening of the tip.
- Dispense the semen into the fixative and rinse the pipette tip by aspirating and expressing the fixative.
- Mix the semen sample well again, and prepare the replicate dilution following the steps above.
- Mix the first dilution thoroughly by vortexing for 10 seconds at maximum speed. Immediately remove approximately 10 µl of fixed suspension, to avoid settling of the spermatozoa.
- Touch the pipette tip carefully against the lower edge of one of the chambers at the V-shaped groove.
- Depress the plunger of the pipette slowly, allowing the chamber to fill by capillary action. The coverslip should not be moved during filling, and the chamber should not be overfilled (when the coverslip may be seen to move) or underfilled (when air occupies some of the chamber area).
- Mix the second dilution, as above, and immediately remove a second 10-µl aliquot. Load the second chamber of the haemocytometer following the steps above.
- Store the haemocytometer horizontally for at least 4 minutes at room temperature in a humid chamber (e.g. on water-saturated filter paper in a covered Petri dish) to prevent drying out. The immobilized cells will sediment onto the grid during this time.

Note 1: Some chambers are constructed with ground-glass pillars; in these, Newton's rings will not appear. Apply about 1.5 µl of water to each ground-glass pillar to hold the coverslip in place (Brazil et al., 2004a), taking care not to introduce water into the counting area.

Note 2: The use of haemocytometer clamps to hold the coverslip in place will ensure a constant depth (Christensen et al., 2005).

Note 3: In very viscous samples, semen can aggregate within the dilution fluid if mixing is delayed by 5–10 seconds. In these cases, vortex the diluted sample for 10 seconds immediately after adding the semen to the fixative.

2.8.3 Assessing sperm numbers in the counting chambers

Sperm number should be assessed in both chambers of the haemocytometer. If the two values agree sufficiently, the aliquots taken can be considered representative of the sample (see Section 2.4.1).

- Examine the haemocytometer with phase-contrast optics at ×200 or ×400 magnification.
- Count at least 200 spermatozoa in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.7 and Table 2.2).
- First assess the central grid (number 5 in Fig. 2.7) of one side of the improved Neubauer chamber, row by row.
- Continue counting until at least 200 spermatozoa have been observed and a complete row (of five large squares) has been examined. Counting must be done by complete rows; do not stop in the middle of a row. If 200 spermatozoa are not observed in the five rows of the central grid, continue counting in the rows (of 4 large squares) of the two adjacent grids (nos 4 and 6 in Fig. 2.7).
- Make a note of the number of rows assessed to reach at least 200 spermatozoa. The same number of rows will be counted from the other chamber of the haemocytometer.
- Tally the number of spermatozoa and rows with the aid of a laboratory counter.
- Switch to the second chamber of the haemocytometer and perform the replicate count on the same number of rows (the same volume) as the first replicate, even if this yields fewer than 200 spermatozoa.
- Calculate the sum and difference of the two numbers.
- Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.4 or Fig. A7.1, Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between the counts that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone.)
- If the difference is acceptable, calculate the concentration (see Section 2.8.4). If the difference is too high, prepare two new dilutions as described in Section 2.8.2 and repeat replicate counts (see Box 2.10).
- Report the average sperm concentration to two significant figures.
- Calculate the total number of spermatozoa per ejaculate (see Section 2.8.7).

Note 1: If fewer than 200 spermatozoa are found in grids 4, 5 and 6, do not continue to count in grids 1, 2, 3, 7, 8 or 9, since the volume of each row in these grids differs from that of the rows in grids 4, 5 and 6 (see Section 2.7.2). In this case, prepare and assess two lower dilutions. If a 1+1 (1:2) dilution is necessary, proceed as in Section 2.11.

Note 2: Assessing the same chamber twice or assessing both chambers filled from a single dilution is not true replication, as this will not allow detection of errors of sampling, mixing and dilution.

Table 2.4 Acceptable differences between two replicate counts for a given sum

Sum	Acceptable Difference*	Sum	Acceptable Difference*
144–156	24	329–346	36
157–169	25	347–366	37
170–182	26	367–385	38
183–196	27	386–406	39
197–211	28	407–426	40
212–226	29	427–448	41
227–242	30	449–470	42
243–258	31	471–492	43
259–274	32	493–515	44
275–292	33	516–538	45
293–309	34	539–562	46
310–328	35	563–587	47

**Based on the rounded 95% confidence interval.*

Box 2.10 Comparison of replicate counts

The difference between independent counts is expected to be zero, with a standard error equal to the square root of the sum of the two counts. Thus $(N1–N2)/(\sqrt{(N1+N2)})$ should be <1.96 by chance alone for a 95% confidence limit.

If the difference between the counts is less than or equal to that indicated in Tables 2.4 or 2.5 for the given sum, the estimates are accepted and the concentration is calculated from their mean.

Larger differences suggest that miscounting has occurred, or there were errors of pipetting, or the cells were not well mixed, resulting in non-random distribution in the chamber or on the slide.

When the difference between the counts is greater than acceptable, discard the first two values, and prepare and assess two fresh dilutions of semen. (Do not count a third sample and take the mean of the three values, or take the mean of the two closest values.)

This applies to counts of spermatozoa and peroxidase-positive cells (see Section 2.18). For CD45-positive cells (see Section 3.2) and immature germ cells (see Section 2.19), the stained preparations should be reassessed.

With these 95% CI cut-off values, approximately 5% of replicates will be outside the limits by chance alone.

Note: On rare occasions, with inhomogeneous samples, even a third set of replicates may provide unacceptable differences. In this case, calculate the mean of all replicates and note this in the report.

2.8.4 Calculation of the concentration of spermatozoa in semen

It is recommended to calculate and report on the concentration of spermatozoa in semen. Although concentration is not a specific measure of testicular function, it is related to fertilization and pregnancy rates.

The concentration of spermatozoa in semen is their number (N) divided by the volume in which they were found, i.e. the volume of the total number (n) of rows examined for the replicates (20 nl each for grids 4, 5 and 6), multiplied by the dilution factor. That is, $C = (N/n) \times (1/20) \times$ dilution factor.

For 1 + 4 (1:5) dilutions, using grids 4, 5 and 6, the concentration $C = (N/n) \times (1/20) \times 5$ spermatozoa per nl = $(N/n) \times (1/4)$ spermatozoa/nl (or 10^6 per ml of semen).

For 1 + 19 (1:20) dilutions, using grids 4, 5 and 6, the concentration $C = (N/n) \times (1/20) \times 20$ spermatozoa per nl = (N/n) spermatozoa/nl (or 10^6 per ml of semen).

For 1:50 (1 + 49) dilutions, using grids 4, 5 and 6, the concentration $C = (N/n) \times (1/20) \times 50$ spermatozoa per nl = $(N/n) \times 2.5$ spermatozoa/nl (or 10^6 per ml of semen).

2.8.5 Worked examples

Example 1. With a 1 + 19 (1:20) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 201 spermatozoa in seven rows, while replicate 2 contains 245 spermatozoa in seven rows. The sum of the values (201 + 245) is 446 in 14 rows and the difference (245–201) is 44. From Table 2.4 this is seen to exceed the difference expected by chance alone (41), so new replicate dilutions are made.

Example 2. With a 1 + 19 (1:20) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 220 spermatozoa in four rows, while replicate 2 contains 218 spermatozoa in four rows. The sum of the values (220 + 218) is 438 in eight rows and the difference (220–218) is 2. From Table 2.4 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (41), so the values are accepted.

The concentration of the samples for a 1 + 19 (1:20) dilution is $C = (N/n) \times 1.0$ spermatozoa per nl, i.e. $(438/8) \times 1.0 = 54.75$ spermatozoa/nl, or 55×10^6 spermatozoa per ml of semen (to two significant figures).

Note: For 1 + 19 (1:20) dilutions and grids 4, 5 and 6, the concentration is easy to calculate. The total number of spermatozoa counted divided by the total number of rows assessed equals the sperm concentration in 10^6/ml. In the example above the calculation is $(220 + 218)/(4 + 4) = 438/8 = 55 \times 10^6$ spermatozoa per ml of semen.

Example 3. With a 1 + 19 (1:20) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 98 spermatozoa in 15 rows (grids 5, 4 and 6), while replicate 2 contains 114 spermatozoa in 15 rows (grids 5, 4 and 6). The sum of the values (98 + 114) is 212 in 30 rows and the difference (114–98) is 16. From Table 2.4 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (29), so the values are accepted.

The concentration of the sample for a 1 + 19 (1:20) dilution is $C = (N/n) \times 1.0$ spermatozoa per nl or $(212/30) \times 1.0 = 7.07$ spermatozoa/nl, or 7.1×10^6 spermatozoa per ml of semen (to two significant figures). As fewer than 400 spermatozoa were counted, report the sampling error for 212 spermatozoa given in Table 2.2 (approximately 7%).

Note: In this example, the sample has been overdiluted, since fewer than 200 spermatozoa were found in grids 5, 4 and 6; a 1 + 4 (1:5) dilution would have been more appropriate.

Example 4. With a 1 + 4 (1:5) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 224 spermatozoa in four rows, while replicate 2 contains 268 spermatozoa in four rows. The sum of the values (224 + 268) is 492 in eight rows and the difference (268–224) is 44. From Table 2.4 this is seen to exceed the difference expected by chance alone (43), so new replicate dilutions are made.

Example 5. With a 1 + 4 (1:5) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 224 spermatozoa in eight rows, while replicate 2 contains 213 spermatozoa in eight rows. The sum of the values (224 + 213) is 437 in 16 rows and the difference (224–213) is 11. From Table 2.4 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (41), so the values are accepted.

The concentration of the sample for a 1 + 4 (1:5) dilution is $C = (N/n) \times (1/4)$ spermatozoa per nl or $(437/16)/4 = 6.825$ spermatozoa/nl, or 6.8×10^6 spermatozoa per ml of semen (to two significant figures).

Note: For 1 + 4 (1:5) dilutions the concentration is also simple to calculate but the total number of spermatozoa counted divided by the total number of rows assessed is further divided by 4. In the example above the calculation is $((224 + 213)/(8 + 8))/4 = (437/16)/4 = 27.3/4 = 6.8 \times 10^6$ spermatozoa per ml of semen.

2.8.6 Lower reference limit for sperm concentration

The lower reference limit for sperm concentration is 15×10^6 spermatozoa per ml (5th centile, 95% CI $12–16 \times 10^6$).

2.8.7 Calculation of the total number of spermatozoa in the ejaculate

It is recommended to calculate and report the total number of spermatozoa per ejaculate, as this parameter provides a measure of the capability of the testes to produce spermatozoa and the patency of the male tract. This is obtained by multiplying the sperm concentration by the volume of the whole ejaculate.

2.8.8 Lower reference limit for total sperm number

The lower reference limit for total sperm number is 39×10^6 spermatozoa per ejaculate (5th centile, 95% CI $33–46 \times 10^6$).

2.9 Low sperm numbers: cryptozoospermia and suspected azoospermia

If no spermatozoa are observed in the replicate wet preparations, azoospermia can be suspected. Although it has been suggested that the definition should change (Sharif, 2000; Ezeh & Moore, 2001), azoospermia remains a description of the ejaculate rather than a statement of its origin or a basis for diagnosis and therapy. It is generally accepted that the term azoospermia can only be used if no spermatozoa are found in the sediment of a centrifuged sample (Eliasson, 1981).

However, it should be borne in mind that:

- whether or not spermatozoa are found in the pellet depends on the centrifugation time and speed (Lindsay et al., 1995; Jaffe et al., 1998) and on how much of the pellet is examined;
- centrifugation at 3000*g* for 15 minutes does not pellet all spermatozoa from a sample (Corea et al., 2005); and
- after centrifugation, motility can be lost (Mortimer, 1994a) and concentration will be underestimated (Cooper et al., 2006).

The way these samples are handled depends on whether subjective data on the presence and motility of spermatozoa are sufficient (see Section 2.10) or accurate numbers of spermatozoa are required (see Section 2.11).

2.10 When an accurate assessment of low sperm numbers is not required

If the number of spermatozoa per HPF in the initial wet preparation is low (0 to 4 per ×400 HPF or 0 to 16 per ×200 HPF), several options are available.

2.10.1 Taking no further action

If the number of spermatozoa per ×400 HPF is <4 (i.e. < approximately 1×10^6/ml), it is sufficient for most clinical purposes to report the sperm concentration as $<2 \times 10^6$/ml (to take into account the high sampling error associated with low sperm numbers), with a note as to whether or not motile spermatozoa were seen.

2.10.2 Examination of centrifuged samples to detect spermatozoa

When no spermatozoa are observed in either wet preparation, the sample can be centrifuged to determine if any spermatozoa are present in a larger sample.

- Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3). If the sample is viscous, reduce the viscosity as described in Section 2.3.1.1.
- Remove a 1-ml aliquot of semen and centrifuge at 3000*g* for 15 minutes.
- Decant most of the supernatant and resuspend the sperm pellet in the remaining approximately 50 µl of seminal plasma.

- Place one 10-μl aliquot of the pellet on each of two slides under 22 mm × 22 mm coverslips. This will create two wet preparations approximately 20 μm deep (see Box 2.4).
- Examine the slides with phase-contrast optics at ×200 or ×250 magnification.
- Scan the entire coverslip systematically field by field. Start in one corner and scan along the x-axis to the opposite side; then move one field along the y-axis and scan back along the entire width. Continue in this zig-zag fashion to make a complete and systematic search of the entire aliquot (see Fig. 2.9). Keep observing the slide while changing fields.
- With a ×20 objective and a ×10 ocular of 20 mm aperture, the microscope field has a diameter of approximately 1000 μm (see Box 2.9). There will thus be approximately 484 fields (22 × 22) per 22 mm × 22 mm coverslip to be examined.
- The presence of spermatozoa in either replicate indicates cryptozoospermia.
- The absence of spermatozoa from both replicates suggests azoospermia.

Note 1: Many bench-top centrifuges that take 15-ml tubes will not reach 3000*g*: use a higher-speed centrifuge that takes 1.5–2.0-ml tubes. Make sure the semen sample is well mixed before taking the aliquot.

Note 2: Scanning the slides can take up to 10 minutes, as the sample will have a high background.

Note 3: When centrifuging samples for assisted reproduction, the whole semen sample and most of the pellet (e.g. four 10-μl aliquots of pellet) may need to be analysed to find live spermatozoa.

Comment 1: The absence of motile spermatozoa from the aliquot examined does not necessarily mean that they are absent from the rest of the sample.

Comment 2: Because centrifugation does not pellet all spermatozoa, this method cannot be used to determine total sperm number. For quantification, see Sections 2.11.1 or 2.11.2.

2.10.3 Examination of non-centrifuged samples to detect motile spermatozoa

When motile spermatozoa are sought (e.g. in a post-vasectomy semen sample), diluting the specimen in fixative or high-speed centrifugation of spermatozoa must be avoided. In this case, only an aliquot of the undiluted sample can be assessed.

- Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
- Remove a 40-μl aliquot of semen and place under a 24 mm × 50 mm coverslip. This will create a wet preparation 33 μm deep (see Box 2.4).
- Examine the slide with phase-contrast optics at ×200 or ×250 magnification.
- Scan the entire coverslip systematically field by field. Start in one corner and scan along the x-axis to the opposite side; then move one field along the y-axis

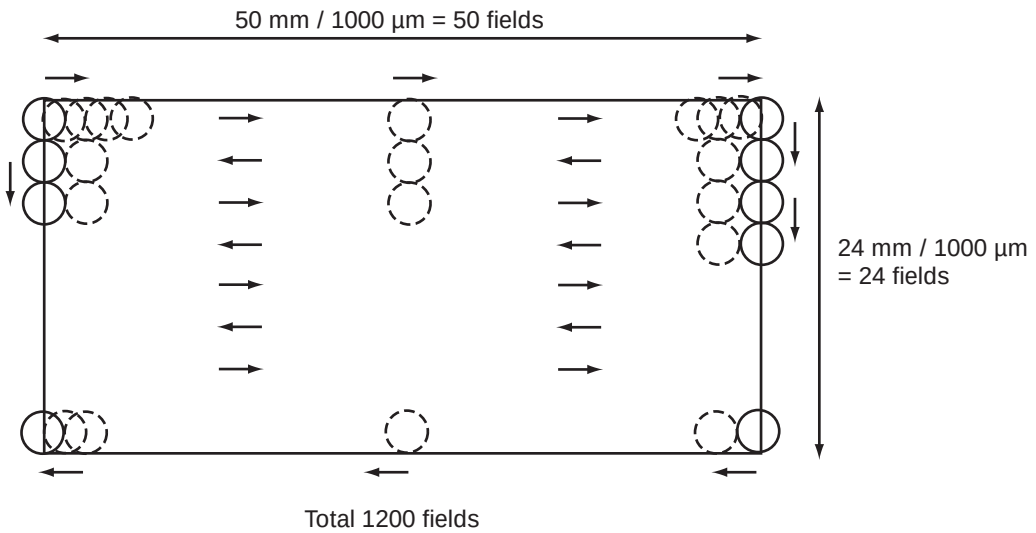
and scan back along the entire width. Continue in this zig-zag fashion to make a complete and systematic search of the entire aliquot (see Fig. 2.9). Keep observing the slide while changing fields.

- With a ×20 objective and ×10 ocular of 20 mm aperture, the microscope field has a diameter of approximately 1000 μm (see Box 2.9). There will thus be approximately 1200 fields (24 × 50) per 24 mm × 50 mm coverslip to be examined.

Note: This procedure can take up to 10 minutes, as the sample will have a high background.

Fig. 2.9 Scanning the entire coverslip for the presence of motile spermatozoa

This involves assessing approximately 1200 high-power fields at ×200 magnification for a 24 mm × 50 mm coverslip, and approximately 484 high-power fields at ×200 magnification for a 22 mm × 22 mm coverslip.



Comment: The absence of motile spermatozoa from the aliquot examined does not necessarily mean that they are absent from the rest of the sample.

2.11 When an accurate assessment of low sperm numbers is required

This section describes methods for determining low sperm concentrations that avoid centrifugation. The alternative to pelleting the spermatozoa is to use a low dilution of semen and to examine larger volumes.

A precision of 20% is considered acceptable when dealing with lower limits of quantification (LLQ) (Shah et al., 2000). Examining the entire central grid (number 5 in Fig. 2.7) of the improved Neubauer chamber, when filled with 1 + 1 (1:2) diluted semen, can theoretically detect a concentration of 250 000 spermatozoa per ml with a sampling error of 20%. When all nine grids are examined, a sperm concentration as low as 27 800 per ml can be estimated. Large-volume disposable chambers holding 25 µl can be used to measure a concentration of 1000 spermatozoa per ml with the same sampling error (Cooper et al., 2006). For semen diluted 1 + 1 (1:2), as recommended here, these values correspond to sperm concentrations in undiluted semen of 500 000 per ml, 55 600 per ml and 2000 per ml, respectively. However, semen samples diluted so little can present a large amount of background. Scanning large chambers can take 10–20 minutes, but rapid detection of spermatozoa can be facilitated by use of a fluorescent dye (see Section 2.11.2).

2.11.1 Assessing low sperm numbers in the entire improved Neubauer chamber (phase-contrast microscopy)

To reduce sampling errors, a critical number of spermatozoa (preferably a total of at least 400 from replicate counts of approximately 200) have to be counted (see Box 2.7 and Table 2.2).

- Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
- Remove an aliquot of semen and dilute 1 + 1 (1:2) with fixative (see Section 2.7.5), taking the precautions given in Section 2.8.2.
- The dilution 1 + 1 (1:2) for samples with fewer than two spermatozoa per HPF in the initial wet preparation (Table 2.3) is appropriate for a range of sperm concentrations, yielding about 200 spermatozoa in the haemocytometer (see Box 2.11). Between one and nine grids will need to be assessed.

Box 2.11 Achieving 200 spermatozoa per replicate in all nine grids of the improved Neubauer chamber

If there are 2 spermatozoa per HPF of 4 nl in the initial wet preparation, there are theoretically 0.5 spermatozoa per nl (500 spermatozoa per µl or 500 000 spermatozoa per ml).

As all 9 grids of the improved Neubauer chamber together hold 900 nl, there would be 450 spermatozoa in them. Diluting the sample 1 + 1 (1:2), as suggested, would reduce the background and the sperm number to 225 per chamber, sufficient for an acceptably low sampling error.

Note: This value can only be a rough estimate because so few spermatozoa are counted and volumes may be inaccurate.

2.11.1.1 Procedure

1. Dilute two aliquots of the semen sample 1 + 1 (1:2) with fixative, as above.
2. Fill each chamber of the haemocytometer with the replicate dilutions, one replicate per chamber.
3. Store the haemocytometer horizontally for at least 4 minutes at room temperature in a humid chamber (e.g. on water-saturated filter paper in a covered Petri dish) to prevent drying out. The immobilized cells will sediment onto the grid during this time.
4. Examine the haemocytometer with phase-contrast optics at ×200 or ×400 magnification.
5. Count at least 200 spermatozoa in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.7 and Table 2.2).
6. Examine one chamber grid by grid, and continue counting until at least 200 spermatozoa have been observed and a complete grid has been examined. Counting must be done by complete grids; do not stop in the middle of a grid.
7. Make a note of the number of grids assessed to reach at least 200 spermatozoa. The same number of grids will be counted from the other chamber of the haemocytometer.
8. Tally the number of spermatozoa and grids with the aid of a laboratory counter.
9. Switch to the second chamber of the haemocytometer and perform the replicate count on the same number of grids (the same volume) as the first replicate, even if this yields fewer than 200 spermatozoa.
10. Calculate the sum and difference of the two numbers.
11. Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.5 (which extends Table 2.4 to lower sperm numbers) or Fig. A7.1, Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between two counts that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone).
12. If the difference is acceptable, calculate the concentration (see Section 2.11.1.2). If the difference is too high, make two new preparations as described above and repeat replicate counts (see Box 2.10).
13. Report the average sperm concentration to two significant figures.
14. Calculate the total number of spermatozoa per ejaculate (see Section 2.11.1.5).

Table 2.5 Acceptable differences between two counts for a given sum: low concentrations

Sum	Acceptable difference*	Sum	Acceptable difference*	Sum	Acceptable difference*
35–40	12	144–156	24	329–346	36
41–47	13	157–169	25	347–366	37
48–54	14	170–182	26	367–385	38
55–62	15	183–196	27	386–406	39
63–70	16	197–211	28	407–426	40
71–79	17	212–226	29	427–448	41
80–89	18	227–242	30	449–470	42
90–98	19	243–258	31	471–492	43
99–109	20	259–274	32	493–515	44
110–120	21	275–292	33	516–538	45
121–131	22	293–309	34	539–562	46
132–143	23	310–328	35	563–587	47

**Based on the rounded 95% confidence interval.*

2.11.1.2 Calculation of low concentrations of spermatozoa in semen

The concentration of spermatozoa in semen is their number (N) divided by the volume in which they were found, i.e. the volume of the total number (n) of grids examined for the replicates (where the volume of a grid is 100 nl), multiplied by the dilution factor. That is, $C = (N/n) \times (1/100) \times$ dilution factor.

For a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution, the concentration $C = (N/n) \times (1/100) \times 2$ spermatozoa per nl $= (N/n) \times (1/50)$ spermatozoa/nl.

When all nine grids are assessed in each chamber of the haemocytometer, the total number of spermatozoa is divided by the total volume of both chambers (1.8 µl), and multiplied by the dilution factor (2), to obtain the concentration in spermatozoa per µl (thousands per ml of semen).

2.11.1.3 Sensitivity of the method

If there are fewer than 200 spermatozoa in each chamber, the sampling error will exceed 5%. When fewer than 400 spermatozoa are found in both chambers, report the sampling error for the number of cells counted (see Table 2.2).

If fewer than 25 spermatozoa are counted in each chamber, the concentration will be <56 000 spermatozoa per ml; this is the lower limit of quantification for a sampling error of 20% when all nine grids of the improved Neubauer chamber are assessed and a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution is used (Cooper et al., 2006). Report the number of spermatozoa observed with the comment “Too few spermatozoa counted for accurate determination of concentration (<56 000/ml)”.

Comment: The absence of spermatozoa from the aliquot examined does not necessarily mean that they are absent from the rest of the sample.

2.11.1.4 Worked examples

Example 1. With a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 200 spermatozoa in two grids, while replicate 2 contains 250 spermatozoa in two grids. The sum of the values (200 + 250) is 450 in four grids and the difference (250–200) is 50. From Table 2.5 this is seen to exceed the difference expected by chance alone (42), so the results are discarded and two new replicate dilutions are made.

Example 2. With a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 210 spermatozoa in three grids, while replicate 2 contains 200 spermatozoa in three grids. The sum of the values (210 + 200) is 410 in six grids and the difference (210–200) is 10. From Table 2.5 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (40), so the values are accepted.

The concentration of spermatozoa in the sample for a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution is $C = (N/n) \times (1/50)$ spermatozoa per nl or (410/6)/50 = 1.37 spermatozoa/nl, or 1.4×10^6 spermatozoa per ml of semen (to two significant figures).

Example 3. With a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 120 spermatozoa in all nine grids, while replicate 2 contains 140 spermatozoa in all nine grids. The sum of the values (120 + 140) is 260 in 18 grids and the difference (140–120) is 20. From Table 2.5 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (32), so the values are accepted.

When all nine grids are assessed in each chamber (a total of 1.8 μl), the concentration of spermatozoa in the sample for a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution is $C = (N/1.8) \times 2$ spermatozoa per μl = (260/1.8) × 2 = 288.8 spermatozoa/μl, or 290×10^3 spermatozoa per ml of semen (to two significant figures). As fewer than 400 spermatozoa were counted, report the sampling error for 260 spermatozoa as given in Table 2.2 (approximately 6%).

Example 4. With a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution, replicate 1 was found to contain 10 spermatozoa in all nine grids, while replicate 2 contained 8 spermatozoa in all nine grids. As fewer than 25 spermatozoa were counted, the concentration is <56 000/ml; report that “18 spermatozoa were seen in the replicates, too few for accurate determination of concentration (<56 000/ml)”.

Example 5. With a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution, no spermatozoa are found in either replicate. As fewer than 25 spermatozoa were counted, the concentration is <56 000/ml; report that “No spermatozoa were seen in the replicates, too few for accurate determination of concentration (<56 000/ml)”.

2.11.1.5 Calculation of the total number of spermatozoa in the ejaculate

It is recommended to calculate and report the total sperm number per ejaculate, as this parameter provides a measure of the capability of the testes to produce spermatozoa and the patency of the male tract. This is obtained by multiplying the sperm concentration by the volume of the whole ejaculate.

2.11.2 Assessing low sperm numbers in large-volume disposable slides (fluorescence microscopy)

The use of large-volume, 100-μm-deep chambers can increase the sensitivity of the concentration assessment (Cooper et al., 2006). The large-volume slide has two 100-μm-deep chambers, each holding 25 μl. To reduce sampling errors, a critical number of spermatozoa (preferably a total of at least 400 from replicate counts of approximately 200) have to be counted (see Box 2.7 and Table 2.2).

- Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
- Remove an aliquot of semen and dilute 1 + 1 (1:2) with fixative (see Section 2.7.5) containing Hoechst 33342 bisbenzimide fluorochrome (1 mg/l), taking the precautions given in Section 2.8.2.

The dilution 1 + 1 (1:2) for samples with fewer than 2 spermatozoa at the initial evaluation (Table 2.3) is appropriate for a range of sperm concentrations, yielding about 200 spermatozoa within the entire chamber (see Box 2.12).

Box 2.12 Achieving 200 spermatozoa per replicate in a 100-μm-deep, large-volume disposable chamber

If there is only 1 spermatozoon per HPF of 4 nl in the initial wet preparation, there are theoretically 0.25 spermatozoa per nl (250 per μl or 250 000 per ml).

The large-volume chamber holds 25 μl, so there would be 6250 spermatozoa within it. Diluting the sample 1 + 1 (1:2) as suggested would reduce the background and the sperm number to 3125 per chamber, sufficient for an acceptably low sampling error.

Note: This value can only be a rough estimate because so few spermatozoa are counted and the volumes may be inaccurate.

2.11.2.1 Procedure

1. Dilute two aliquots of the semen sample 1 + 1 (1:2) with fixative, as above.
2. Fill each chamber of the slide with 25 μl of the replicate dilutions, one replicate per chamber.
3. Store the slide horizontally for 10–15 minutes in the dark at room temperature in a humid chamber (e.g. on water-saturated filter paper in a covered Petri dish) to prevent drying out. The dye will bind to the sperm heads and the immobilized cells will settle on the chamber floor during this time.
4. Examine the slide with fluorescence optics using a relevant dichroic mirror and barrier filter at ×250 magnification.
5. Count at least 200 spermatozoa in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.7 and Table 2.2).
6. Examine one chamber systematically field by field. Start in one corner and scan along the x-axis to the opposite side; then move one field along the y-axis

and scan back along the entire width. Continue in this zig-zag fashion (see Fig. 2.9). Keep observing the slide while changing fields. Continue counting until at least 200 spermatozoa have been observed.

7. Make a note of the number of fields assessed to reach at least 200 spermatozoa. The same number of fields will be counted from the other chamber.
8. Tally the number of spermatozoa and fields with the aid of a laboratory counter.
9. Switch to the second chamber and perform the replicate count on the same number of fields (the same volume) as the first replicate, even if this yields fewer than 200 spermatozoa.
10. Calculate the sum and difference of the two numbers.
11. Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.5 (which extends Table 2.4 to lower sperm numbers) or Fig. A7.1, Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between two counts that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone).
12. If the difference is acceptable, calculate the concentration (see Section 2.11.2.2). If the difference is too high, make two new preparations and repeat the assessment (see Box 2.10).
13. Report the average sperm concentration to two significant figures.
14. Calculate the total number of spermatozoa per ejaculate (see Section 2.11.2.5).

Note 1: Spermatozoa appear as bright fluorescent points (condensed nuclei) unlike leukocytes and non-sperm cells, which have a more diffuse fluorescence (indicating their larger nuclei) (Zinaman et al., 1996).

Note 2: If uncertain about the source of a fluorescent signal, switch to phase-contrast optics where the sperm tail can be seen.

2.11.2.2 Calculation of low concentrations of spermatozoa in semen

The concentration of spermatozoa in semen is their number (N) divided by the volume of the total number (n) of microscopic fields examined (where the volume (v) of a field is calculated as in Box 2.13), multiplied by the dilution. That is, $C = (N/n) \times (1/v) \times$ dilution factor.

At ×250 magnification, the field volume is 80 nl (see Box 2.13), and for a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution, the concentration is $C = (N/n) \times (1/80) \times 2$ spermatozoa per nl = $(N/n) \times (1/40)$ spermatozoa/nl (10^6 spermatozoa per ml of semen).

At ×400 magnification, the field volume is 20 nl (see Box 2.13), and for a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution, the concentration is $C = (N/n) \times (1/20) \times 2$ spermatozoa per nl = $(N/n) \times (1/10)$ spermatozoa/nl (10^6 spermatozoa per ml of semen).

When the entire area of both chambers has been assessed, the total number of spermatozoa is divided by the total volume of both chambers (50 μl), multiplied by the dilution factor (2), to obtain the concentration in spermatozoa/μl (thousands per ml of semen).

Box 2.13 Volume observed per high-power field in a 100-μm-deep, large-volume disposable chamber

The volume of semen in each microscopic field depends on the area of the field (πr^2, where π is approximately 3.142 and r is the radius of the microscopic field) and the depth of the chamber (here 100 μm).

The diameter of the microscopic field can be measured with a stage micrometer or can be estimated by dividing the diameter of the aperture of the ocular lens by the magnification of the objective lens.

With a ×40 objective and a ×10 ocular of aperture 20 mm, the microscope field has a diameter of approximately 500 μm (20 mm/40). In this case, r = 250 μm, r^2 = 62 500 μm^2, πr^2 = 196 375 μm^2 and the volume is 19 637 500 μm^3 or about 20 nl.

With a ×25 objective and a ×10 ocular of aperture 25 mm, the microscope field has a diameter of approximately 1000 μm (25 mm/25). In this case, r = 500 μm, r^2 = 250 000 μm^2, πr^2 = 785 500 μm^2 and the volume is 78 550 000 μm^3 or about 80 nl.

2.11.2.3 Sensitivity of the method

If there are fewer than 200 spermatozoa in each chamber, the sampling error will exceed 5%. When fewer than 400 spermatozoa are found in both replicates, report the sampling error for the number of cells counted (see Table 2.2).

If fewer than 25 spermatozoa are counted in each chamber, the concentration will be <2000 spermatozoa/ml (this is the lower limit of quantification for a sampling error of 20% when the entire chamber (25 μl) is assessed and a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution is used) (Cooper et al., 2006). Report the number of spermatozoa observed with the comment "Too few spermatozoa counted for accurate determination of concentration (<2000/ml)".

Comment: The absence of spermatozoa from the aliquot examined does not necessarily mean that they are absent from the rest of the sample.

2.11.2.4 Worked examples

Example 1. With a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 210 spermatozoa in 300 fields, while replicate 2 contains 300 spermatozoa in 300 fields. The sum of the values (210 + 300) is 510 in 600 fields and the difference (300–210) is 90. From Table 2.5 this is seen to exceed the difference expected by chance alone (44), so the results are discarded and two new replicate dilutions are made.

Example 2. With a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 200 spermatozoa in 400 fields, while replicate 2 contains 230 spermatozoa in 400 fields. The sum of the values (200 + 230) is 430 in 800 fields and the difference (230–200) is 30. From Table 2.5 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (41), so the values are accepted.

The concentration of spermatozoa in the sample, for a 1 + 1 (1:2) dilution is $C = (N/n) \times (2/v)$ spermatozoa per nl. If v = 20 nl (×400 magnification, see Box 2.13), $C = (430/800) \times (2/20) = 0.0538$ spermatozoa/nl or 54 000 spermatozoa per ml of semen (to two significant figures).

Example 3. With a 1+1 (1:2) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 50 spermatozoa in the whole chamber, while replicate 2 contains 70 spermatozoa in the whole chamber. The sum of the values (50+70) is 120 in the two chambers and the difference (70–50) is 20. From Table 2.5 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (21), so the values are accepted.

When the entire area of both chambers has been assessed (a total of 50 μl), the concentration of the sample, for a 1+1 (1:2) dilution, is $C = (N/50) \times 2$ spermatozoa per μl = (120/50)×2 = 4.8 spermatozoa/μl or 4800 spermatozoa per ml of semen (to two significant figures). As fewer than 400 spermatozoa were counted, report the sampling error for 120 spermatozoa given in Table 2.2 (approximately 10%).

Example 4. With a 1+1 (1:2) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 20 spermatozoa in the whole chamber, while replicate 2 contains 18 spermatozoa in the whole chamber. As fewer than 25 spermatozoa were counted, the concentration will be <2000 spermatozoa/ml. Report that "38 spermatozoa were seen in the replicates, too few for accurate determination of concentration (<2000/ml)".

Example 5. With a 1+1 (1:2) dilution, no spermatozoa are found in either replicate. As fewer than 25 spermatozoa were counted, the concentration will be <2000 spermatozoa/ml. Report that "No spermatozoa were seen in the replicates, too few for accurate determination of concentration (<2000/ml)".

2.11.2.5 Calculation of the total numbers of spermatozoa in the ejaculate

It is recommended to calculate and report the total sperm number per ejaculate, as this parameter provides a measure of the capability of the testes to produce spermatozoa and the patency of the male tract. This is obtained by multiplying the sperm concentration by the volume of the whole ejaculate.

2.12 Counting of cells other than spermatozoa

The presence of non-sperm cells in semen may be indicative of testicular damage (immature germ cells), pathology of the efferent ducts (ciliary tufts) or inflammation of the accessory glands (leukocytes). The number of non-sperm cells in semen (epithelial cells, "round cells" (germ cells and leukocytes) or isolated sperm heads and tails) can be estimated in fixed wet preparations by the use of a haemocytometer in the same way as for spermatozoa (see Section 2.8.3). However, semen that has been diluted adequately for counting spermatozoa will normally be too dilute for accurate estimation of non-sperm cells, unless high concentrations are present. The prevalence of round cells relative to spermatozoa can be asssed from slides (see Section 2.12.1). Alternatively, their concentration can be assessed during the estimation of peroxidase-positive cells (see Section 2.18.1.5).

2.12.1 Calculation of the concentration of round cells in semen

The concentration of round cells is calculated relative to that of spermatozoa by assessing fixed and stained semen smears made from undiluted semen (see Section 2.13.2). If N is the number of round cells counted in the same number of fields as 400 spermatozoa, and S is the concentration of spermatozoa (10^6 per ml), then

the concentration (C) of round cells (10^6 per ml) can be calculated from the formula $C = S \times (N/400)$.

2.12.2 Sensitivity of the method

If there are fewer round cells than spermatozoa in the sample (i.e. <400), the sampling error will exceed 5%. In this case, report the sampling error for the number of cells counted (see Table 2.2). If fewer than 25 round cells are counted, report the number of round cells observed with the comment "Too few for accurate determination of concentration".

2.12.3 Worked examples

Example 1. In replicate 1 there are 21 round cells per 200 spermatozoa, while in replicate 2 there are 39 round cells per 200 spermatozoa. The sum of the values (21 + 39) is 60 and the difference (39–21) is 18. From Table 2.5 this is seen to exceed the difference expected by chance alone (15), so the results are discarded and new assessments are made.

Example 2. In replicate 1 there are 24 round cells per 200 spermatozoa, while in replicate 2 there are 36 round cells per 200 spermatozoa. The sum of the values (24 + 36) is 60 and the difference (36–24) is 12. From Table 2.5 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (15), so the values are accepted.

For 60 round cells per 400 spermatozoa and a sperm concentration of 70×10^6 cells per ml, the round cell concentration is $C = S \times (N/400)$ cells per ml = $70 \times 10^6 \times (60/400) = 10.5 \times 10^6$ cells per ml, or 10×10^6 cells per ml (to two significant figures). As fewer than 400 cells were counted, report the sampling error for 60 cells, as given in Table 2.2 (approximately 13%).

Comment 1: If the estimate of round cell concentration exceeds 1×10^6 per ml, their nature should be assessed by peroxidase activity (see Section 2.18) or leukocyte markers (see Section 3.2) and their concentration measured accurately. It may be possible to identify immature germ cells in well-stained preparations (see Section 2.19).

Comment 2: The total number of round cells in the ejaculate may reflect the severity of the inflammatory or spermatogenic condition. This is obtained by multiplying the concentration of round cells by the volume of the whole ejaculate.

2.13 Sperm morphology

Determination of sperm morphology comprises the following steps (which are described in detail in subsequent sections).

- Preparing a smear of semen on a slide (see Section 2.13.2).
- Air-drying, fixing and staining the slide (see Section 2.14).

- Mounting the slide with a coverslip if the slide is to be kept for a long time (see Sections 2.14.2.4 and 2.14.2.5).
- Examining the slide with brightfield optics at ×1000 magnification with oil immersion (see Sections 2.15 and 2.16).
- Assessing approximately 200 spermatozoa per replicate for the percentage of normal forms (see Section 2.15.1) or of normal and abnormal forms (see Section 2.15.2).
- Comparing replicate values to see if they are acceptably close: if so, proceeding with calculations; if not, re-reading the slides.

2.13.1 The concept of normal spermatozoa

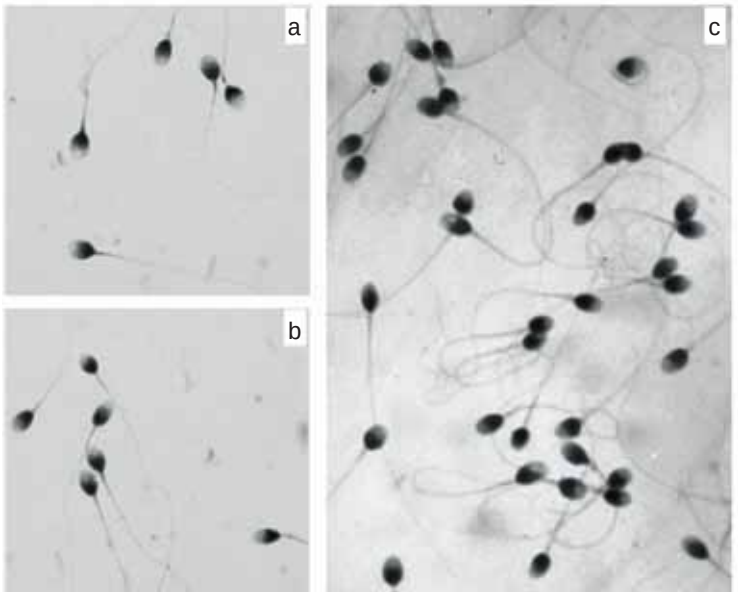
The variable morphology of human spermatozoa makes assessment difficult, but observations on spermatozoa recovered from the female reproductive tract, especially in postcoital endocervical mucus (Fredricsson & Björk, 1977; Menkveld et al., 1990) and also from the surface of the zona pellucida (Menkveld et al., 1991; Liu & Baker, 1992a) (see Fig. 2.10), have helped to define the appearance of potentially fertilizing (morphologically normal) spermatozoa. By the strict application of certain criteria of sperm morphology, relationships between the percentage of normal forms and various fertility endpoints (time-to-pregnancy (TTP), pregnancy rates in vivo and in vitro) have been established (Eggert-Kruse et al., 1996; Jouannet et al., 1988; Toner et al., 1995; Coetzee et al., 1998; Menkveld et al., 2001; Van Waart et al., 2001; Garrett et al., 2003; Liu et al., 2003), which may be useful for the prognosis of fertility.

The underlying philosophy of the classification system described here is to limit what is identified as normal to the potentially fertilizing subpopulation of spermatozoa prevalent in endocervical mucus. Using these guidelines, the range of percentage normal values for both fertile and infertile men is likely to be 0–30%, with few samples exceeding 25% normal spermatozoa (Menkveld et al., 2001). This low value will inevitably produce low thresholds; indeed reference limits and thresholds of 3–5% normal forms have been found in studies of in-vitro fertilization (Coetzee et al., 1998), intrauterine insemination (Van Waart et al., 2001) and in-vivo fertility (Van der Merwe et al., 2005).

The human zona pellucida also selects a subpopulation of morphologically similar spermatozoa, but such “zona-preferred” spermatozoa display a wider range of forms (Liu et al., 1990; Garrett et al., 1997). The percentage of motile spermatozoa in semen from fathers displaying “zona-preferred” morphology is also low (8–25%) (Liu et al., 2003).

Fig. 2.10 Morphologically “normal” spermatozoa

(a, b) Shorr-stained spermatozoa recovered from the zona pellucida in vitro. (c) Papanicolaou-stained spermatozoa recovered from endocervical mucus after intercourse. Very few defects on the sperm head, midpiece or principal piece are observed. Tails may be curved but not sharply angulated.



(a, b) Reproduced from Liu et al. (2003) by permission of the European Society of Human Reproduction and Embryology. (c) Reproduced from Menkveld & Kruger (1990) by permission.

2.13.2 Preparation of semen smears

Rapid addition of fixative to semen does not permit adequate visualization of spermatozoa, as they are obscured by denatured seminal proteins. For morphological analysis, it is customary to prepare semen smears that are air-dried before fixation and staining. However, such a process leads to morphological artefacts, since air-drying of semen smears is associated with:

- changes in sperm dimensions: dried, fixed and stained spermatozoa are smaller than live spermatozoa visualized in semen (Katz et al., 1986);
- expansion of immature sperm heads (Soler et al., 2000); and
- loss of osmotically sensitive cytoplasmic droplets (Abraham-Peskir et al., 2002; Cooper et al., 2004), although large amounts of excess residual cytoplasm are retained.

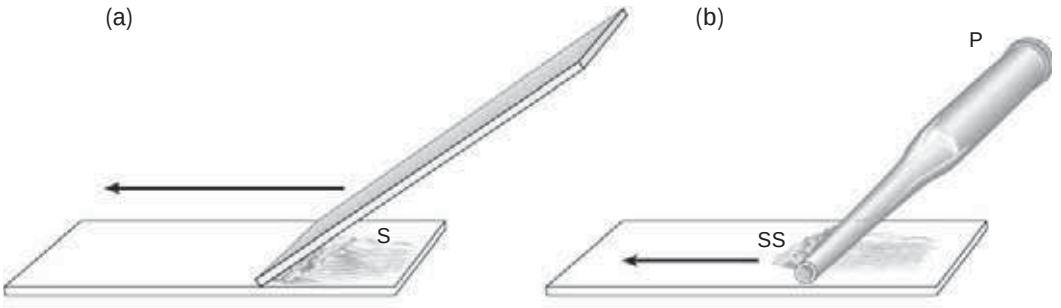
Two or more smears should be made from the fresh semen sample in case there are problems with staining or one slide is broken. Assessment is performed in replicate, preferably on each of the two slides, because there may be significant between-slide variation in sperm morphology.

- Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).

- Remove an aliquot immediately, allowing no time for the spermatozoa to settle out of suspension.
- Remix the semen sample before removing replicate aliquots.
- Different smearing methods may be used in different conditions (Fig. 2.11).

Fig. 2.11 Semen smearing methods for sperm morphology

(a) "Feathering" method for undiluted semen. The semen drop (S) spreads along the back edge of the angled slide and is pulled forwards over the slide to form the smear. (b) Pipette method for washed samples. A drop of the sperm suspension (SS) is spread over the surface of the slide by pushing the horizontal pipette (P).



2.13.2.1 Normal semen samples

In this procedure an aliquot of semen is smeared over the whole surface of the slide by the feathering technique (see Figs. 2.11a, 2.12).

1. Clean both surfaces of the frosted slides by rubbing vigorously with lint-free tissue paper.
2. Label the frosted portion with identifying information (e.g. identification number, date) using a pencil with medium-hard lead (HB or No. 2).
3. Apply a 5–10-μl aliquot of semen, depending on sperm concentration, to the end of the slide. Use a second slide to pull the drop of semen along the surface of the slide (Figs. 2.11a, 2.12). If the dragging slide is non-frosted, the edges of both ends of the slide can be used to make four different smears.
4. Allow the slides to dry in air and stain them as described in Section 2.14.

Note 1: Pencil lead is stable in fixatives and stains, whereas ink and some permanent markers are not.

Note 2: Do not let the droplet of semen remain on the end of the slide for more than a couple of seconds before smearing.

Note 3: Be sure to use the slide ahead of the droplet to "pull" the semen across the slide; do not use the slide to "push" the semen from behind.

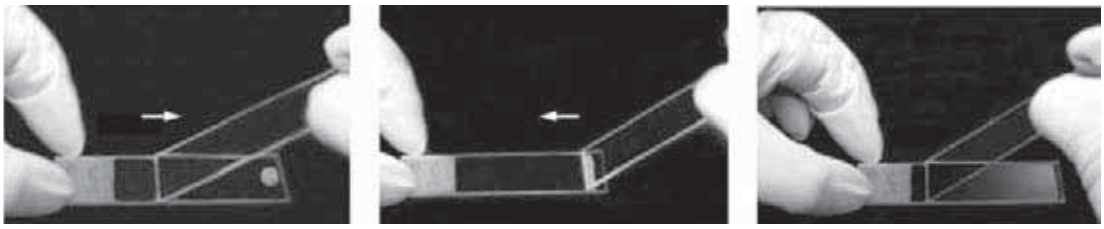
The quality of the smear (minimal overlap of spermatozoa on the slide) depends on:

- the volume of semen and the sperm concentration: the fewer the spermatozoa, the less likely they are to overlap one another;
- the angle of the dragging slide (Hotchkiss 1945): the smaller the angle, the thinner the smear;
- the speed of smearing (Eliasson 1971): the more rapid the movement, the thicker the smear.

Start with a volume of 10 µl, an angle of 45° and a smear of about 1 second. These parameters can then be varied, if necessary, to reduce overlap of spermatozoa on the slide (Menkveld et al., 1990). Feathering works well when semen viscosity is low, but is often unsuitable for extremely viscous semen (see Fig. 2.12 and Section 2.13.2.3).

Fig. 2.12 Preparing a normal semen smear

To get the feel for the motion, place the dragging slide at an angle of 45° and move it into contact with the aliquot of semen (*left panel*), which runs along the edge of the slide (*middle panel*). Bring the dragging slide slowly back (over approximately 1 second) along the length of the slide to produce the smear (*right panel*).



Photographs courtesy of C Brazil.

With low sperm concentrations (<2×10^6/ml), viscous or debris-laden samples, or when computer-assisted morphology is to be done (see Section 3.5.4), different approaches may be needed.

2.13.2.2 Samples with low sperm concentration

If the concentration of spermatozoa is low (e.g. <2×10^6/ml), concentrate the sample:

1. Centrifuge the sample at 600*g* for 10 minutes.
2. Remove most of the supernatant.

3. Resuspend the pellet in the remainder of the supernatant by gentle pipetting.
4. Obtain the highest sperm concentration possible, not exceeding approximately 50×10^6/ml.
5. Treat as a normal sample (see Section 2.13.2.1).

Note: Centrifugation may affect sperm morphology and its use must be recorded.

2.13.2.3 Viscous semen samples

Sometimes it is difficult to prepare good smears because the seminal plasma is highly viscous, resulting in smears of uneven thickness. Viscous samples can be treated in the same way as poorly liquefied samples (see Section 2.3.1.1) or by washing (see Section 2.13.2.4).

Note: These procedures may affect sperm morphology and their use must be recorded.

2.13.2.4 Washing debris-laden or viscous semen samples and to reduce background for computer-aided sperm morphometric assessment

Debris and a large amount of particulate material (such as in viscous samples) may cause spermatozoa to lie with their heads on edge, making them difficult to categorize. These samples may be washed, as follows.

1. Dilute an aliquot of semen (0.2–0.5 ml, depending on sperm concentration) to 10 ml with normal saline (0.9 g of sodium chloride (NaCl) per 100 ml of purified water) at room temperature.
2. Centrifuge at 800*g* for 10 minutes.
3. Decant most of the supernatant.
4. Resuspend the pellet in the remaining supernatant (typically 20–40 µl) by gentle pipetting.
5. Make a smear of the suspension by spreading 5–10 µl of sperm suspension on a microscope slide with a Pasteur pipette (see Fig. 2.11b).
6. Scan the slide with phase-contrast optics at ×400 magnification to ensure that the smear is evenly spread.
7. Check that there are at least 40 spermatozoa per ×400 field with no clumping or overlapping.
8. Allow the slides to dry in air and stain as described in Section 2.14.

Note 1: If too many spermatozoa are overlapping on the slide, make another smear using a smaller aliquot of semen.

Note 2: If the spermatozoa are too sparse on the slide, make another smear using a larger aliquot of semen.

Note 3: Washing the sample may affect sperm morphology and the procedure must be recorded.

Comment: Leaving the semen to liquefy for longer than 30 minutes before making the smears may reduce background staining.

2.14 Staining methods

Once the semen smears have been air-dried, they should be fixed and stained to highlight details of the spermatozoa. The use of the Papanicolaou, Shorr or Diff-Quik stain is recommended.

With all three stains in brightfield optics, the head is stained pale blue in the acrosomal region and dark blue in the post-acrosomal region. The midpiece may show some red staining and the tail is stained blue or reddish. Excess residual cytoplasm, usually located behind the head and around the midpiece, is stained pink or red (Papanicolaou stain) or reddish-orange (Shorr stain).

Comment: Rapid staining methods, in which a drop of semen is added to fixative and stain already on the slide, are commercially available. These are not recommended, however, because without the even distribution of spermatozoa provided by the smearing technique, it is not possible to observe the details necessary for the morphological classification described here.

2.14.1 Traditional fixation and sequential staining

This involves the following steps:

- ethanol — to fix the cells; it also dehydrates them;
- graded ethanol — to rehydrate the fixed smears gradually to permit water-soluble haematoxylin staining;
- purified water — to rehydrate dried smears to permit water-soluble haematoxylin staining;
- haematoxylin — to stain the nucleus blue;
- tap water — to remove unbound nuclear haematoxylin;
- acidic ethanol — to remove non-specifically bound dye from the cytoplasm (destaining);
- tap water — to reduce acidity and return blue colour to the nucleus;

- Scott's solution — to return blue colour to the nucleus (if tap water is insufficient);
- ethanol — to dehydrate smears to permit ethanol-soluble Orange G/ EA-50 staining;
- Orange G — to stain the cytoplasm pink;
- EA-50 — to stain the cytoplasm pink;
- graded ethanol — to dehydrate the stained smears gradually to permit the use of ethanol-soluble mountants;
- xylene — to permit the use of ethanol-insoluble mountants (see Box 2.14).

Box 2.14 Mounting media

Slides can be viewed unmounted or mounted (without or with a coverslip attached). Mounting the slides permits long-term storage, so that they can be reassessed if necessary and used in an internal quality control programme. The refractive index (RI) of mountants after drying (1.50–1.55) is similar to that of glass (1.50–1.58), and the best optical quality comes with the use of immersion oil with a similar RI (1.52).

2.14.2 Papanicolaou staining procedure for sperm morphology

The Papanicolaou stain gives good staining of spermatozoa and other cells. It stains the acrosomal and post-acrosomal regions of the head, excess residual cytoplasm, the midpiece and the principal piece. The modified staining technique described here has proved useful in the analysis of sperm morphology and in the examination of immature germ cells and non-sperm cells (see Plates 1–14). Routine procedures have been modified to work without ether (as fixative) or xylene (for mounting) (ESHRE/NAFA, 2002) (see Section 2.14.2.4). Slides stained using the Papanicolaou procedure can be permanently mounted and stored for future use in internal quality control programmes. If stored in the dark, they should be stable for months or years.

The following method was used to prepare the plates in this manual, from slides that were mounted in an ethanol-insoluble mountant.

2.14.2.1 Reagents

1. Papanicolaou constituent stains: commercially available or see Appendix 4, section A4.10.
2. Acidic ethanol: add 1.0 ml of concentrated hydrochloric acid to 200 ml of 70% (v/v) ethanol.
3. Xylene:ethanol, 1 + 1 (1:2): mix equal parts of 100% ethanol and xylene.

Note 1: Xylene is a health hazard and should be used in a fume cupboard.

Note 2: Smears should be air-dried for at least 4 hours, but can be stored for up to 1 week, before fixing and staining.

2.14.2.2 Fixing the air-dried semen smear

1. Immerse slides in 95% (v/v) ethanol for at least 15 minutes.

2.14.2.3 Staining the fixed semen smear

Sequentially immerse the slides in:

1.	Ethanol 80% (v/v)	30 seconds
2.	Ethanol 50% (v/v)	30 seconds
3.	Purified water	30 seconds
4.	Harris's haematoxylin	4 minutes
5.	Purified water	30 seconds
6.	Acidic ethanol	4–8 dips*
7.	Running cold tap water	5 minutes
8.	Ethanol 50% (v/v)	30 seconds
9.	Ethanol 80% (v/v)	30 seconds
10.	Ethanol 95% (v/v)	At least 15 minutes
11.	G-6 orange stain	1 minute
12.	Ethanol 95% (v/v)	30 seconds
13.	Ethanol 95% (v/v)	30 seconds
14.	Ethanol 95% (v/v)	30 seconds
15.	EA-50 green stain	1 minute
16.	Ethanol 95% (v/v)	30 seconds
17.	Ethanol 95% (v/v)	30 seconds
18.	Ethanol 100%	15 seconds
19.	Ethanol 100%	15 seconds

**One dip corresponds to an immersion of about 1 second.*

Note 1: Ethanol fixation causes dehydration of the cells. Therefore smears taken directly from the fixation step in 95% ethanol to staining may need only 10 seconds in the 80% ethanol, whereas smears that have air-dried after fixation must remain longer (2–3 minutes) in the 50% ethanol.

Note 2: In Step 6 above, start with 4 dips and continue until results are satisfactory. This is a critical step, as the duration of destaining dramatically alters the final stain intensity. If this step is omitted, spermatozoa and background will be dark. Increasing the number of dips will make spermatozoa and background fainter.

Note 3: The slides can be viewed unmounted or mounted.

2.14.2.4 Treating the stained semen smear before mounting

There are two kinds of fluid for mounting the preparation: ethanol-soluble and ethanol-insoluble mountants.

- Use ethanol-soluble mounting media directly on smears still moist with ethanol.
- For ethanol-insoluble mounting media, take slides directly from step 19 above through the following steps (to be performed in a fume cupboard):

1. Xylene:ethanol, 1 + 1 (1:2) 1 minute
2. Xylene 100% 1 minute

Remove one slide at a time from the xylene staining container and allow it to drain for only 1–2 seconds, as the slide should be quite wet with xylene when mounting.

2.14.2.5 Mounting the stained semen smears

1. Add two or three small drops of mounting medium to the slide.
2. Place a coverslip (24 mm × 50 mm or 24 mm × 60 mm are most convenient) directly on the smear.
3. Position the coverslip so that contact with the mounting medium begins from one long side, in order to prevent air bubbles being trapped.
4. If necessary, press gently on the top of the coverslip to help move bubbles to the edge of the slide.
5. Wipe off excess xylene (if used) from underneath the slide.
6. Allow the mounted smear to dry horizontally in a slide drying rack or on absorbant paper for 24 hours in a fume cupboard.

2.14.3 Shorr staining procedure for sperm morphology

The Shorr stain provides similar percentages of normal forms as the Papanicolaou stain (Meschede et al., 1993).

2.14.3.1 Reagents

1. Harris haematoxylin: Papanicolaou No. 1.
2. Shorr solution: buy readymade or prepare as follows. Dissolve 4 g of Shorr powder in 220 ml of warm 50% (v/v) ethanol. Allow to cool, add 2.0 ml of glacial acetic acid (in fume cupboard) and filter.
3. Acetic ethanol: add 25 ml of glacial acetic acid to 75 ml of 95% (v/v) ethanol.
4. Ammoniacal ethanol: add 5 ml of 25% (v/v) ammonium hydroxide to 95 ml of 75% (v/v) ethanol.

2.14.3.2 Fixing the air-dried semen smear

Immerse slides in acetic ethanol or 75% (v/v) ethanol for 1 hour.

2.14.3.3 Staining the fixed semen smear

Sequentially immerse the slides in:

1.	Running tap water	12–15 dips*
2.	Haematoxylin	1–2 minutes
3.	Running tap water	12–15 dips*
4.	Ammoniacal ethanol	10 dips*
5.	Running tap water	12–15 dips*
6.	Ethanol 50% (v/v)	5 minutes
7.	Shorr stain	3–5 minutes
8.	Ethanol 50% (v/v)	5 minutes
9.	Ethanol 75% (v/v)	5 minutes
10.	Ethanol 95% (v/v)	5 minutes

**One dip corresponds to an immersion of about 1 second.*

Note: The slides can be viewed unmounted or mounted.

2.14.3.4 Mounting the stained semen smear

See Sections 2.14.2.4 and 2.14.2.5.

2.14.4 Rapid staining procedure for sperm morphology

Rapid staining methods are particularly useful for clinical laboratories that need to provide results on the day of analysis. Several differential staining sets are available (Kruger et al., 1987). Some smears stained by rapid procedures have high background staining and may be of lower quality than those stained with Papanicolaou stain.

2.14.4.1 Reagents

1. Diff-Quik rapid staining kit consisting of:
    a) fixative reagent (triarylmethane dye dissolved in methanol);
    b) staining solution 1 (eosinophilic xanthene);
    c) staining solution 2 (basophilic thiazine).
2. Fixative: 1.8 mg of triarylmethane dissolved in 1000 ml of 95% (v/v) methanol, optional.
3. Fixative: methanol 95% (v/v), optional.

2.14.4.2 Fixing the air-dried semen smear

Immerse slides in triarylmethane fixative (as provided in the Diff-Quik kit or prepared as above) for 15 seconds or 95% methanol alone for 1 hour. Drain the excess solution by placing slides vertically on absorbent paper.

2.14.4.3 Staining the fixed semen smear

Sequentially immerse the slides in:

1. Rapid stain solution 1 — 10 seconds
2. Rapid stain solution 2 — 5 seconds
3. Running tap water — 10 to 15 times to remove excess stain

Drain the excess solution at each step by placing slides vertically on absorbent paper.

Note 1: The slides can be viewed unmounted or mounted.

Note 2: If there is high background staining, an aliquot of the semen sample should be washed (see Section 2.13.2.4) and new slides prepared and stained. Washing may affect sperm morphology and its use must be recorded.

2.14.4.4 Mounting the stained semen smear

See Sections 2.14.2.4 and 2.14.2.5.

2.15 Examining the stained preparation

With stained preparations, a ×100 oil-immersion brightfield objective and at least a ×10 eyepiece should be used. Clearer images are obtained when a fluid of similar refractive index (RI) to those of cells (approximately 1.5) and glass (1.50–1.58) is placed between the lens and the unmounted section or glass coverslip. This is usually immersion oil (RI 1.52). Mounting media have similar refractive indices (1.50–1.55: see Box 2.14).

2.15.1 Classification of normal sperm morphology

Assessment of sperm morphology is associated with a number of difficulties related to lack of objectivity, variation in interpretation or poor performance in external quality-control assessments (see Section 7.13.2). The method recommended here is a simple normal/abnormal classification, with optional tallying of the location of abnormalities in abnormal spermatozoa. The criteria overpage should be applied when assessing the morphological normality of the spermatozoon (Kruger et al., 1986; Menkveld et al., 1990; Coetzee et al., 1998). The reference limit given (Section 2.17.3) is valid only when the technique described below is used.

Spermatozoa consist of a head, neck, middle piece (midpiece), principal piece and endpiece. As the endpiece is difficult to see with a light microscope, the cell can be considered to comprise a head (and neck) and tail (midpiece and principal piece). For a spermatozoon to be considered normal, both its head and tail must be normal. All borderline forms should be considered abnormal.

- The head should be smooth, regularly contoured and generally oval in shape. There should be a well-defined acrosomal region comprising 40–70% of the head area (Menkveld et al., 2001). The acrosomal region should contain no large vacuoles, and not more than two small vacuoles, which should not occupy more than 20% of the sperm head. The post-acrosomal region should not contain any vacuoles.
- The midpiece should be slender, regular and about the same length as the sperm head. The major axis of the midpiece should be aligned with the major axis of the sperm head. Residual cytoplasm is considered an anomaly only when in excess, i.e. when it exceeds one third of the sperm head size (Mortimer & Menkveld, 2001).
- The principal piece should have a uniform calibre along its length, be thinner than the midpiece, and be approximately 45 μm long (about 10 times the head length). It may be looped back on itself (see Fig. 2.10c), provided there is no sharp angle indicative of a flagellar break.

Comment 1: With this technique, the form of the sperm head is more important than its dimensions, unless these are grossly abnormal.

Comment 2: An eyepiece micrometer may be useful for distinguishing between normally and abnormally sized sperm heads.

Comment 3: The head dimensions of 77 Papanicolaou-stained spermatozoa (stained by the procedure given in Section 2.14.2 and classified as normal by the criteria given here), measured by a computerized system (coefficient of variation for repeated measurements 2–7%) had the following dimensions: median length 4.1 μm, 95% CI 3.7–4.7; median width 2.8 μm, 95% CI 2.5–3.2; median length-to-width ratio 1.5, 95% CI 1.3–1.8.

Comment 4: The midpieces of 74 Papanicolaou-stained spermatozoa (stained by the procedure given in Section 2.14.2 and classified as normal by the criteria given here) and measured by the same computerized system had the following dimensions: median length 4.0 μm, 95% CI 3.3–5.2; median width 0.6 μm, 95% CI 0.5–0.7.

Comment 5: Coiled tails (>360°; see Fig. 2.13m) may indicate epididymal dysfunction (Pelfrey et al., 1982).

This assessment of normal sperm morphology can best be applied by learning to recognize the subtle variations in shape of the entire spermatozoon (normal/borderline sperm heads and tails; see Section 2.16, Plates 1–12 and their commentaries).

2.15.2 Classification of abnormal sperm morphology

Human semen samples contain spermatozoa with different kinds of malformations. Defective spermatogenesis and some epididymal pathologies are commonly associated with an increased percentage of spermatozoa with abnormal shapes. The morphological defects are usually mixed. Abnormal spermatozoa generally have a lower fertilizing potential, depending on the types of anomalies, and may also have abnormal DNA. Morphological defects have been associated with increased DNA fragmentation (Gandini et al., 2000), an increased incidence of structural chromosomal aberrations (Lee et al., 1996), immature chromatin (Dadoune et al., 1988) and aneuploidy (Devillard et al., 2002; Martin et al., 2003). Emphasis is therefore given to the form of the head, although the sperm tail (midpiece and principal piece) is also considered.

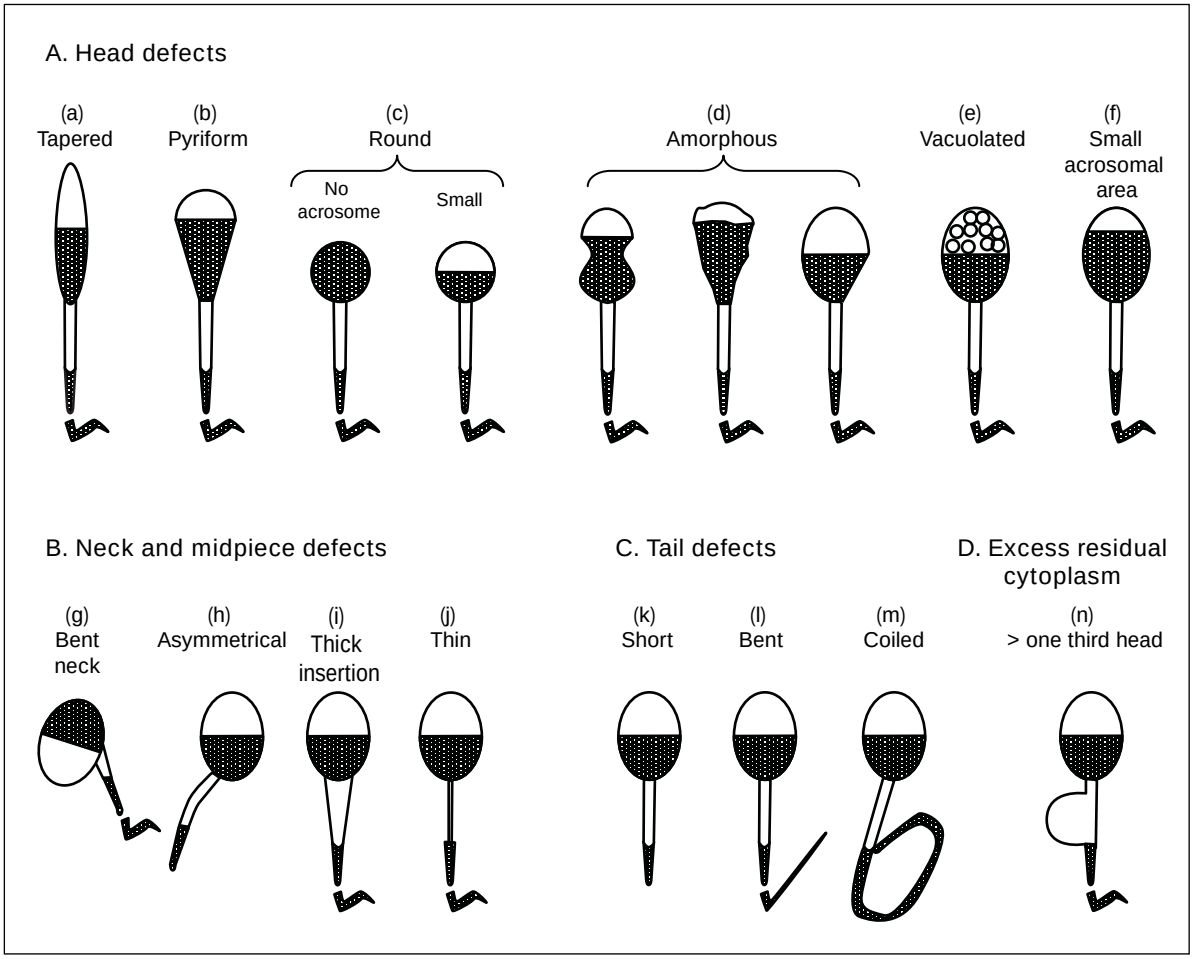
The following categories of defects should be noted (see Fig. 2.13).

- Head defects: large or small, tapered, pyriform, round, amorphous, vacuolated (more than two vacuoles or >20% of the head area occupied by unstained vacuolar areas), vacuoles in the post-acrosomal region, small or large acrosomal areas (<40% or >70% of the head area), double heads, or any combination of these.
- Neck and midpiece defects: asymmetrical insertion of the midpiece into the head, thick or irregular, sharply bent, abnormally thin, or any combination of these.
- Principal piece defects: short, multiple, broken, smooth hairpin bends, sharply angulated bends, of irregular width, coiled, or any combination of these.
- Excess residual cytoplasm (ERC): this is associated with abnormal spermatozoa produced from a defective spermatogenic process. Spermatozoa characterized by large amounts of irregular stained cytoplasm, one third or more of the sperm head size, often associated with defective midpieces (Mortimer & Menkveld, 2001) are abnormal. This abnormal excess cytoplasm should not be called a cytoplasmic droplet (Cooper, 2005).

Comment 1: Cytoplasmic droplets (membrane-bound vesicles on the midpiece at the head–neck junction) are normal components of physiologically functional human spermatozoa. If swollen, they may extend along the length of the midpiece, as observed by phase-contrast, differential-interference-contrast and X-ray microscopy of living cells in semen, cervical mucus and medium (Abraham-Peskir et al., 2002; Fetic et al., 2006).

Comment 2: Cytoplasmic droplets are osmotically sensitive and are not well preserved by routine air-drying procedures (Chantler & Abraham-Peskir, 2004; Cooper et al., 2004). They are not obvious in stained preparations, where they may appear as small distensions of the midpiece. Cytoplasmic droplets are less than one third the size of the sperm head in fixed and stained preparations (Mortimer & Menkveld, 2001) and are not considered abnormal.

Fig. 2.13 Schematic drawings of some abnormal forms of human spermatozoa



Adapted from Kruger et al., 1993 and reproduced by permission of MQ Medical.

2.16 Morphology plates 1–14

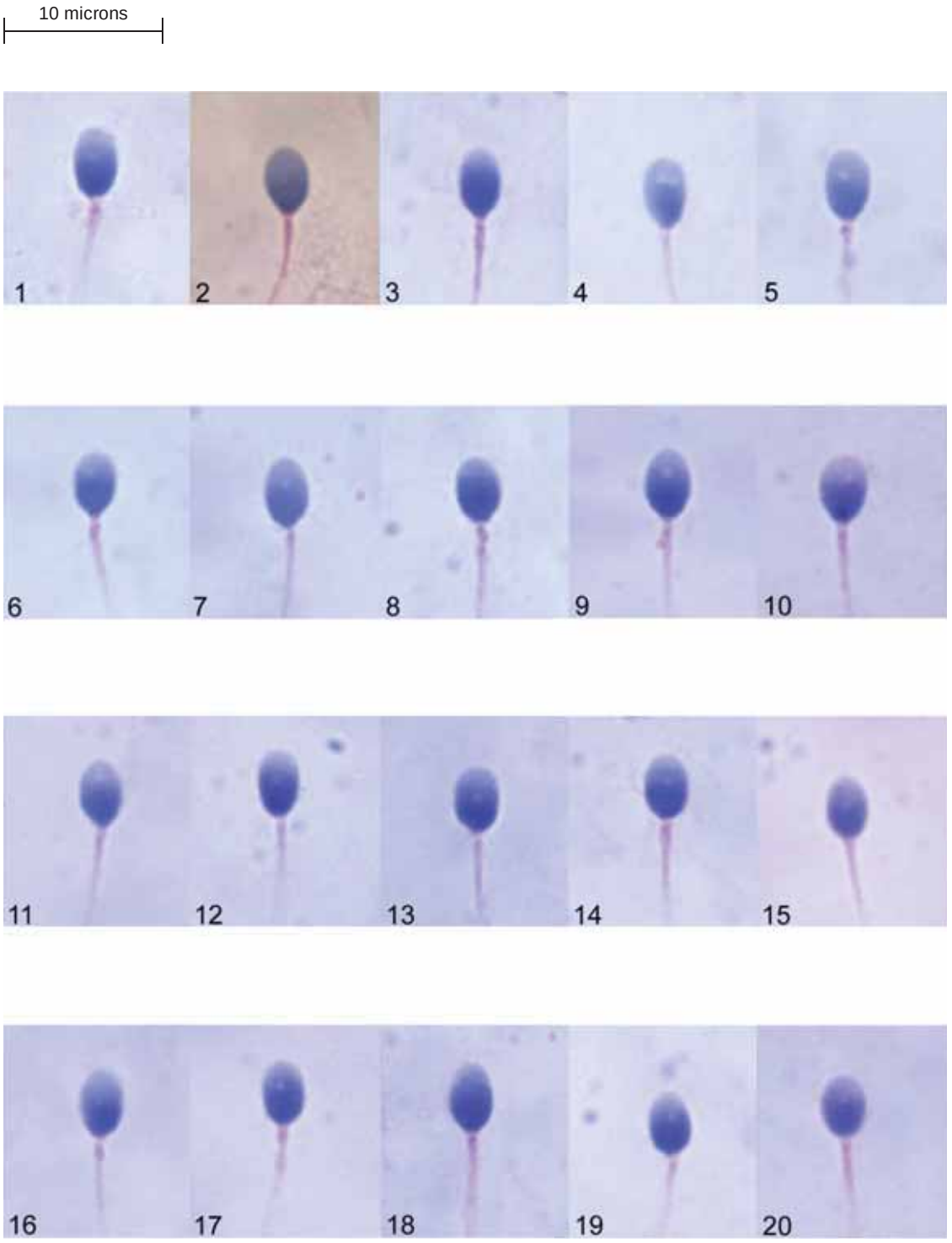
All the micrographs in Plates 1–14 were assessed by strict application of the stringent morphological criteria presented above. The analysis of sperm morphology is subjective and particularly difficult to standardize, since it attempts to draw an artificial cut-off point between normal and abnormal cells, on the basis of a multitude of characteristics of sperm heads and tails. The plates that follow were assessed by a single expert, Dr Thinus Kruger. The assessments have been supplemented with additional comments to ensure consistency of notation of all abnormalities.

Opposite each colour plate is a table describing the morphology assessment of each spermatozoon pictured. The table indicates whether the head shape is normal or abnormal, provides details of head abnormalities other than shape, indicates whether the midpiece or principal piece is normal in form, and whether the spermatozoon can be considered normal overall. Other relevant remarks are listed under “comments”. The comments are further explained in Table 2.6.

Table 2.6 Explanations used in commentaries to Plates 1–14

<40% acr	less than 40% of the sperm head is occupied by the acrosome
>70% acr	more than 70% of the sperm head is occupied by the acrosome
>one third	abnormal cytoplasm (more than one third of head size) (ERC)
<one third	normal cytoplasm (less than one third of head size) (CD)
abnormal	self-explanatory
amorphous	head shape (see Fig. 2.13d)
bacilli	bacteria
bent	unnaturally sharp angulation (see Figs 2.13g and j)
coiled	self-explanatory
CD	cytoplasmic droplet
cytoplasm	either excess residual cytoplasm or cytoplasmic droplet, depending on size
degenerating leukocyte	self-explanatory
degenerating spermatid	self-explanatory
defect	self-explanatory
double	self-explanatory
epithelial cell	from male duct system
ERC	excess residual cytoplasm (see Fig. 2.13n)
flat	base of sperm head not oval
focus	out of focus (not assessed)
if PP OK	not all the principal piece is seen in the micrograph (but if it were normal, the spermatozoon would be considered normal)
insert	the site of insertion of the tail is to one side of the long axis of the head
irreg	irregular in outline
looped	tail bent back on itself
macrophage	phagocytic leukocyte
monocyte	agranular leukocyte
spermatid	immature germ cell
no acro	acrosome absent
normal	resembling those found in endocervical mucus
not assessed	because of overlap or poor focus
overlapping	heads obscured by tail
PA vac	vacuole in the post-acrosomal region
pinhead	not a spermatozoon; no chromatin present
polymorph	polymorphonuclear leukocyte
pyriform	head shape (see Fig. 2.13b)
round	head shape (see Fig. 2.13c)
side view	spermatozoon seen edge on
small	head size
spermatid	immature germ cell
spermatocyte	immature germ cell
tapered	head shape (see Fig. 2.13a)
thick	self-explanatory
too long	self-explanatory
vac	vacuole
>2 vac	more than two vacuoles

Plate 1

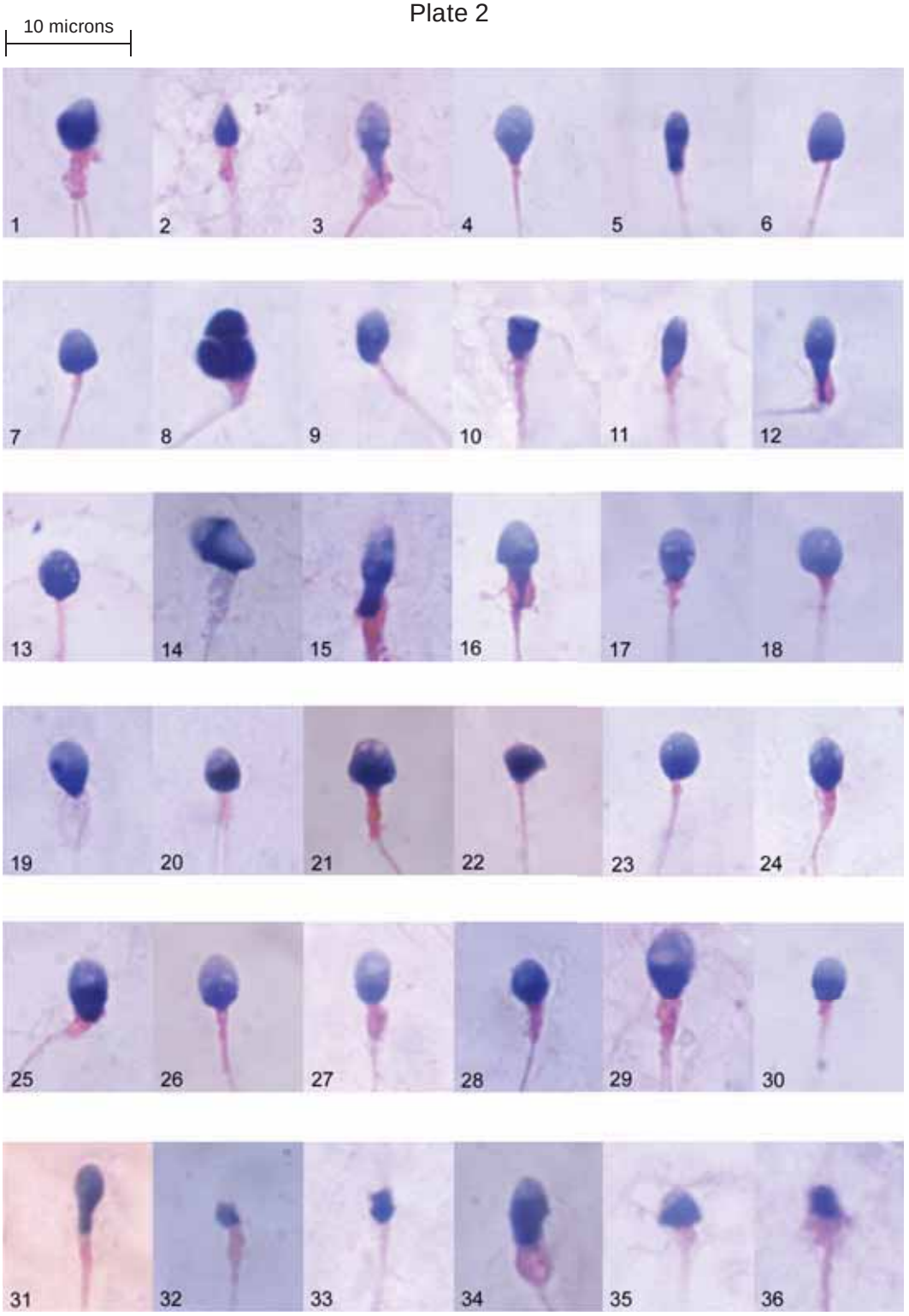


Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 1

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
2	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
3	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
4	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
5	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
6	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
7	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
8	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
9	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
10	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
11	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
12	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
13	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
14	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
15	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
16	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
17	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
18	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
19	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK
20	normal		normal		normal	if PP OK

Plate 2

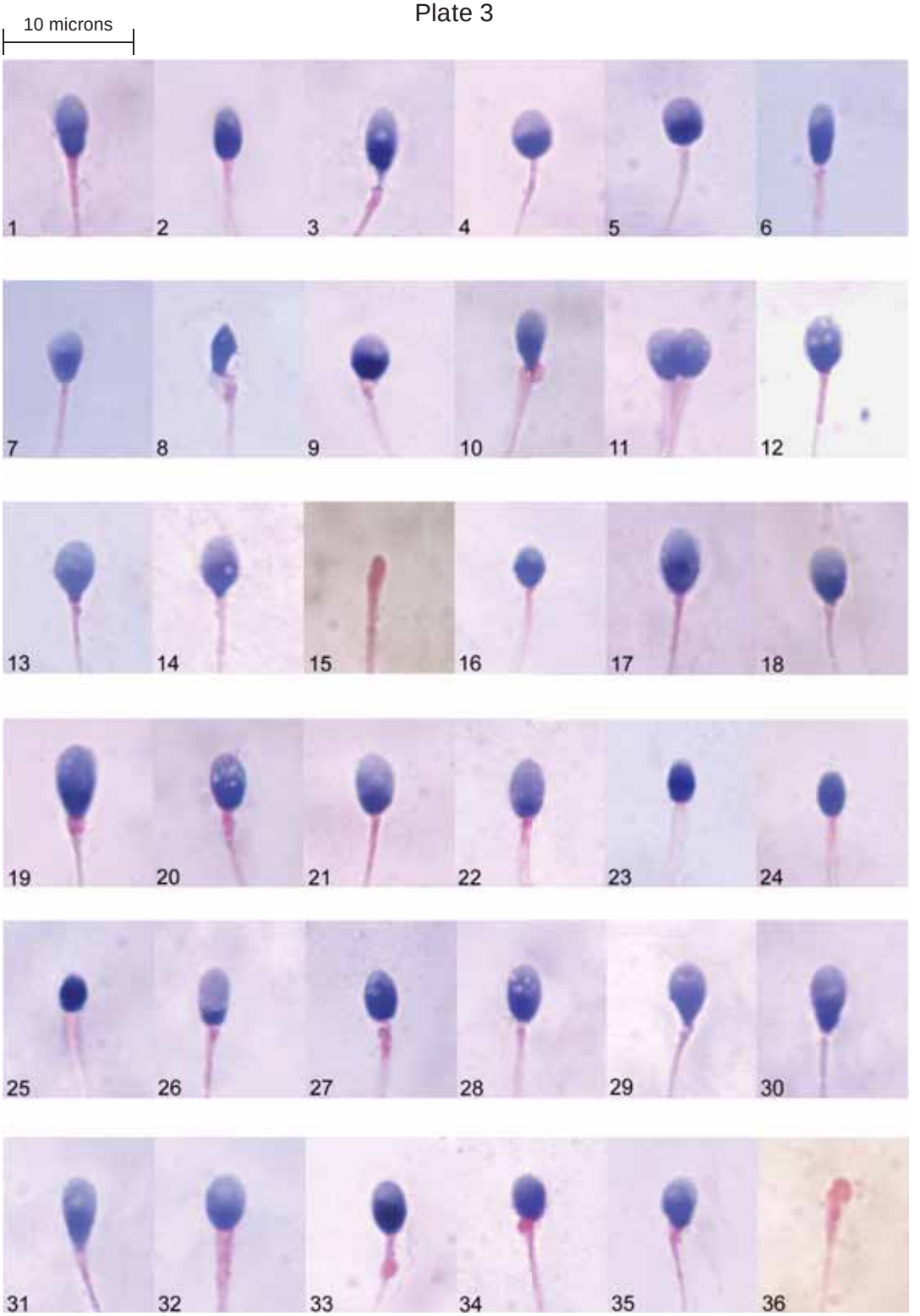


Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 2

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	abnormal		thick	double	abnormal	
2	abnormal		irreg		abnormal	side view
3	abnormal	pyriform	bent, irreg, ERC		abnormal	>one third
4	abnormal				abnormal	
5	abnormal	pyriform			abnormal	
6	abnormal				abnormal	
7	abnormal				abnormal	
8	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
9	abnormal		insert		abnormal	
10	abnormal				abnormal	
11	abnormal				abnormal	
12	abnormal	pyriform		bent	abnormal	
13	abnormal	>2 vac, PA vac			abnormal	
14	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
15	abnormal	pyriform	thick, ERC		abnormal	>one third
16	abnormal	pyriform	ERC		abnormal	>one third
17	normal	PA vac			abnormal	
18	abnormal		thick, insert		abnormal	
19	abnormal		abnormal		abnormal	
20	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
21	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
22	abnormal				abnormal	
23	abnormal				abnormal	
24	normal	>2 vac	thick		abnormal	
25	abnormal		thick, bent		abnormal	
26	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
27	abnormal	>70% acr	thick		abnormal	
28	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
29	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
30	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
31	abnormal	pyriform	thick		abnormal	
32	abnormal	small	thick		abnormal	
33	abnormal	small	thick		abnormal	
34	abnormal		ERC		abnormal	>one third
35	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
36	abnormal		thick		abnormal	

Plate 3

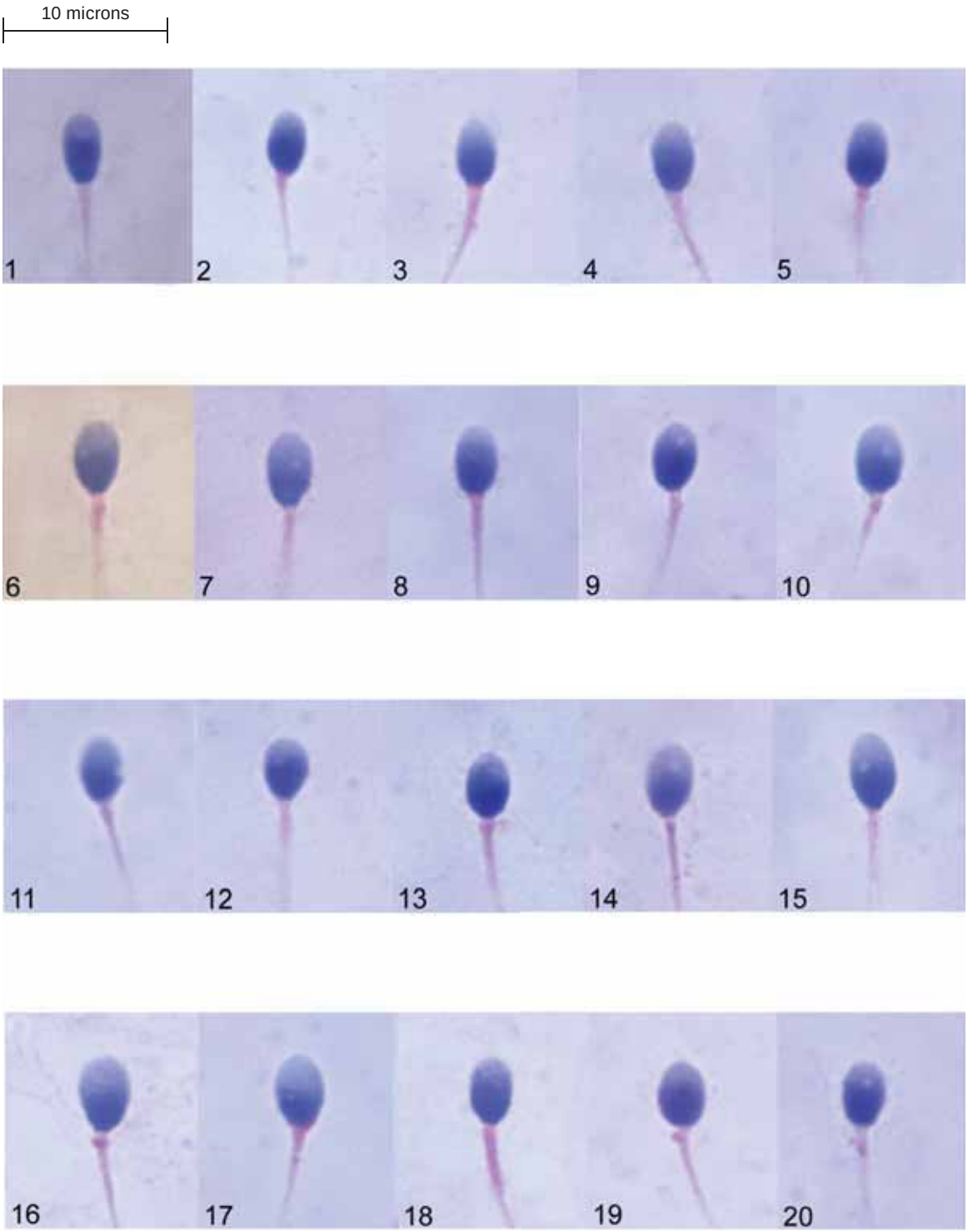


Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 3

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	abnormal	tapered	thick		abnormal	
2	abnormal				abnormal	
3	abnormal		irreg		abnormal	
4	abnormal	round			abnormal	
5	abnormal	round			abnormal	
6	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
7	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
8	abnormal	amorphous	thick		abnormal	
9	abnormal	round	thick		abnormal	
10	abnormal	tapered	irreg, thick		abnormal	
11	—				—	two cells
12	abnormal	>2 vac, PA vac			abnormal	
13	abnormal				abnormal	
14	normal	PA vac			abnormal	
15	—				—	pinhead
16	abnormal	small			abnormal	
17	abnormal	large			abnormal	
18	normal		thick		abnormal	
19	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
20	abnormal	>2 vac	insert		abnormal	
21	normal	>70% acr			abnormal	
22	abnormal	>70% acr			abnormal	
23	abnormal	<40% acr, small			abnormal	
24	abnormal	<40% acr. small			abnormal	
25	abnormal	<40% acr, small			abnormal	
26	abnormal	>70% acr			abnormal	
27	abnormal	<40% acr, >2 vac	irreg		abnormal	
28	normal	>2 vac			abnormal	
29	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
30	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
31	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
32	normal		thick		abnormal	
33	normal		thick		abnormal	
34	abnormal	<40% acr	thick		abnormal	
35	abnormal		thick, bent		abnormal	
36	—				—	pinhead

Plate 4

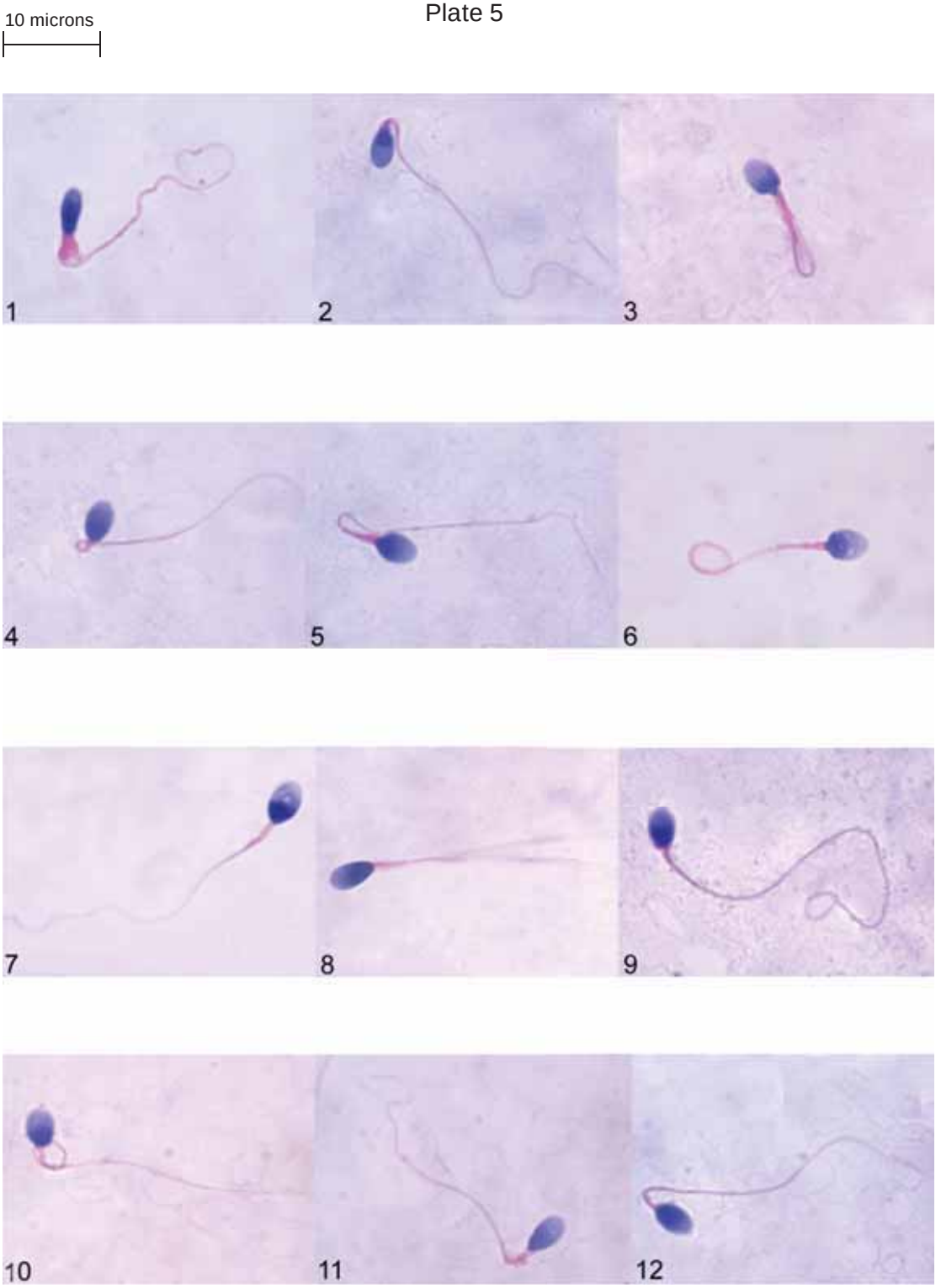


Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 4

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	abnormal	flat	thick		abnormal	
2	normal		thick, bent		abnormal	
3	normal		thick		abnormal	
4	normal		thick, bent		abnormal	
5	normal		thick		abnormal	
6	normal		thick		abnormal	
7	abnormal	irreg			abnormal	
8	normal		thick		abnormal	
9	normal		insert, bent		abnormal	
10	normal		thick, bent		abnormal	
11	abnormal	PA vac			abnormal	
12	abnormal				abnormal	
13	abnormal	<40% acr, >2 vac	thick		abnormal	
14	normal		irreg		abnormal	
15	normal		insert		abnormal	
16	normal		thick		abnormal	
17	normal		insert, thick		abnormal	
18	normal		thick, too long		abnormal	
19	normal	<40% acr	insert		abnormal	
20	normal	<40% acr	irreg		abnormal	

Plate 5



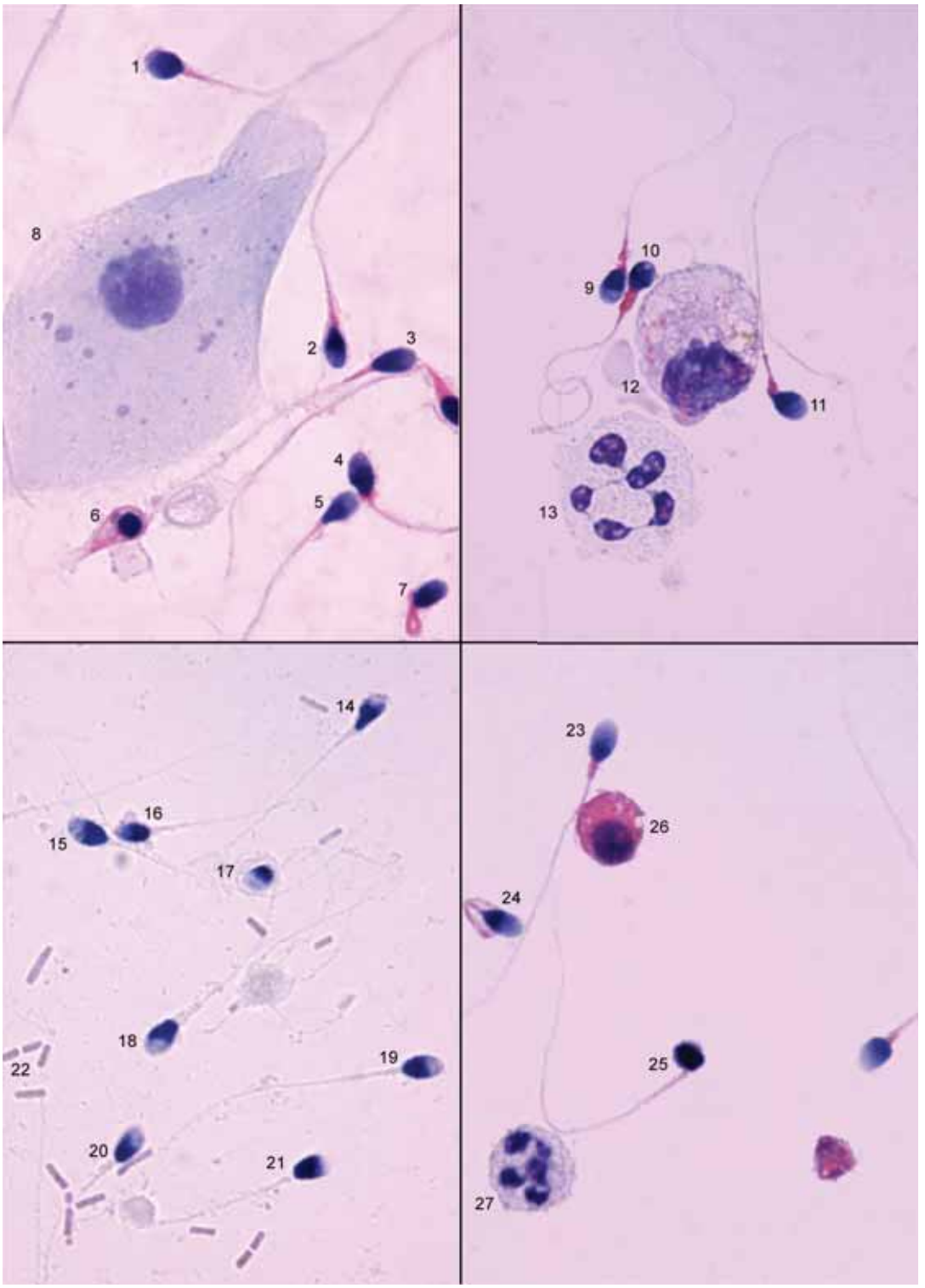
Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 5

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	abnormal		ERC		abnormal	>one third
2	normal		bent	normal	abnormal	
3	abnormal	>70% acr		looped	abnormal	
4	normal		bent	normal	abnormal	
5	normal		thick	looped	abnormal	
6	abnormal	PA vac		coiled	abnormal	
7	normal				normal	
8	normal			double	abnormal	
9	abnormal			coiled	abnormal	
10	abnormal		bent, insert	coiled	abnormal	
11	normal		thick	bent	abnormal	
12	normal		bent	normal	abnormal	

10 microns

Plate 6



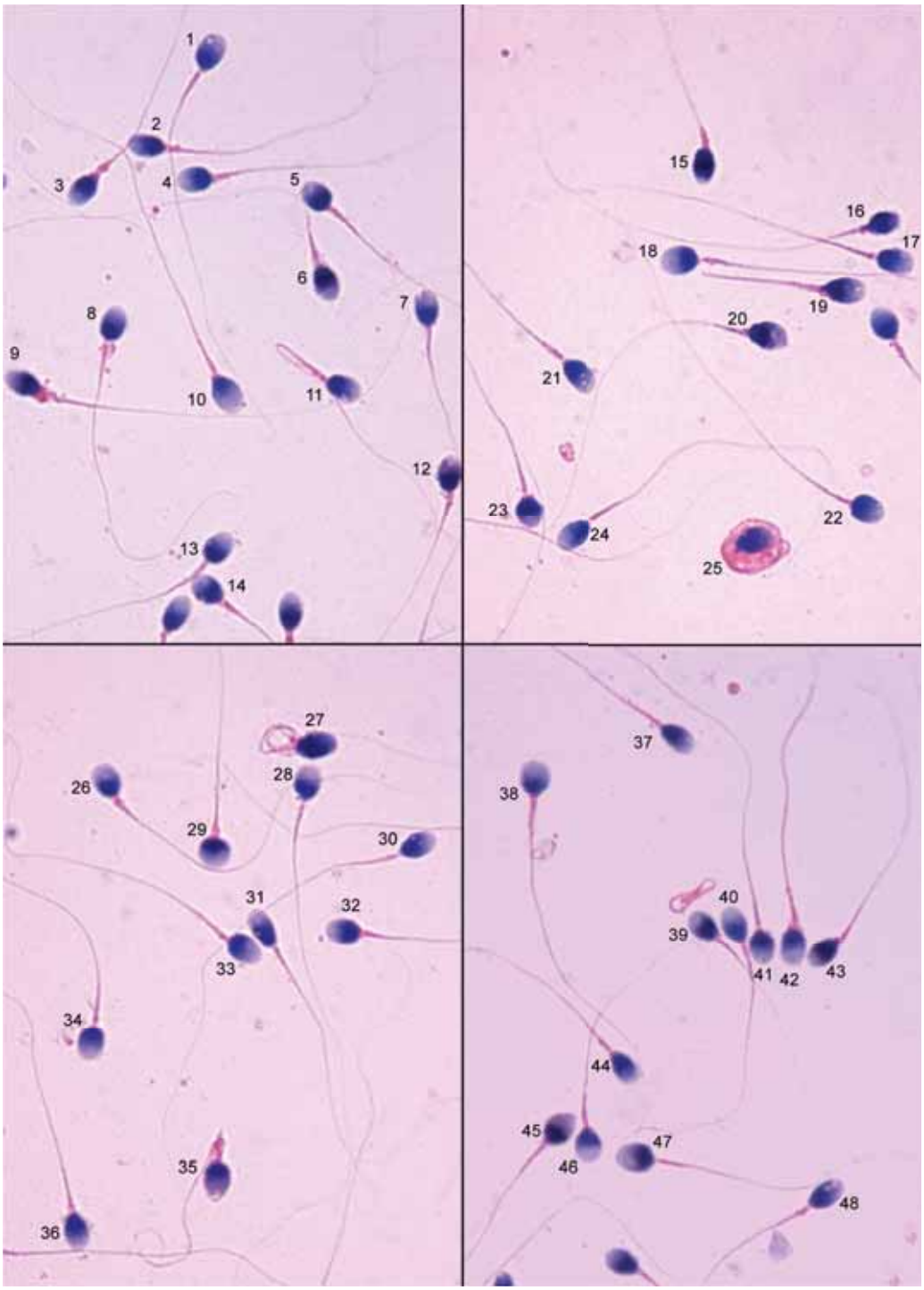
Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 6

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	normal	<40% acr	thick	normal	abnormal	
2	normal		thick		abnormal	
3	normal				normal	
4	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
5	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
6					not classifiable	abnormal spermatozoon
7	abnormal		thick	coiled	abnormal	
8						epithelial cell
9	normal		thick, insert		abnormal	
10	abnormal	<40% acr	thick		abnormal	
11	normal		thick		abnormal	
12						degenerating macrophage?
13						polymorph
14	abnormal	pyriform			abnormal	
15	normal				normal	
16	abnormal	<40% acr			abnormal	
17	abnormal	round		not seen	abnormal	free head?
18	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
19	normal				normal	
20	normal				normal	If PP OK
21	abnormal	flat			abnormal	
22						bacilli
23	normal		thick		abnormal	
24	normal		thick	coiled	abnormal	
25	abnormal	amorphous			abnormal	
26						spermatid
27						polymorph

10 microns

Plate 7



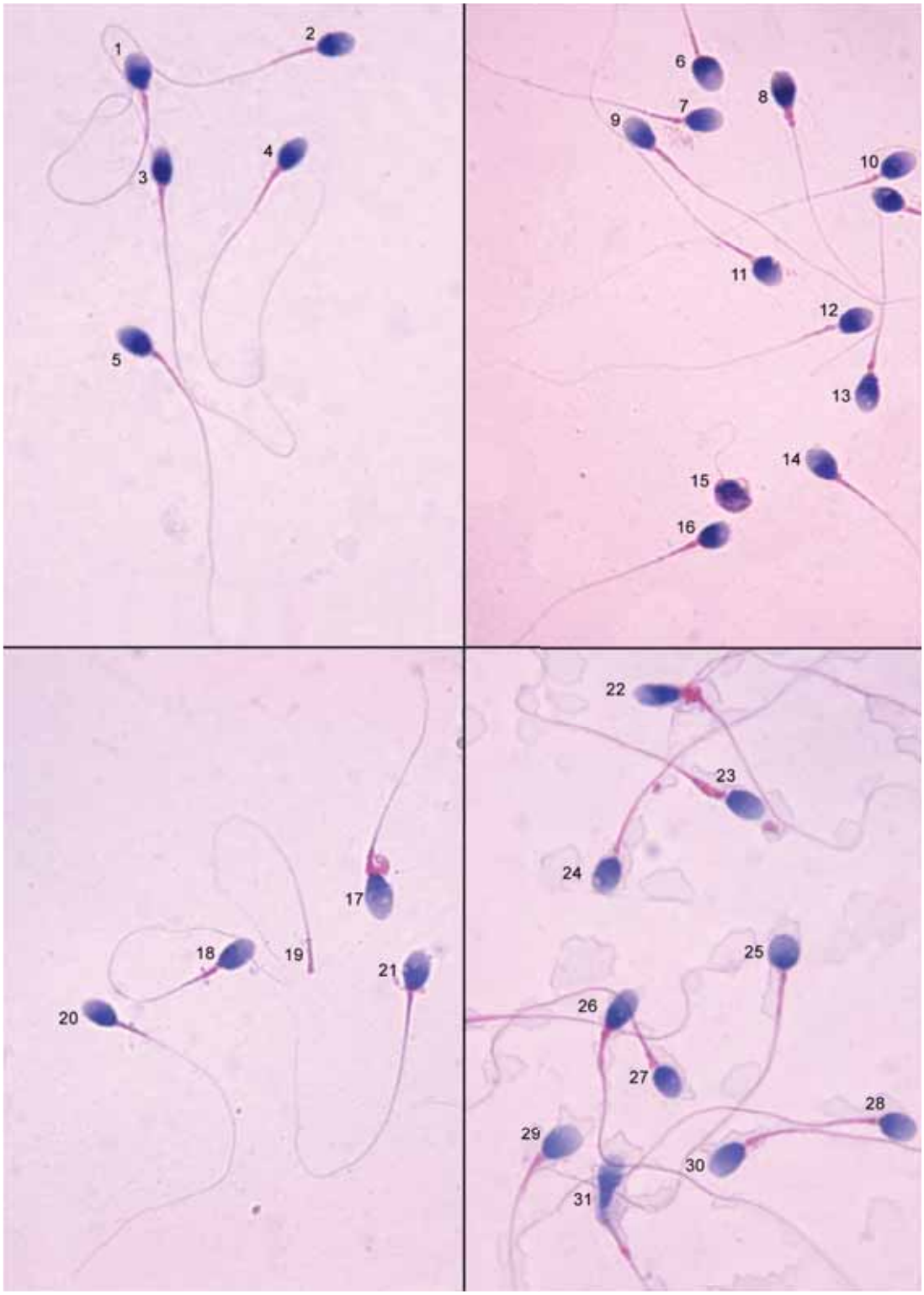
Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 7

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	normal	2 vac			normal	
2	normal				normal	
3	normal		thick		abnormal	
4	normal				normal	
5	normal				normal	if PP OK
6	normal		thick		abnormal	
7	normal	vac on surface			normal	
8	normal		CD		normal	<one third
9	abnormal		thick, ERC		abnormal	>one third
10	normal				normal	
11	normal	PA vac		looped	abnormal	
12	normal				normal	if PP OK
13	normal	PA vac			abnormal	
14	normal	PA vac			abnormal	
15	abnormal	<40% acr	thick		abnormal	
16	abnormal	<40% acr			abnormal	
17	normal				normal	
18	normal				normal	if PP OK
19	normal		thick	short	abnormal	
20	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
21	normal	>2 vac			abnormal	
22	abnormal	round			abnormal	
23	abnormal	round			abnormal	
24	normal				normal	
25						sperm head in cytoplasm?
26	normal				normal	
27	normal	no acro		coiled	abnormal	
28	normal				normal	
29	abnormal	round			abnormal	
30	normal	PA vac			abnormal	
31	abnormal	tapered, PA vac			abnormal	
32	normal				normal	if PP OK
33	normal				normal	
34	normal				normal	If PP OK
35	abnormal		thick	bent	abnormal	
36	normal				normal	if PP OK
37	normal				normal	if PP OK
38	abnormal	round			abnormal	
39	normal				normal	
40	normal				normal	
41	normal				normal	
42	normal		thick		abnormal	
43	normal	<40 % acr			abnormal	
44		out of focus				not assessed
45	abnormal	round			abnormal	
46	abnormal	round			abnormal	
47	normal				normal	
48	normal				normal	if PP OK

10 microns

Plate 8



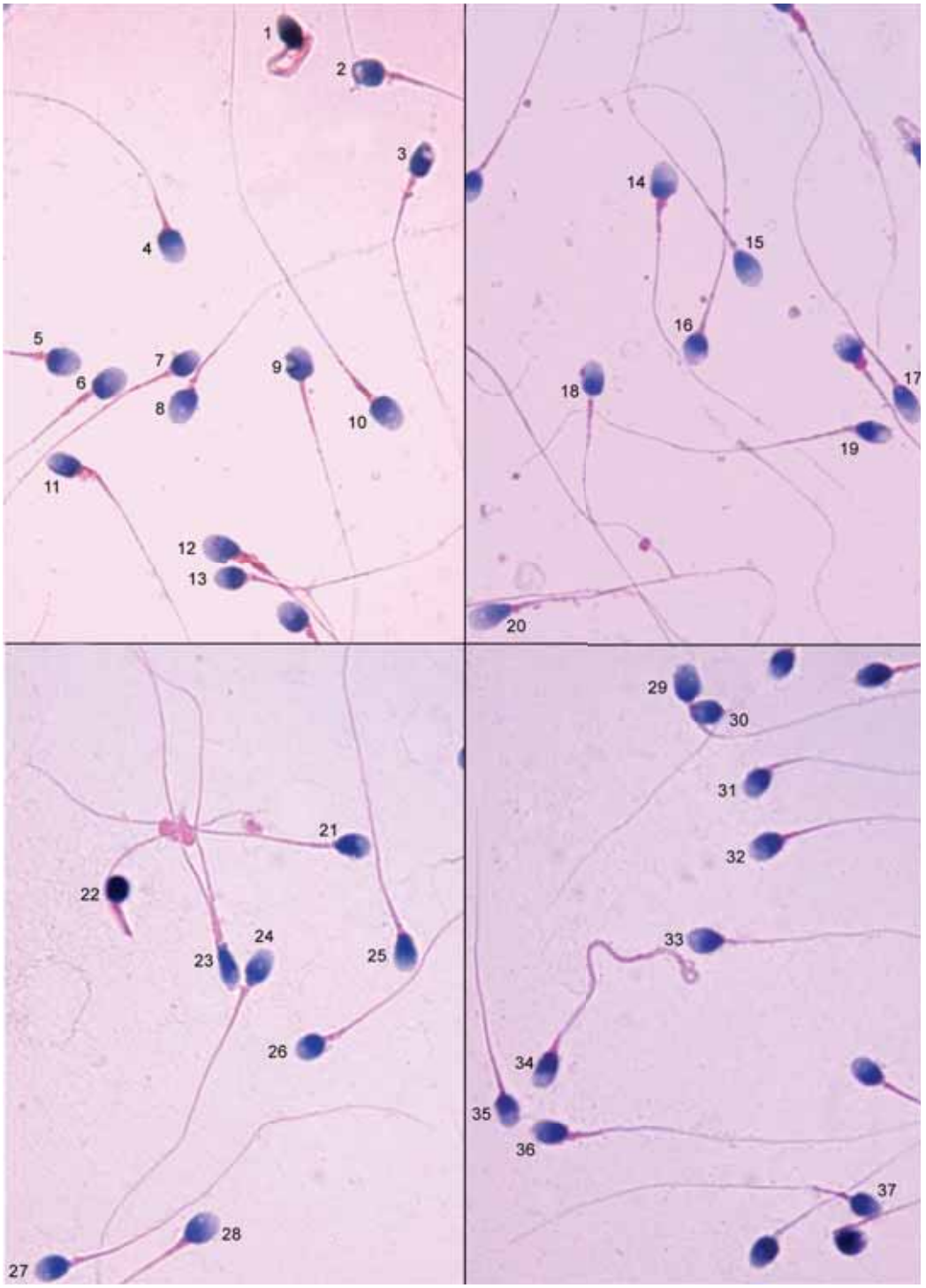
Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 8

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	normal			normal	normal	
2	normal	>2 vac		normal	abnormal	
3	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
4	normal			normal	normal	
5	normal				normal	
6	normal				normal	if PP OK
7	normal				normal	if PP OK
8	normal		thick		abnormal	
9	normal				normal	
10	normal				normal	
11	normal	PA vac			abnormal	
12	normal				normal	
13	abnormal				abnormal	
14	normal				normal	if PP OK
15	abnormal	amorphous		defect	abnormal	
16	normal				normal	If PP OK
17	abnormal	>70% acr	thick, ERC		abnormal	>one third
18	normal				normal	
19						pinhead
20	normal				normal	
21	normal	PA vac			abnormal	
22	abnormal	tapered	thick, ERC		abnormal	>one third
23	abnormal	flat	thick		abnormal	
24	normal	>2 vac			abnormal	
25	abnormal	round			abnormal	
26	normal		thick		abnormal	
27	normal		thick		abnormal	
28	normal	>2 vac, >70% acr			abnormal	
29	abnormal				abnormal	
30	normal	>70% acr			abnormal	
31	abnormal	pyriform			abnormal	

10 microns

Plate 9



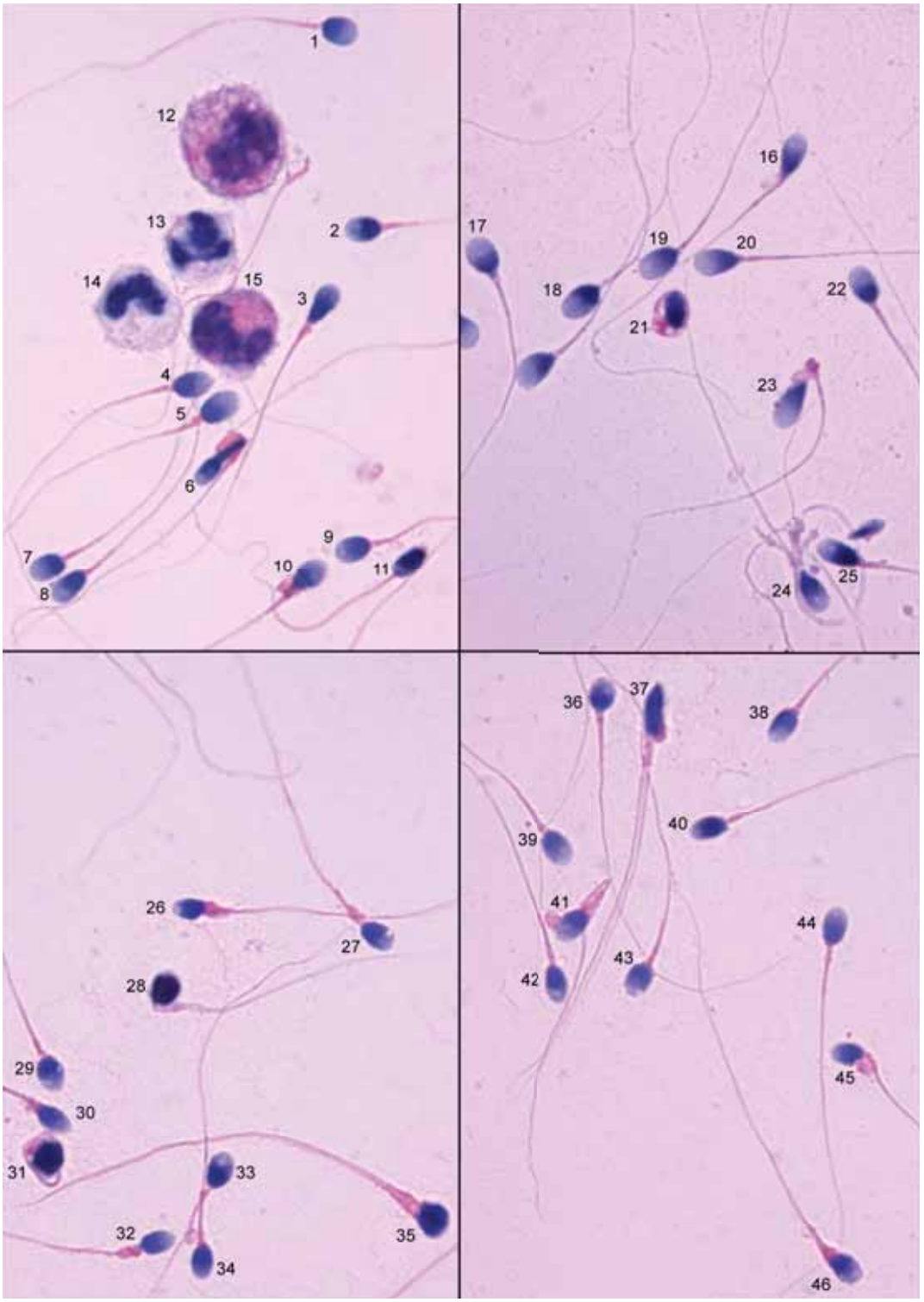
Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 9

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	abnormal			coiled	abnormal	
2		overlapping				not assessed
3	abnormal	<40% acr			abnormal	
4	normal				normal	if PP OK
5	normal				normal	if PP OK
6	normal	>70% acr	insert		abnormal	
7	normal		insert		abnormal	
8	normal	>70% acr	insert		abnormal	
9	abnormal	PA vac			abnormal	
10	normal	>2 vac	thick		abnormal	
11	abnormal		thick, ERC		abnormal	>one third
12	abnormal		thick, insert, ERC		abnormal	>one third
13	normal				normal	if PP OK
14	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
15	normal			normal	normal	
16	abnormal				abnormal	
17	abnormal	tapered, 3 vac, PA vac			abnormal	
18	normal				normal	
19	abnormal	vac >20%			abnormal	
20	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
21	normal	PA vac			abnormal	
22	abnormal	amorphous		bent	abnormal	
23	abnormal	tapered		double	abnormal	
24	abnormal	PA vac			abnormal	
25	normal	>2 vac			abnormal	
26	normal				normal	if PP OK
27	normal				normal	
28	normal				normal	if PP OK
29		overlapping				not assessed
30		overlapping				not assessed
31	normal				normal	if PP OK
32	normal				normal	if PP OK
33	normal				normal	if PP OK
34	normal		thick	thick, coiled	abnormal	
35	abnormal	1 side not oval			abnormal	
36	normal	<40% acr			abnormal	
37		overlapping				not assessed

10 microns

Plate 10



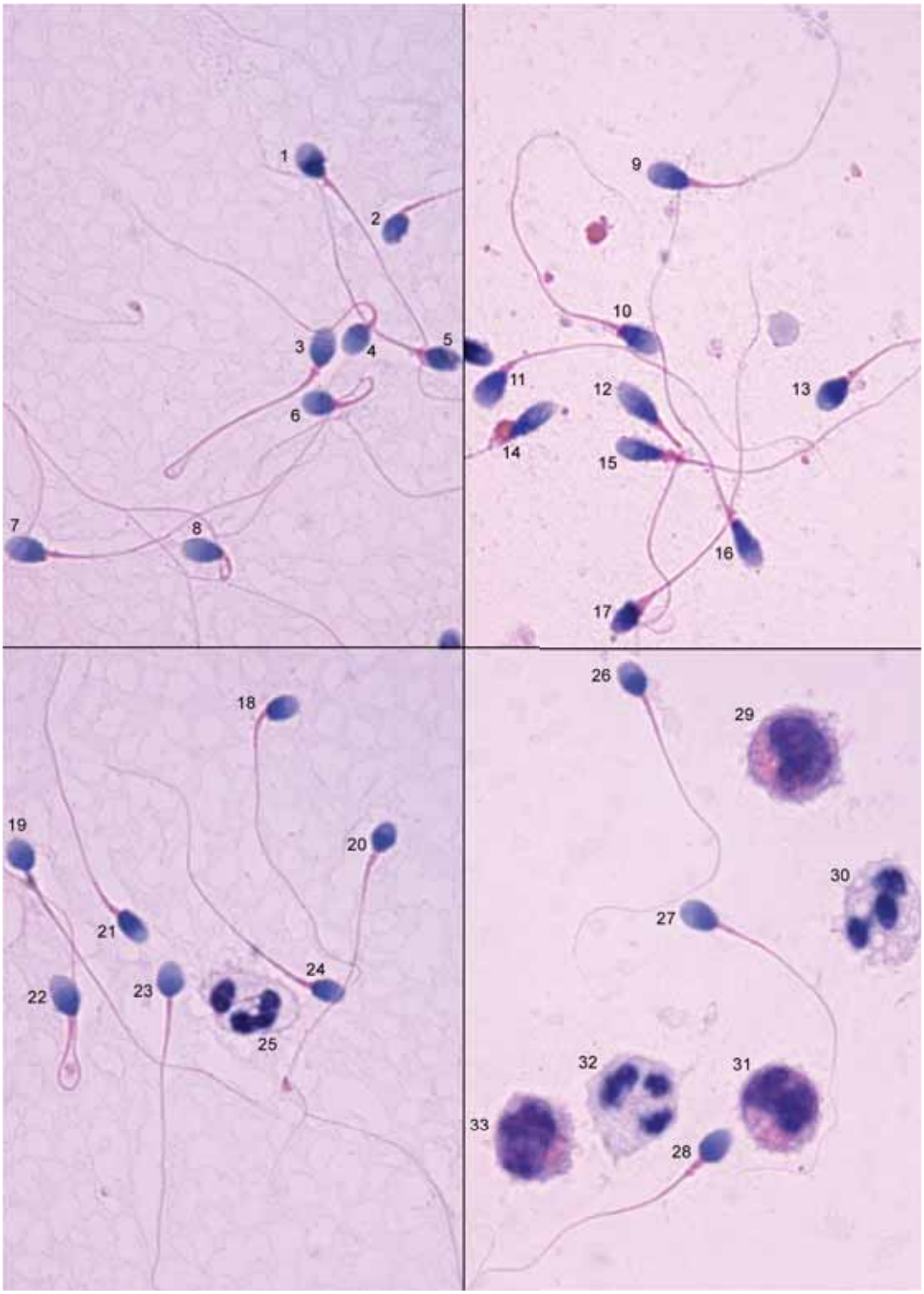
Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 10

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	normal		insert		abnormal	
2	normal				normal	if PP OK
3	abnormal	pyriform			abnormal	
4	normal				normal	
5	normal		thick		abnormal	
6	abnormal	pyriform	ERC	bent	abnormal	>one third
7	normal				normal	
8	normal				normal	
9	normal	3 vac			abnormal	
10	abnormal	tapered	thick, ERC		abnormal	>one third
11	abnormal	tapered, <40% acr		bent	abnormal	
12						monocyte
13						polymorph
14						polymorph
15						monocyte
16	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
17	normal				normal	if PP OK
18	normal				normal	
19	normal				normal	
20	normal				normal	if PP OK
21	abnormal	amorphous			abnormal	
22	normal				normal	if PP OK
23	abnormal	tapered	thick	bent	abnormal	
24		overlapping				not assessed
25	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
26	abnormal	amorphous	thick, ERC		abnormal	>one third
27	normal		thick		abnormal	
28	abnormal	amorphous	thick		abnormal	
29	abnormal	PA vac			abnormal	
30	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
31	abnormal		thick	coiled	abnormal	
32	normal		thick		abnormal	
33		overlapping				not assessed
34		overlapping				not assessed
35	abnormal	amorphous, no acro	thick		abnormal	
36	normal	<40% acr			abnormal	
37	abnormal	pyriform	thick	double	abnormal	
38	normal				normal	if PP OK
39	normal		thick		abnormal	
40	abnormal	<40% acr			abnormal	
41	abnormal		thick	bent	abnormal	
42	normal				normal	if PP OK
43	normal	2 vac, <40% acr			abnormal	
44	normal				normal	
45	abnormal		thick, ECR		abnormal	>one third
46	abnormal		thick		abnormal	

10 microns

Plate 11



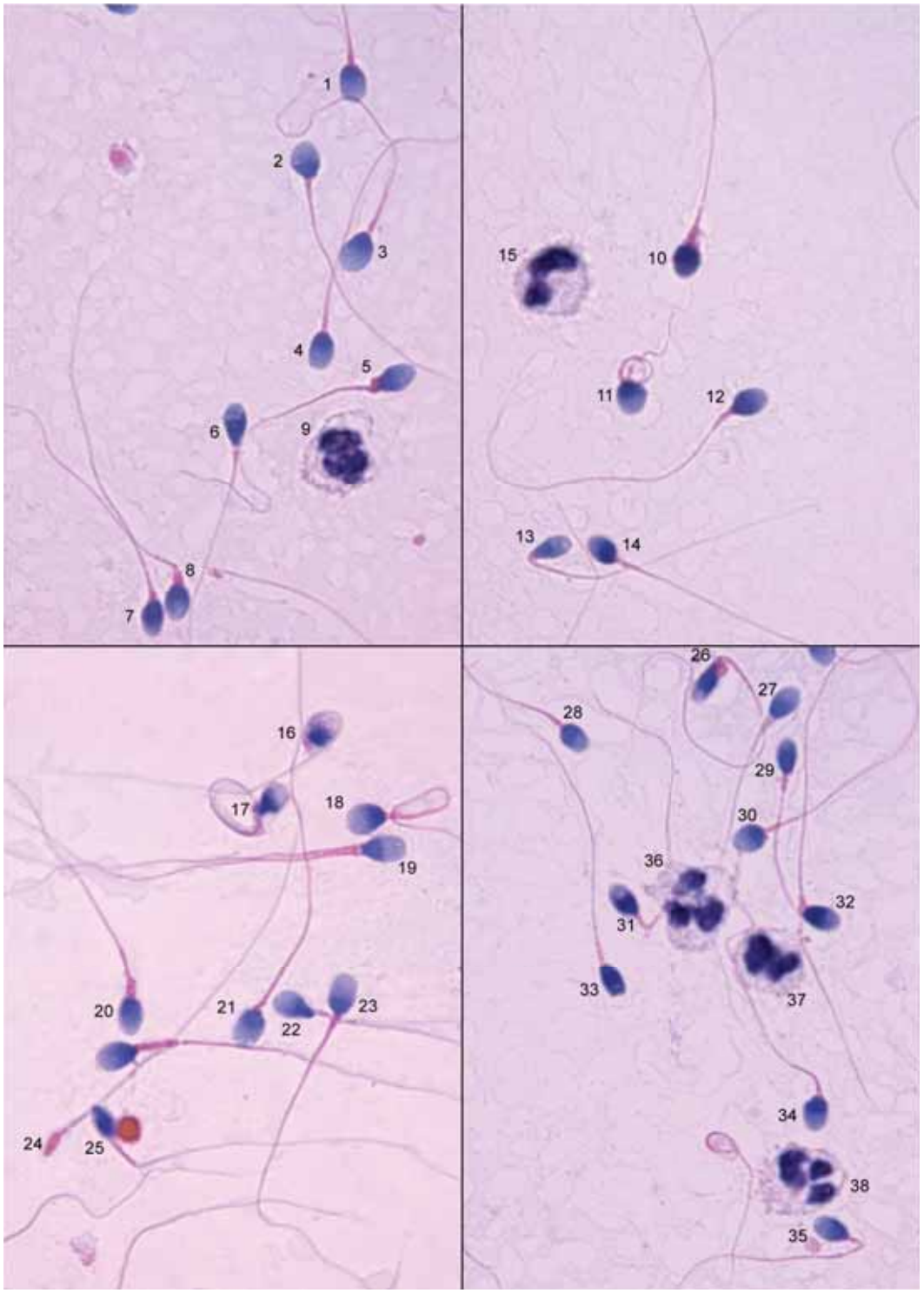
Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 11

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	abnormal		insert		abnormal	
2	abnormal		insert		abnormal	
3	normal		thick	looped	abnormal	
4	normal				normal	
5	abnormal	>2 vac, <40% acr	thick		abnormal	
6	normal			looped	abnormal	
7	abnormal		insert		abnormal	
8	normal			looped	abnormal	
9	abnormal	>70% acr, tapered			abnormal	
10	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
11	normal		thick		abnormal	
12	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
13	normal	<40% acr	thick		abnormal	
14	abnormal	tapered	thick, ERC		abnormal	>one third
15	abnormal	tapered	thick		abnormal	
16	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
17	abnormal	amorphous	thick		abnormal	
18	normal				normal	
19	normal				abnormal	
20	abnormal				abnormal	
21	abnormal				abnormal	
22	normal	>70% acr		looped	abnormal	
23	normal				normal	
24	normal				normal	
25						polymorph
26	normal				normal	
27	normal				normal	
28	normal	>70% acr			abnormal	
29						monocyte
30						polymorph
31						monocyte
32						polymorph
33						monocyte

10 microns

Plate 12

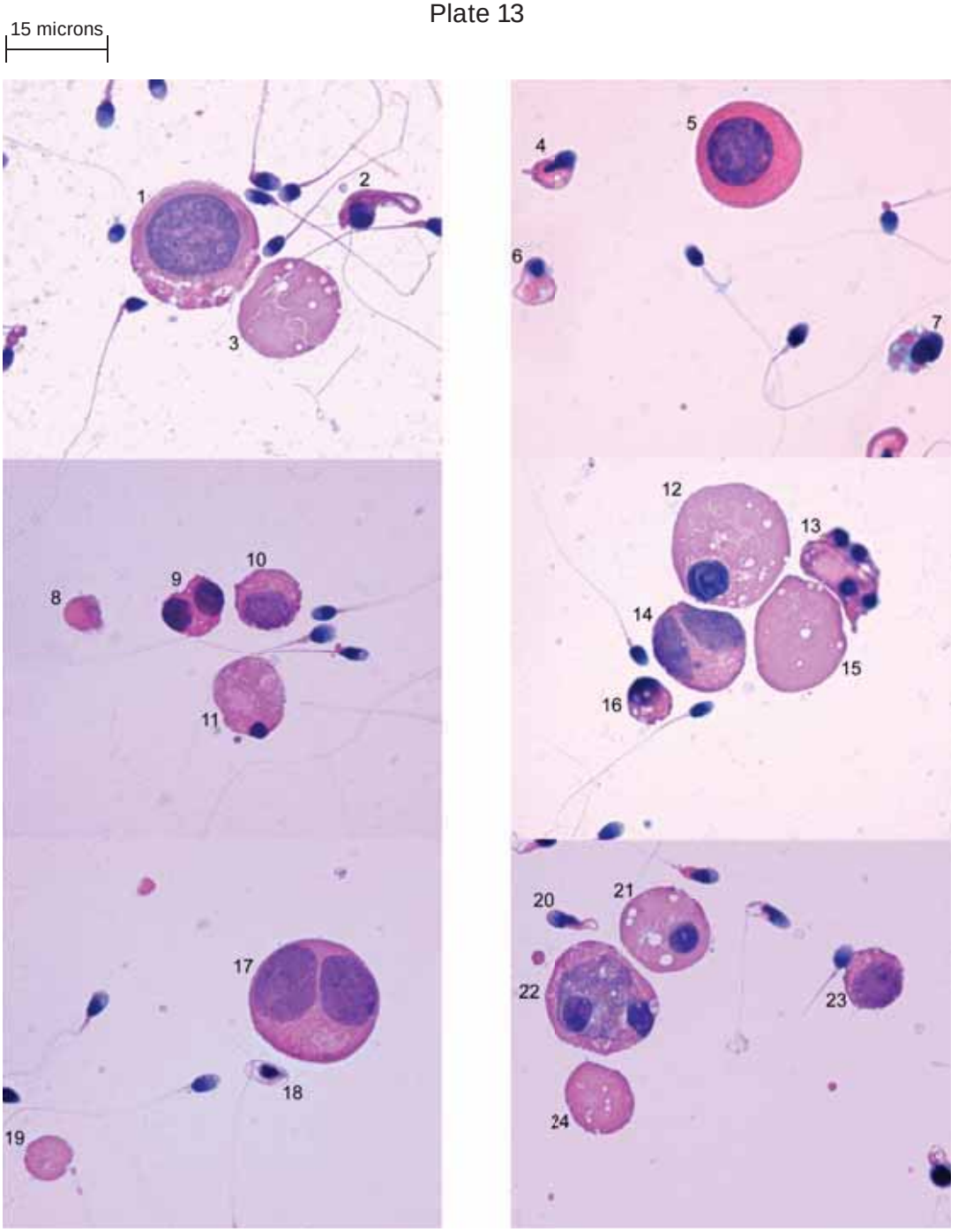


Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Morphology assessment of spermatozoa in Plate 12

Sperm	Head shape	Other head comments	Midpiece comments	Principal piece comments	Overall sperm classification	Comments
1	normal	>70% acr			abnormal	
2	abnormal				abnormal	
3	abnormal	>70% acr			abnormal	
4	normal				normal	if PP OK
5	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
6	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
7		not in focus	thick			not assessed
8	abnormal		thick, bent		abnormal	
9						degenerating leukocyte
10	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
11	abnormal	round		coiled	abnormal	
12	normal				normal	
13	abnormal	tapered	bent		abnormal	
14	abnormal		insert		abnormal	
15						polymorph
16	abnormal	amorphous			abnormal	
17	abnormal			coiled	abnormal	
18	abnormal		thick	coiled	abnormal	
19	normal			double	abnormal	
20	abnormal		thick		abnormal	
21		overlapping				not assessed
22	abnormal	pyriform			abnormal	
23	normal				normal	
24	abnormal				abnormal	pinhead
25	abnormal	amorphous		bent	abnormal	
26	abnormal	amorphous	thick, bent		abnormal	
27	normal		thick		abnormal	
28	normal				normal	if PP OK
29	abnormal	tapered			abnormal	
30	abnormal	round			abnormal	
31	normal		bent	overlap		not assessed
32	normal		thick, bent		abnormal	
33	abnormal				abnormal	
34	abnormal				abnormal	
35	normal		bent		abnormal	
36						polymorph
37						polymorph
38						polymorph

Plate 13



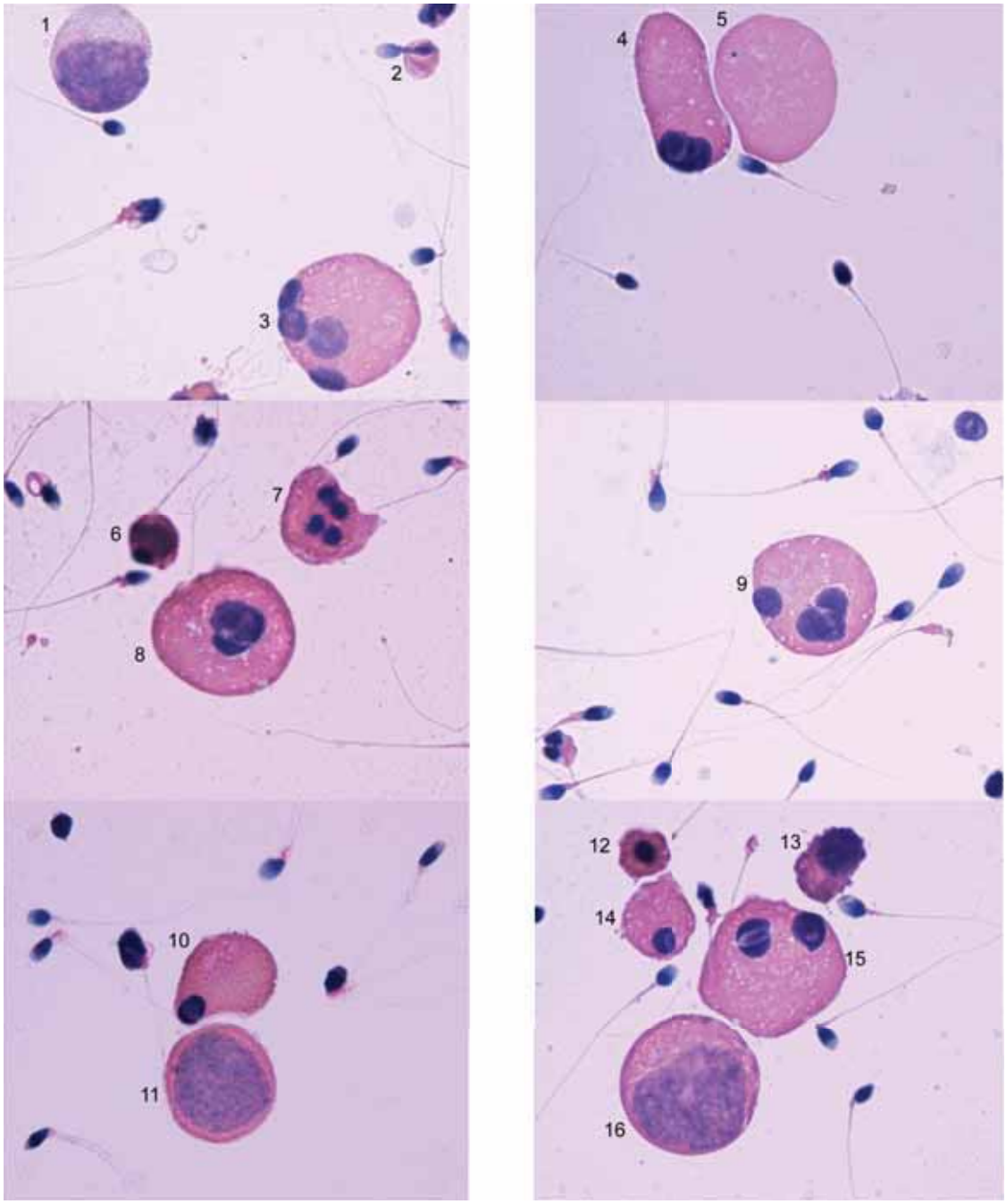
Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Assessment of cells in Plate 13

Cell	Cell type
1	macrophage
2	abnormal spermatozoon
3	cytoplasm
4	abnormal spermatozoon
5	spermatocyte
6	abnormal spermatozoon
7	abnormal spermatozoon? Loose head on cytoplasm?
8	cytoplasm
9	dividing spermatid
10	spermatocyte
11	degenerating spermatid
12	spermatid
13	degenerating spermatid
14	dividing spermatocyte
15	cytoplasm
16	degenerating spermatid
17	dividing spermatocyte
18	abnormal spermatozoon
19	cytoplasm
20	abnormal spermatozoon
21	spermatid
22	phagocytosing macrophage
23	spermatocyte
24	cytoplasm

15 microns

Plate 14



Micrographs courtesy of C Brazil.

Assessment of cells in Plate 14

Cell	Cell type
1	macrophage
2	abnormal spermatozoon
3	(dividing) spermatid
4	(dividing) spermatid
5	cytoplasm
6	not classifiable
7	degenerating spermatid
8	degenerating spermatid?
9	degenerating spermatid
10	degenerating spermatid
11	macrophage
12	degenerating spermatid
13	degenerating spermatid
14	degenerating spermatid
15	degenerating spermatid
16	macrophage

2.17 Analysing a sperm morphology smear

2.17.1 Assessment of normal sperm morphology

It may be sufficient to determine the proportion of normal spermatozoa. With this morphology assessment paradigm, the functional regions of the spermatozoon are considered. It is unnecessary to distinguish all the variations in head size and shape or the various midpiece and principal piece defects.

Morphological evaluation should be performed on every assessable spermatozoon in several systematically selected areas of the slide, to prevent biased selection of particular spermatozoa.

- Examine the slide using brightfield optics at ×1000 magnification with oil immersion.
- Assess all spermatozoa in each field, moving from one microscopic field to another.
- Evaluate at least 200 spermatozoa in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.5).
- Tally the number of normal and abnormal spermatozoa with the aid of a laboratory counter.
- Repeat the assessment of at least 200 spermatozoa, preferably on the replicate slide, but alternatively on the same slide.

- Compare the percentages of normal morphological forms from the two independent assessments.
- Calculate the average and difference of the two percentages of normal forms from the replicate assessments.
- Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.1 or Fig. A7.2, Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between two percentages that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone.)
- If the difference between the percentages is acceptable, report the average percentage normal morphology. If the difference is too high, repeat the assessment on the same slides (see Box 2.6).
- Report the average percentage of normal forms to the nearest whole number.

Note 1: Assess only intact spermatozoa, defined as having a head and a tail (see Section 2.7.3), since only intact spermatozoa are counted for sperm concentration. Do not count immature germ (round) cells.

Note 2: Do not assess overlapping spermatozoa and those lying with the head on edge; these cannot be analysed adequately. They should not be present in a good smear (see Section 2.13.2.1), but may occur when debris and a large amount of particulate material are present (such as in viscous semen: see Section 2.13.2.3). These samples should be washed (see Section 2.13.2.4) and the slides examined before staining.

2.17.2 Worked examples

Example 1. The percentages of spermatozoa with normal morphology in replicate counts of 200 spermatozoa are 18 and 9. The rounded average is 14% and the difference is 9%. From Table 2.1, it is seen that for an average of 14%, a difference of up to 7% would be expected to occur by chance alone. As the observed difference exceeds this, the results are discarded and the slides reassessed in replicate.

Example 2. The percentages of spermatozoa with normal morphology in replicate counts of 200 spermatozoa are 10 and 14. The rounded average is 12% and the difference is 4%. From Table 2.1, it is seen that for an average of 12%, a difference of up to 7% would be expected to occur by chance alone. As the observed difference is less than this, the results are accepted and the mean value reported, namely 12% normal forms.

2.17.3 Lower reference limit

The lower reference limit for normal forms is 4% (5th centile, 95% CI 3.0–4.0).

Comment: The total number of morphologically normal spermatozoa in the ejaculate is of biological significance. This is obtained by multiplying the total number of spermatozoa in the ejaculate (see Section 2.8.7) by the percentage of normal forms.

2.17.4 Assessment of abnormal sperm morphology

Categorizing all abnormal forms of spermatozoa may be of diagnostic or research benefit. If desired, note the nature of the defects and calculate the percentage of spermatozoa with defects of the head (%H), midpiece (%M) or principal piece (%P), and those with excess residual cytoplasm (%C).

A multi-key counter can be used, with one key for normal, one for abnormal, and one for each of the four abnormal categories (H, M, P, C). Such a counter allows each spermatozoon to be counted only once, and each of its abnormalities to be scored separately.

- From the final assessment of 400 spermatozoa, it is possible to obtain the percentage of normal and abnormal spermatozoa (the two figures should add up to 100%), as well as the percentage with each type of abnormality, i.e. %H, %M, %P and %C (these figures will not add up to 100%).
- The percentage of spermatozoa in these abnormality classes is obtained by dividing the total number of abnormal spermatozoa with a specific defect by the total number of normal and abnormal spermatozoa scored ×100. These numbers can also be used to calculate multiple anomalies indices (see Section 3.1).

2.17.5 Worked example

Example. Of 200 spermatozoa scored with a six-key counter for replicate 1, 42 spermatozoa are scored as normal and 158 as abnormal. Of the 158 abnormal spermatozoa, 140 have head defects, 102 have midpiece defects, 30 have principal piece defects, and 44 have excess residual cytoplasm. Results from replicate 2 are 36 normal and 164 abnormal spermatozoa, of which 122 have head defects, 108 midpiece defects, 22 principal piece defects, and 36 excess residual cytoplasm.

Only the normal category is compared for acceptability of replicates. Replicate 1 has 21% normal sperm and replicate 2 has 18%. The mean of these values is 19.5% (rounded up to 20%), and the difference 3%. From Table 2.1, it is seen that, for an average of 20%, a difference of up to 8% would be expected to occur by chance alone. As the observed difference is less than this, the results are accepted and the mean values reported: normal forms (42 + 36)/400 = 20%, abnormal heads (140 + 122)/400 = 66%, abnormal midpieces (102 + 108)/400 = 53%, abnormal principal pieces (30 + 22)/400 = 13%, and percentage with excess residual cytyoplasm (44 + 36)/400 = 20%.

Note: These categories do not add up to 100% since each abnormality is tallied separately and some spermatozoa have multiple defects.

Comment: A more detailed analysis of abnormal spermatozoa, with various indices combining the number of abnormalities in each region per abnormal spermatozoon, is given in Section 3.1.1.

2.17.6 Assessment of specific sperm defects

Occasionally, many spermatozoa will have a specific structural defect. For example, the acrosome may fail to develop, giving rise to the "small round-head defect" or "globozoospermia". If the basal plate fails to attach to the nucleus at the opposite pole to the acrosome at spermiation, the heads are absorbed and only tails are found in semen (the pinhead defect).

Note 1: Pinheads (free tails) are not counted as head defects, since they possess no chromatin or head structure anterior to the basal plate.

Note 2: Because free tails (pinheads) and free heads are not counted as spermatozoa (defined as having a head and tail, see Section 2.7.3), they are not considered to be sperm abnormalities.

Men whose spermatozoa all display one of these defects are usually infertile. Such cases are rare, but it is critical that they are identified and correctly reported. Thus report the presence of specific sperm defects, e.g. free sperm heads, pinheads (free tails), heads lacking acrosomes.

If there are many such defects, their prevalence relative to spermatozoa can be determined. If N is the number of cells with defects counted in the same number of fields as 400 spermatozoa, and S is the concentration of spermatozoa (10^6 per ml), then the concentration (C) of the defects (10^6 per ml) can be calculated from the formula $C = S \times (N/400)$.

2.18 Assessment of leukocytes in semen

Leukocytes, predominantly polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMN, neutrophils), are present in most human ejaculates (Tomlinson et al., 1993; Johanisson et al., 2000). They can sometimes be differentiated from spermatids and spermatocytes in a semen smear stained with the Papanicolaou procedure (see Section 2.14.2). Differentiation is based on differences in staining coloration, and on nuclear size and shape (Johanisson et al., 2000) (see Plates 6, 10, 11, 12, 13 and 14). Polymorphonuclear leukocytes can easily be confused morphologically with multinucleated spermatids, but stain a bluish colour, in contrast to the more pinkish colour of spermatids (Johanisson et al., 2000). Nuclear size may also help identification: monocyte nuclei exhibit a wide variation in size, from approximately 7 μm for lymphocytes to over 15 μm for macrophages. These sizes are only guidelines, since degeneration and division affect the size of the nucleus.

There are several other techniques for quantifying the leukocyte population in semen. As peroxidase-positive granulocytes are the predominant form of leukocytes in semen, routine assay of peroxidase activity is useful as an initial screening technique (Wolff, 1995; Johanisson et al., 2000) (see Section 2.18.1).

Leukocytes can be further differentiated with more time-consuming and expensive immunocytochemical assays against common leukocyte and sperm antigens (Homyk et al., 1990; Eggert-Kruse et al., 1992) (see Section 3.2).

2.18.1 Staining cellular peroxidase using *ortho*-toluidine

This test is quick and inexpensive, and is a useful initial screening for granulocytes.

2.18.1.1 Principle

Traditionally, leukocytes in human semen are counted after a histochemical procedure that identifies the peroxidase enzyme, which is characteristic of granulocytes (Fig. 2.14). This technique has the advantage of being relatively easy to perform, but it does not detect:

- activated polymorphs which have released their granules;
- other types of leukocyte, such as lymphocytes, macrophages and monocytes, which do not contain peroxidase.

The test can be useful in distinguishing polymorphonuclear leukocytes from multinucleated spermatids, which are peroxidase-free (Johanisson et al., 2000). The assay below is based on Nahoum & Cardozo (1980). A kit for this is available commercially.

2.18.1.2 Reagents

1. Phosphate buffer, 67 mmol/l, pH 6.0: dissolve 9.47 g of sodium hydrogen phosphate (Na_2HPO_4) in 1000 ml of purified water and 9.08 g of potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 1000 ml of purified water. Add one solution to the other (approximately 12 ml of Na_2HPO_4 solution to 88 ml of KH_2PO_4 solution) until the pH is 6.0.
2. Saturated ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl) solution: add 250 g of NH_4Cl to 1000 ml of purified water.
3. Disodium ethylenediamine tetra-acetic acid (Na_2EDTA) 148 mmol/l: dissolve 50 g/l in phosphate buffer (pH 6.0) prepared in step 1.
4. Substrate: dissolve 2.5 mg of *o*-toluidine in 10 ml of 0.9% (9 g/l) saline.
5. Hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) 30% (v/v): as purchased.
6. Working solution: to 9 ml *o*-toluidine substrate, add 1 ml of saturated NH_4Cl solution, 1 ml of 148 mmol/l Na_2EDTA, and 10 µl of 30% (v/v) H_2O_2 and mix well. This solution can be used up to 24 hours after preparation.

Note: The International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC, 1982) has stated that *ortho*-toluidine should be regarded, for practical purposes, as if it presented a carcinogenic risk to humans. Take suitable precautions (see Appendix 2).

2.18.1.3 Procedure

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).

2. Remove a 0.1-ml aliquot of semen and mix with 0.9 ml of working solution (1 + 9 (1:10) dilution).
3. Vortex the sperm suspension gently for 10 seconds and incubate at room temperature for 20–30 minutes. Alternatively, shake continuously with a tube-rocking system.
4. Remix the semen sample before removing a replicate aliquot and mixing with working solution as above.

2.18.1.4 Assessing peroxidase-positive cell number in the haemocytometer chambers

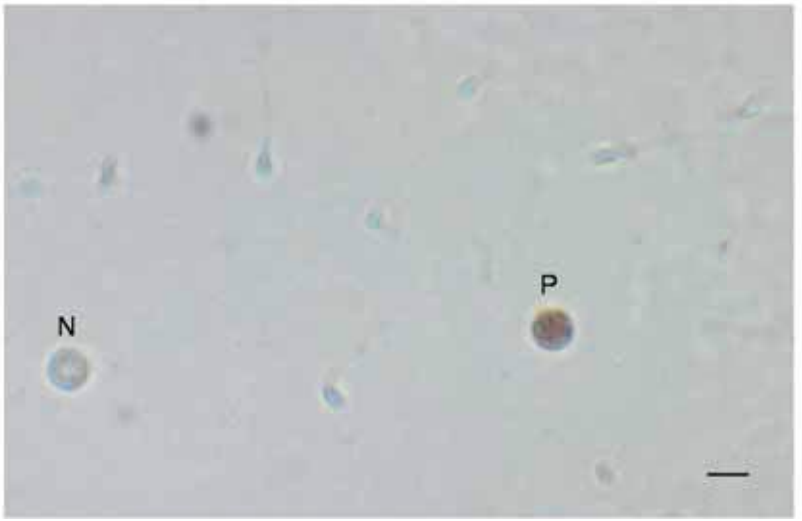
1. After 20–30 minutes, mix the sperm suspensions again and fill each side of a haemocytometer with one of the replicate preparations.
2. Store the haemocytometer horizontally for at least 4 minutes at room temperature in a humid chamber (e.g. on water-saturated filter paper in a covered Petri dish) to prevent drying out and to allow the cells to settle.
3. Examine the chamber with phase-contrast optics at ×200 or ×400 magnification.
4. Count at least 200 peroxidase-positive cells in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.7 and Table 2.2). Peroxidase-positive cells are stained brown, while peroxidase-negative cells are unstained (see Fig. 2.14).
5. Examine one chamber, grid by grid, and continue counting until at least 200 peroxidase-positive cells have been observed and a complete grid has been examined. Counting must be done by complete grids; do not stop in the middle of a grid.
6. Make a note of the number of grids assessed to reach at least 200 peroxidase-positive cells. The same number of grids will be counted from the other chamber of the haemocytometer.
7. Tally the number of peroxidase-positive cells and grids with the aid of a laboratory counter.
8. Switch to the second chamber of the haemocytometer and perform the replicate count on the same number of grids as the first replicate, even if this yields fewer than 200 peroxidase-positive cells.
9. Calculate the sum and difference of the two numbers of peroxidase-positive cells.
10. Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.5 or Fig. A7.1, Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between two counts that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone.)
11. If the difference is acceptable, calculate the concentration (see Section 2.18.1.5). If the difference is too high, prepare two new dilutions and repeat the replicate count estimate (see Box 2.10).

12. Report the average concentration of peroxidase-positive cells to two significant figures.

13. Calculate the total number of peroxidase-positive cells per ejaculate (see Comments after Section 2.18.1.8).

Fig. 2.14 Peroxidase-positive and -negative cells in human semen

A peroxidase-positive granulocyte (P) and a peroxidase-negative round cell (N). Scale bar 10 μm.



Micrograph courtesy of TG Cooper.

2.18.1.5 Calculation of the concentration of peroxidase-positive cells in semen

The concentration of peroxidase-positive cells in semen is their number (N) divided by the volume of the total number (n) of grids examined for the replicates (where the volume of a grid is 100 nl), multiplied by the dilution factor.

For a 1 + 9 (1:10) dilution, the concentration is $C = (N/n) \times (1/100) \times 10$ cells per nl = $(N/n) \times (1/10)$ cells per nl. Thus (N/n) is divided by 10 to obtain the concentration in peroxidase-positive cells per nl (10^6 cells per ml).

When all nine grids in each chamber of the haemocytometer are assessed, the total number of peroxidase-positive cells can be divided by the total volume of both chambers (1.8 μl), and multiplied by the dilution factor (10), to obtain the concentration in cells per μl (thousand cells per ml).

Note: This procedure can be used to calculate round cell concentration when the total number of round cells counted (peroxidase-positive and -negative) is used for N in the calculation.

2.18.1.6 Sensitivity of the method

If there are fewer than 200 peroxidase-positive cells in the chamber, the sampling error will exceed 5%. When fewer than 400 peroxidase-positive cells are found in all grids of both chambers, report the sampling error for the number of cells counted (see Table 2.2).

If fewer than 25 peroxidase-positive cells are counted in each chamber, the concentration will be <277 000 cells per ml; this is the lower limit of quantification for a sampling error of 20% when all nine grids of the improved Neubauer chamber are assessed and a 1+9 (1:10) dilution is used (Cooper et al., 2006). Report the number of peroxidase-positive cells observed with the comment "Too few cells for accurate determination of concentration (<277 000/ml)".

Comment: The absence of peroxidase-positive cells from the aliquot examined does not necessarily mean that they are absent from the rest of the sample.

2.18.1.7 Worked examples

Example 1. With a 1+9 (1:10) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 60 peroxidase-positive cells in nine grids, while replicate 2 contains 90 peroxidase-positive cells in nine grids. The sum of the values (60+90) is 150 in 18 grids and the difference (90–60) is 30. From Table 2.5 this is seen to exceed the difference expected by chance alone (24), so the results are discarded and new replicates are made.

Example 2. With a 1+9 (1:10) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 204 peroxidase-positive cells in five grids, while replicate 2 contains 198 peroxidase-positive cells in five grids. The sum of the values (204+198) is 402 in 10 grids and the difference (204–198) is 6. From Table 2.5 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (39), so the values are accepted.

The concentration of peroxidase-positive cells in the sample, for a 1+9 (1:10) dilution, is $C = (N/n) \times (1/10)$ cells per nl or (402/10)/10 = 4.02 cells/nl, or 4.0×10^6 cells per ml (to two significant figures).

Example 3. With a 1+9 (1:10) dilution, replicate 1 is found to contain 144 peroxidase-positive cells in nine grids, while replicate 2 contains 162 peroxidase-positive cells in nine grids. The sum of the values (144+162) is 306 in 18 grids and the difference (162–144) is 18. From Table 2.5 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (34), so the values are accepted.

When all nine grids are assessed in each chamber, the concentration of the sample, for a 1+9 (1:10) dilution, is $C = (N/1.8) \times 10$ cells per μl = $(306/1.8) \times 10$ = 1700 cells per μl or 1.7×10^6 cells per ml (to two significant figures). As fewer than 400 cells were counted, report the sampling error for 306 cells given in Table 2.2 (approximately 6%).

Example 4. With a 1+9 (1:10) dilution, no peroxidase-positive cells are found in either replicate. As fewer than 25 peroxidase-positive cells are found in all nine grids, the concentration is <277 000 per ml; report that "No peroxidase-positive cells were seen in the samples. Too few cells for accurate determination of concentration (<277 000/ml)".

2.18.1.8 Reference value

There is currently no reference range for peroxidase-positive cells in semen from fertile men. Pending additional evidence, this manual retains the consensus value of 1.0×10^6 peroxidase-positive cells per ml as a threshold value.

Comment 1: The total number of peroxidase-positive cells in the ejaculate may reflect the severity of an inflammatory condition (Wolff, 1995). This is obtained by multiplying the concentration of peroxidase-positive cells by the volume of the whole ejaculate.

Comment 2: Reports of cut-off values for peroxidase-positive cells in fertile men vary from 0.5×10^6 to 1.0×10^6 PMN leukocytes per ml or from 1×10^6 to 2×10^6 total leukocytes per ml (Wolff, 1995). Previous editions of this manual have taken 1×10^6 leukocytes per ml as the threshold for leukocytospermia. Some have found this value too low (Wolff, 1995), while others consider it too high (Sharma et al., 2001; Punab et al., 2003), depending on the endpoint examined (semen quality, results of in-vitro fertilization, presence of bacteria, sperm response to reactive oxygen species).

Comment 3: Excessive numbers of leukocytes in the ejaculate (leukocytospermia, pyospermia) may be associated with infection and poor sperm quality.

Comment 4: Leukocyte-dependent damage to spermatozoa depends on the total leukocyte number in the ejaculate and the number of leukocytes relative to the number of spermatozoa.

Comment 5: Leukocytes can impair sperm motility and DNA integrity through an oxidative attack (see Section 4.1). However, whether the level of leukocytic infiltration observed is damaging depends on factors that are impossible to infer from a semen sample, such as the reason for, timing and anatomical location of the infiltration, as well as the nature of the leukocytes involved and whether they are in an activated state (Tomlinson et al., 1993; Aitken & Baker, 1995; Rossi & Aitken, 1997).

2.19 Assessment of immature germ cells in semen

Germ cells include round spermatids and spermatocytes, but rarely spermatogonia. They can be detected in stained semen smears, but may be difficult to distinguish from inflammatory cells when the cells are degenerating.

Spermatids and spermatocytes can usually be differentiated from leukocytes in a semen smear stained by the Papanicolaou procedure (Johanisson et al., 2000) (see Section 2.14.2). Identification can be based on staining coloration, nuclear size and shape (see Plates 6, 10, 11, 12, 13 and 14), absence of intracellular peroxidase (see Section 2.18), and lack of leukocyte-specific antigens (see Section 3.2). Multinucleated spermatids can easily be confused morphologically with polymorphonuclear leukocytes but stain a pinkish colour, in contrast to the more bluish PMN leukocytes (Johanisson et al., 2000). Round spermatids may be identified with stains specific for the developing acrosome (Couture et al., 1976), lectins (see Section 4.4.1) or specific antibodies (Homyk et al., 1990; Ezeh et al., 1998).

Nuclear size may also help in identification: spermatogonia (very rarely seen in semen) have a nucleus of approximately 8 μm, spermatocytes have a nucleus of approximately 10 μm, and spermatids have a nucleus of approximately 5 μm. These sizes are only guidelines, since degeneration and division affect the size of the nucleus.

2.20 Testing for antibody coating of spermatozoa

If spermatozoa demonstrate agglutination (i.e. motile spermatozoa stick to each other head-to-head, tail-to-tail or in a mixed way) (see Section 2.4.4), the presence of sperm antibodies may be the cause.

Comment 1: Sperm antibodies can be present without sperm agglutination; equally, agglutination can be caused by factors others than sperm antibodies.

Comment 2: The mere presence of sperm antibodies is insufficient for a diagnosis of sperm autoimmunity. It is necessary to demonstrate that the antibodies interfere severely with sperm function; this is usually done by a sperm–mucus penetration test (see Section 3.3). Antibodies can also interfere with zona binding and the acrosome reaction.

Anti-sperm antibodies (ASAs) in semen belong almost exclusively to two immunoglobulin classes: IgA and IgG. IgM antibodies, because of their larger size, are rarely found in semen. IgA antibodies may have greater clinical importance than IgG antibodies (Kremer & Jager, 1980). Both classes can be detected on sperm cells or in biological fluids in related screening tests.

- *Tests for antibodies on spermatozoa ("direct tests").* Two direct tests are described here: the mixed antiglobulin reaction (MAR) test (for review see Bronson et al., 1984) and the immunobead (IB) test (Bronson et al., 1982; Clarke et al., 1982, 1985). The MAR test is performed on a fresh semen sample while the IB test uses washed spermatozoa. The results from the two tests do not always agree (MacMillan & Baker, 1987; Scarselli et al., 1987; Meinertz & Bronson, 1988; Hellstrom et al., 1989), but IB test results are well correlated with the results of the immobilization test that detects antibodies in serum. The experimental protocols for the IB and MAR tests vary, but for both the sperm/bead preparation is examined with a microscope. The beads adhere to the motile and immotile spermatozoa that have surface-bound antibodies; the percentage of motile spermatozoa with bound beads is recorded.
- *Tests for anti-sperm antibodies in sperm-free fluids, i.e. seminal plasma, blood serum and solubilized cervical mucus ("indirect" tests).* In these tests, the diluted, heat-inactivated fluid suspected of containing ASAs is incubated with antibody-free donor spermatozoa that have been washed free of seminal fluid. Any ASAs in the suspect fluid will bind specifically to the donor spermatozoa, which are then assessed in a direct test, as above. For reliable results, it is important to allow sufficient time for the sperm–antibody interaction, since it may take up to 10 minutes for the mixed agglutination to become visible. However, it should be borne in mind that sperm motility declines with time, and the tests depend on the presence of motile spermatozoa.

Note 1: The two ASA tests described here are commercially available. Both depend on the presence of motile spermatozoa. If there are insufficient motile spermatozoa, indirect tests on seminal plasma or blood serum can be used.

Note 2: Cytotoxic antibodies that kill all spermatozoa or inhibit sperm motility cannot be detected with these assays.

2.20.1 The mixed antiglobulin reaction test

The mixed antiglobulin reaction (MAR) test is an inexpensive, quick and sensitive screening test (Rajah et al., 1992), but it provides less information than the direct immunobead test (see Section 2.20.2).

In the MAR test, a "bridging" antibody (anti-IgG or anti-IgA) is used to bring the antibody-coated beads into contact with unwashed spermatozoa in semen bearing surface IgG or IgA. The direct IgG and IgA MAR tests are performed by mixing fresh, untreated semen separately with latex particles (beads) or treated red blood cells coated with human IgG or IgA. To the suspensions is added a monospecific anti-human-IgG or anti-human-IgA. The formation of mixed agglutinates between particles and motile spermatozoa indicates the presence of IgG or IgA antibodies on the spermatozoa. (Agglutination between beads serves as a positive control for antibody–antigen recognition.)

2.20.1.1 Procedure

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
2. Remove replicate aliquots of 3.5 µl of semen and place on separate microscope slides.
3. Include one slide with 3.5 µl of ASA-positive semen and one with 3.5 µl of ASA-negative semen as controls in each direct test. This semen should be from men with and without anti-sperm antibodies, respectively, as shown in previous direct MAR tests. Alternatively, positive spermatozoa can be produced by incubation in serum known to contain antibodies (see Section 2.20.3).
4. Add 3.5 µl of IgG-coated latex particles (beads) to each droplet of test and control semen, and mix by stirring with the pipette tip.
5. Add 3.5 µl of antiserum against human IgG to each semen-bead mixture, and mix by stirring with the pipette tip.
6. Cover the suspension with a coverslip (22 mm × 22 mm) to provide a depth of approximately 20 µm (see Box 2.4).
7. Store the slide horizontally for 3 minutes at room temperature in a humid chamber (e.g. on water-saturated filter paper in a covered Petri dish) to prevent drying out.
8. Examine the wet preparation with phase-contrast optics at ×200 or ×400 magnification after 3 minutes and again after 10 minutes.

9. Repeat the procedure using IgA- instead of IgG-coated beads and anti-IgA instead of anti-IgG antibodies.

2.20.1.2 Scoring

If spermatozoa have antibodies on their surface, the latex beads will adhere to them. The motile spermatozoa will initially be seen moving around with a few or even a group of particles attached. Eventually the agglutinates become so massive that the movement of the spermatozoa is severely restricted. Sperm that do not have coating antibodies will be seen swimming freely between the particles.

The goal of the assay is to determine the percentage of motile spermatozoa that have beads attached to them. A common problem occurs with NP spermatozoa that are close to beads, but are not attached. Whether the beads are bound can often be verified by lightly tapping the coverslip with a small pipette tip: the movement of beads in concert with active spermatozoa is indicative of positive binding.

1. Score only motile spermatozoa and determine the percentage of motile spermatozoa that have two or more latex particles attached. Ignore tail-tip binding.
2. Evaluate at least 200 motile spermatozoa in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.5).
3. Calculate the percentage of motile spermatozoa that has particles attached.
4. Record the class (IgG or IgA) and the site of binding of the latex particles to the spermatozoa (head, midpiece, principal piece). Ignore tail-tip binding.

Note 1: If 100% of motile spermatozoa are bead-bound at 3 minutes, take this as the test result; do not read again at 10 minutes.

Note 2: If less than 100% of motile spermatozoa are bead-bound at 3 minutes, read the slide again at 10 minutes.

Note 3: If spermatozoa are immotile at 10 minutes, take the value at 3 minutes as the result.

2.20.1.3 Reference value

There are currently no reference values for antibody-bound spermatozoa in the MAR test of semen from fertile men. Pending additional evidence, this manual retains the consensus value of 50% motile spermatozoa with adherent particles as a threshold value.

Comment: Sperm penetration into the cervical mucus and in-vivo fertilization tend to be significantly impaired when 50% or more of the motile spermatozoa have antibody bound to them (Abshagen et al., 1998). Particle binding restricted to the tail tip is not associated with impaired fertility and can be present in fertile men (Chiu & Chamley, 2004).

2.20.2 The direct immunobead test

This assay is more time-consuming than the MAR test but provides information about antibodies on spermatozoa that have been removed from possible masking components in seminal plasma.

In the direct immunobead (IB) test, beads coated with covalently-bound rabbit anti-human immunoglobulins against IgG or IgA are mixed directly with washed spermatozoa. The binding of beads with anti-human IgG or IgA to motile spermatozoa indicates the presence of IgG or IgA antibodies on the surface of the spermatozoa.

2.20.2.1 Reagents

1. Dulbecco's glucose–phosphate-buffered saline (PBS)–bovine serum albumin (BSA) or Tyrode's–BSA solution: see Appendix 4, sections A4.2 and A4.9.
2. Buffer I: add 0.3 g of Cohn Fraction V BSA to 100 ml of Dulbecco's PBS or Tyrode's medium.
3. Buffer II: add 5 g of Cohn Fraction V BSA to 100 ml of Dulbecco's PBS or Tyrode's medium.
4. Filter all solutions through 0.45-μm filters and warm to 25–35 °C before use.

2.20.2.2 Preparing the immunobeads

1. For each immunobead type (IgG, IgA), add 0.2 ml of stock bead suspension to 10 ml of buffer I in separate centrifuge tubes.
2. Centrifuge at 500*g* or 600*g* for 5–10 minutes.
3. Decant and discard the supernatant from the washed immunobeads.
4. Gently resuspend the beads in 0.2 ml of buffer II.

2.20.2.3 Preparing the spermatozoa

The amount of semen required for these assays is determined from the sperm concentration and motility, as shown in Table 2.7.

Table 2.7 How much semen to use for an immunobead test

Sperm concentration (10^6/ml)	Sperm motility (PR) (%)	Volume of semen required (ml)
>50	—	0.2
21–50	>40	0.4
21–50	<40>10	0.8
10–20	>40	1.0
10–20	<40>10	2.0
<10>5	>10	>2.0

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
2. Transfer the required amount of semen to a centrifuge tube and make up to 10 ml with buffer I.
3. Centrifuge at 500*g* for 5–10 minutes.
4. Decant and discard the supernatant from the washed spermatozoa.
5. Gently resuspend the sperm pellet in 10 ml of fresh buffer I.
6. Centrifuge again at 500*g* for 5–10 minutes.
7. Decant and discard the supernatant.
8. Gently resuspend the sperm pellet in 0.2 ml of buffer II.

Note 1: Aliquots of more than 1.0 ml require three washings.

Note 2: Samples with low sperm motility (e.g. 10% or less) may not provide clear-cut results. In this case, consider the indirect immunobead test (see Section 2.20.3).

2.20.2.4 Procedure

ASA-positive spermatozoa and ASA-negative spermatozoa should be included as controls in each test. Semen should be from men with and without anti-sperm antibodies, respectively, as detected in previous direct immunobead tests.

1. Place 5 µl of the washed sperm suspension being tested on a microscope slide.
2. Prepare separate slides with 5 µl of ASA-positive spermatozoa and 5 µl of ASA-negative spermatozoa.
3. Add 5 µl of anti-IgG immunobead suspension beside each sperm droplet.
4. Mix each anti-IgG immunobead and sperm droplet together by stirring with the pipette tip.
5. Place a 22 mm × 22 mm coverslip over the mixed droplet to provide a depth of approximately 20 µm (see Box 2.4).
6. Store the slides horizontally for 3–10 minutes at room temperature in a humid chamber (e.g. on water-saturated filter paper in a covered Petri dish). Do not wait longer than 10 minutes before assessing the slides, since immunobead binding decreases significantly during incubation (Gould et al., 1994).
7. Examine the slides with phase-contrast optics at ×200 or ×400 magnification.
8. Score only motile spermatozoa that have one or more beads bound, as described in Section 2.20.1.2. Ignore tail-tip binding.
9. Interpret the test as described in Section 2.20.1.3.
10. Repeat the procedure using the anti-IgA immunobead suspension.

Note: In order to ensure that all binding is assessed within 10 minutes, it is best to stagger the preparation of the slides.

2.20.2.5 Reference value

There are currently no reference values for antibody-bound spermatozoa in the IB test of semen from fertile men. Pending additional evidence, this manual retains the consensus value of 50% motile spermatozoa with adherent particles as a threshold value.

Comment: The diagnosis of immunological infertility is made when 50% or more of the motile spermatozoa (progressive and non-progressive) have adherent particles (Barratt et al., 1992). Particle binding restricted to the tail tip is not associated with impaired fertility and can be present in fertile men (Chiu & Chamley, 2004).

2.20.3 The indirect immunobead test

The indirect immunobead test is used to detect anti-sperm antibodies in heat-inactivated, sperm-free fluids (serum, testicular fluid, seminal plasma or bromelain-solubilized cervical mucus). Antibody-free donor's spermatozoa take up anti-sperm antibodies present in the tested fluid and are then assessed as in the direct immunobead test.

2.20.3.1 Reagents

See Section 2.20.2.1 (reagents for the direct IB test).

If cervical mucus is to be tested, prepare 10 IU /ml bromelain, a broad-specificity proteolytic enzyme (EC 3.4.22.32) (see Box 2.2).

2.20.3.2 Preparing the immunobeads

See Section 2.20.2.2.

2.20.3.3 Preparing the donor's spermatozoa

See Section 2.20.2.3.

2.20.3.4 Preparing the fluid to be tested

1. If testing cervical mucus, dilute 1 + 1 (1:2) with 10 IU/ml bromelain, stir with a pipette tip and incubate at 37 °C for 10 minutes. When liquefaction is complete, centrifuge at 2000*g* for 10 minutes. Use the supernatant immediately for testing, or freeze at –70 °C.
2. Inactivate any complement in the solublized cervical mucus, serum, seminal plasma or testicular fluid by heating at 56 °C for 30–45 minutes.
3. Dilute the heat-inactivated sample 1 + 4 (1:5) with buffer II (e.g. 10 µl of the body fluid to be tested with 40 µl of buffer II).

4. Include known-positive and -negative samples, e.g. serum from men with and without anti-sperm antibodies, respectively, as detected in the indirect immunobead test, as controls in each indirect test. Men who have had a vasectomy can be a source of serum if positive (>50% motile spermatozoa with bead binding, excluding tail-tip binding).

2.20.3.5 Incubating the donor's spermatozoa with the fluid to be tested

1. Mix 50 µl of washed donor sperm suspension with 50 µl of 1 + 4 (1:5) diluted fluid to be tested.
2. Incubate at 37 °C for 1 hour.
3. Centrifuge at 500*g* for 5–10 minutes.
4. Decant and discard the supernatant.
5. Gently resuspend the sperm pellet in 10 ml of fresh buffer I.
6. Centrifuge again at 500*g* for 5–10 minutes.
7. Decant and discard the supernatant.
8. Repeat the washing steps 5, 6 and 7 above.
9. Gently resuspend the sperm pellet in 0.2 ml of buffer II.

2.20.3.6 Immunobead test

1. Perform the IB test, as described in Section 2.20.2.4, with the fluid-incubated donor spermatozoa.
2. Score and interpret the test as described in Sections 2.20.1.2 and 2.20.1.3.

CHAPTER 3 Optional procedures

The tests described in this chapter are not necessary for routine semen analysis, but may be useful in certain circumstances for diagnostic or research purposes.

3.1 Indices of multiple sperm defects

Morphologically abnormal spermatozoa often have multiple defects (of the head, midpiece or principal piece, or combinations of these defects). A detailed assessment of the incidence of morphological abnormalities may be more useful than a simple evaluation of the percentage of morphologically normal spermatozoa, especially in studies of the extent of damage to human spermatogenesis (Jouannet et al., 1988; Auger et al., 2001). Recording the morphologically normal spermatozoa, as well as those with abnormalities of the head, midpiece and principal piece, in a multiple-entry system gives the mean number of abnormalities per spermatozoon assessed.

Three indices can be derived from records of the detailed abnormalities of the head, midpiece and principal piece in a multiple-entry system:

- the multiple anomalies index (MAI) (Jouannet et al., 1988);
- the teratozoospermia index (TZI) (Menkveld & Kruger, 1996; Menkveld et al., 2001);
- the sperm deformity index (SDI) (Aziz et al., 1996, 2004).

These indices have been correlated with fertility in vivo (MAI and TZI) (Jouannet et al., 1988; Menkveld et al., 2001; Slama et al., 2002) and in vitro (SDI) (Aziz et al., 1996), and may be useful in assessments of certain exposures or pathological conditions (Auger et al., 2001; Aziz et al., 2004).

3.1.1 Calculation of indices of multiple morphological defects

Each abnormal spermatozoon is scored for defects of the head, midpiece and principal piece, and for the presence of excess residual cytoplasm (volume more than one third of the sperm head size). Laboratory cell counters can be used, with the number of entry keys adapted to the type of index being assessed. If a counter is not available, a simple score sheet can be used.

- The MAI is the mean number of anomalies per abnormal spermatozoon. All the head, midpiece and principal piece anomalies are included in the calculation. The morphology criteria used for this analysis are from David et al. (1975), as modified by Auger & Eustache (2000), and differ from those presented in this manual (Sections 2.15.1 and 2.15.2).
- The TZI is similar to the MAI, but a maximum of four defects per abnormal spermatozoon is counted: one each for head, midpiece, and principal piece and one for excess residual cytoplasm, whatever the real number of anomalies per abnormal spermatozoon. The morphological criteria given in this manual can be used.

- The SDI is the number of defects divided by the total number of spermatozoa (not only the abnormal spermatozoa). It incorporates several categories of head anomaly but only one for each midpiece and principal piece defect. The morphological criteria given in this manual can be used.

Table 3.1 Calculation of indices of multiple sperm defects

	MAI	TZI*	SDI
Maximum value		4.00	3.00
Denominator	abnormal sperm	abnormal sperm	all sperm
(A) No. of spermatozoa counted	200	200	200
normal spermatozoa (N)	46	46	46
normal spermatozoa (%)	23	23	23
(B) No. of spermatozoa with defects (200–46)	154	154	154
(1) No. of head defects (MAI, SDI) or number of spermatozoa with ≥1 head defect (TZI)	284	154	212
(2) No. of midpiece defects (MAI) or number of spermatozoa with ≥1 midpiece defect (TZI, SDI)	54	52	52
(3) No. of principal piece defects (MAI) or number of spermatozoa with ≥1 principal piece defect (TZI, SDI)	54	46	46
(4) No. of spermatozoa with excess residual cytoplasm	14	14	14
(C) Total defects MAI: (1)+(2)+(3) = (C)	392		
(D) Total defects TZI, SDI: (1)+(2)+(3)+(4) = (D)		266	324
Index calculation	C/B	D/B	D/A
Index value	2.55	1.72	1.62

**This description of the TZI is in accordance with that in the original paper (Menkveld et al., 2001) and the manual of the European Society of Human Reproduction and Embryology (ESHRE) and the Nordic Association for Andrology (NAFA) (ESHRE/NAFA, 2002), which give values ranging from 1 to 4. This is different from the description in the previous edition of this manual (WHO, 1999), in which excess residual cytoplasm was considered a midpiece defect, and which gave TZI values ranging from 1 to 3.*

3.1.2. Worked example

Example. Of 200 spermatozoa scored with a six-key counter for replicate 1, 42 were scored as normal and 158 as abnormal. Of the 158 abnormal spermatozoa, 140 had head defects, 102 midpiece defects, 30 principal piece defects, and 44 excess residual cytoplasm. Results from replicate 2 were: 36 normal and 164 abnormal, of which 122 had head defects, 108 midpiece defects, 22 principal piece defects, and 36 excess residual cytoplasm. To determine the TZI, divide the total number of defects determined (140+102+30+44+122+108+22+36 = 604 abnormalities) by the number of abnormal spermatozoa (158+164 = 322), i.e. TZI = 604/322 = 1.88.

Table 3.2 presents values for MAI and TZI for men attending infertility clinics and men who had fathered a child within the last 3 years.

Table 3.2 Sperm defect indices for men from fertile and infertile couples

	Infertile couples		Fertile couples	
	MAI[1]	TZI[2]	MAI[3]	TZI[2]
Mean	1.94	1.81	1.58	1.51
SD	0.37	0.3	0.2	0.2
Minimum	1.12	1.26	1.04	1.17
Maximum	3.9	2.64	2.38	2.07
Centiles				
5	1.44		1.27	
10	1.51	1.74	1.34	1.33
25	1.67		1.44	
50	1.88	1.81	1.58	1.54
75	2.14		1.72	
90	2.44		1.86	
95	2.65		1.94	
N	4930	103	994	107

[1] *Unpublished data from J Auger, Paris, using David morphological classification (David et al., 1975, modified by Auger & Eustache, 2000).*

[2] *Menkveld et al., 2001.*

[3] *Jørgensen et al., 2001, using David morphological classification (David et al., 1975; modified by Auger & Eustache, 2000).*

3.2 Panleukocyte (CD45) immunocytochemical staining

Polymorphonuclear leukocytes that have released their granules, and other species of leukocyte, such as lymphocytes, macrophages or monocytes, which do not contain peroxidase, cannot be detected by the *o*-toluidine test for cellular peroxidase (see Section 2.18.1), but can be detected by immunocytochemical means. Immunocytochemical staining is more expensive and time-consuming than assessing granulocyte peroxidase activity, but is useful for distinguishing between leukocytes and germ cells.

3.2.1 Principle

All classes of human leukocytes express a specific antigen (CD45) that can be detected with an appropriate monoclonal antibody. By changing the nature of the primary antibody, this general procedure can be adapted to allow detection of different types of leukocyte, such as macrophages, monocytes, neutrophils, B-cells or T-cells, should they be the focus of interest.

3.2.2 Reagents

1. Dulbecco's phosphate-buffered saline (DPBS): see Appendix 4, section A4.2.
2. Tris-buffered saline (TBS), pH 8.2; see Appendix 4, section A4.8.
3. Tetramisole-HCl (levamisole) 1.0 mol/l: dissolve 2.4 g levamisole in 10 ml of purified water.
4. Substrate: to 9.7 ml of TBS (pH 8.2) add 2 mg of naphthol AS-MX phosphate, 0.2 ml of dimethylformamide and 0.1 ml of 1.0 mol/l levamisole. Just before use, add 10 mg of Fast Red TR salt and filter (0.45-μm pore size).
5. Fixative: acetone alone or acetone/methanol/formaldehyde: to 95 ml of acetone add 95 ml of absolute methanol and 10 ml of 37% (v/v) formaldehyde.
6. Primary antibody: a mouse monoclonal antibody against the common leukocyte antigen, encoded CD45.
7. Secondary antibody: anti-mouse rabbit immunoglobulins.The dilution used will depend on the antibody titre and source.
8. Alkaline phosphatase–anti-alkaline phosphatase complex (APAAP).
9. Harris's haematoxylin staining mixture (as counterstain): see Appendix 4, section A4.10.

3.2.3 Procedure

3.2.3.1 Preparing the semen

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
2. Mix an aliquot of approximately 0.5 ml with five volumes of DPBS.
3. Centrifuge at 500*g* for 5 minutes, remove the supernatant and suspend the sperm pellet in five times its volume of DPBS.
4. Centrifuge at 500*g* for 5 minutes.
5. Repeat this procedure once more and resuspend the pellet in DPBS to approximately 50×10^6 spermatozoa per ml.

3.2.3.2 Preparing the sperm smears

1. Make replicate smears on clean glass slides (see Section 2.13.2) from 5-μl aliquots of the suspension and allow them to air-dry.
2. Fix the air-dried cells in absolute acetone for 10 minutes or in acetone/ethanol/formaldehyde for 90 seconds.
3. Wash twice with TBS and allow the slides to drain.
4. The slides can then be stained immediately or wrapped in aluminium foil and stored at –70 °C for later analysis.

3.2.3.3 Incubating with antibodies

1. On each slide, mark an area of fixed cells (a circle of about 1 cm diameter) with a grease pencil (delimiting pen) and cover the area with 10 µl of primary monoclonal antibody.
2. Store the slide horizontally for 30 minutes at room temperature in a humid chamber (e.g. on water-saturated filter paper in a covered Petri dish) to prevent drying out.
3. Wash the slides twice with TBS and allow them to drain.
4. Cover the same area of the smear with 10 µl of secondary antibody and incubate for 30 minutes in a humid chamber at room temperature.
5. Wash twice with TBS and allow the slides to drain.
6. Add 10 µl of APAAP to the same area.
7. Incubate for 1 hour in a humid chamber at room temperature.
8. Wash twice in TBS and allow the slides to drain.
9. Incubate with 10 µl of naphthol phosphate substrate for 20 minutes in a humid chamber at room temperature.

Note: In order to intensify the reaction product, staining with the secondary antibody and APAAP can be repeated, with a 15-minute incubation period for each reagent.

3.2.3.4 Counterstaining and mounting

1. Once the slides have developed a reddish colour, wash with TBS.
2. Counterstain for a few seconds with haematoxylin; wash in tap water and mount in an aqueous mounting medium (see Sections 2.14.2.4 and 2.14.2.5).

3.2.3.5 Assessing CD45-positive cell numbers

1. Examine the entire stained area of the slide with brightfield optics at ×200 or ×400 magnification. CD45-positive cells (leukocytes) are stained red (see Fig. 3.1).
2. Score separately CD45-positive cells and spermatozoa until at least 200 spermatozoa have been observed in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.7 and Table 2.2).
3. Tally the number of CD45-positive cells and spermatozoa with the aid of a laboratory counter.
4. Assess the second smear in the same way (until 200 spermatozoa have been counted).

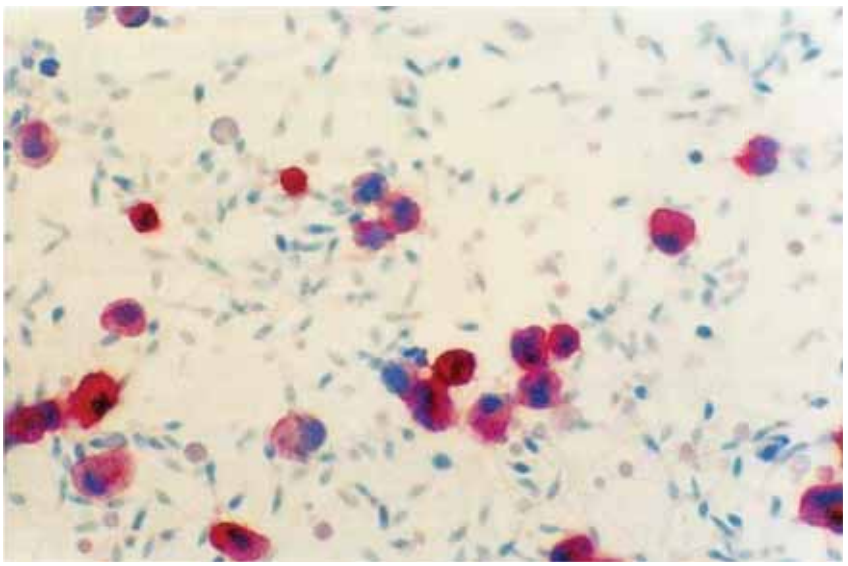
5. Calculate the sum and difference of the two counts of CD45-positive cells.
6. Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.5 or Fig. A7.1; Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between two counts that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone.)
7. If the difference is acceptable, calculate the concentration (see Section 3.2.3.6). If the difference is too high, reassess the slides in replicate (see Box 2.10).
8. Report the average concentration of CD45-positive cells to two significant figures.
9. Calculate the total number of CD45-positive cells per ejaculate (see Comment after Section 3.2.3.9).

3.2.3.6 Calculation of the concentration of CD45-positive cells in semen

The concentration of CD45-positive cells is calculated relative to that of spermatozoa on the slide. If N is the number of CD45-positive cells counted in the same number of fields as 400 spermatozoa, and S is the concentration of spermatozoa (10^6 per ml), then the concentration (C) of CD45-positive cells (10^6 per ml) can be calculated from the formula $C = S \times (N/400)$.

Fig. 3.1 Leukocytes in semen

CD45-bearing cells (leukocytes) are stained red.



Micrograph courtesy of RJ Aitken.

3.2.3.7 Sensitivity of the method

If there are fewer CD45-positive cells than spermatozoa in the sample (i.e. <400), the sampling error will exceed 5%. In this case, report the sampling error for the number of cells counted (see Table 2.2).

If fewer than 25 CD45-positive cells are counted, report the number of CD45-positive cells observed with the comment "Too few for accurate determination of concentration".

3.2.3.8 Worked examples

Example 1. In replicate 1 there are 20 CD45-positive cells per 200 spermatozoa, while in replicate 2 there are 40 CD45-positive cells per 200 spermatozoa. The sum of the values (20 + 40) is 60 and the difference (40–20) is 20. From Table 2.5 this is seen to exceed the difference expected by chance alone (15), so the results are discarded and new assessments are made.

Example 2. In replicate 1 there are 25 CD45-positive cells per 200 spermatozoa and in replicate 2 there are 35 CD45-positive cells per 200 spermatozoa. The sum of the values (25 + 35) is 60 and the difference (35–25) is 10. From Table 2.5 this is seen to be less than that found by chance alone (15), so the values are accepted.

For 60 CD45-positive cells per 400 spermatozoa and a sperm concentration of 70×10^6 cells per ml, the CD45-positive cell concentration is $C = S \times (N/400)$ cells per ml = $70 \times 10^6 \times (60/400) = 10.5 \times 10^6$ cells per ml, or 10×10^6 cells per ml (to two significant figures). As fewer than 400 cells were counted, report the sampling error for 60 cells given in Table 2.2 (approximately 13%).

3.2.3.9 Reference value

There are currently no reference values for CD45-positive cells in semen from fertile men. The consensus threshold value of 1.0×10^6 cells per ml for peroxidase-positive cells (see Section 2.18.1.8) implies a higher concentration of total leukocytes, since not all leukocytes are peroxidase-positive granulocytes.

Comment: The total leukocyte number (total number of leukocytes in the ejaculate) may reflect the severity of an inflammatory condition (Wolff, 1995). The total number of CD45-positive cells in the ejaculate is obtained by multiplying the CD45-positive cell concentration by the total volume of the ejaculate.

3.3 Interaction between spermatozoa and cervical mucus

Cervical mucus is receptive to spermatozoa for a limited time during the menstrual cycle (at mid-cycle), when the estrogen-influenced mucus favours sperm penetration. The length of time during which spermatozoa can penetrate cervical mucus varies considerably among women, and may vary in the same individual from one cycle to another.

Note: See Appendix 5 for details of collection, storage and evaluation of the characteristics of cervical mucus.

Comment: When a man cannot provide a semen sample, the postcoital test (see Section 3.3.1) can provide some information about his spermatozoa.

3.3.1 In-vivo (postcoital) test

3.3.1.1 Purpose

The aims of a postcoital test are to determine the number of active spermatozoa in the cervical mucus and to evaluate sperm survival (Sobrero & MacLeod, 1962) and sperm behaviour some hours after coitus (the reservoir role of mucus) (Moghissi, 1976). This information may be used to assess the significance of a positive sperm antibody test in the male or female partner.

3.3.1.2 Timing

Postcoital tests should be performed as close as possible to, but before, the time of ovulation, as determined by clinical criteria, e.g. usual cycle length, basal body temperature, cervical mucus changes, vaginal cytology, serum or urinary luteinizing hormone or estrogen assays, and ovarian ultrasound examination. It is important that the mucus is evaluated in the laboratory at a standard time—between 9 and 14 hours after coitus.

3.3.1.3 Instructions for couples

In preparation for the postcoital test, the couples should be told the most suitable day for the test, and be instructed:

1. to abstain from intercourse, and the man from masturbation, for 2 days before the test;
2. to have vaginal intercourse the night before the test date;
3. to not use any vaginal lubricants during intercourse and the woman should not douche after intercourse (taking a shower, but not a full bath, is permitted);
4. that the woman should report to the clinic for the test the following morning.

3.3.1.4 Procedure

1. Insert a non-lubricated speculum into the vagina.
2. With a tuberculin syringe (without needle), pipette or polyethylene tube, aspirate as much as possible of the seminal fluid pool in the posterior vaginal fornix.
3. With a different syringe or catheter, aspirate as much mucus as possible from the endocervical canal.
4. Place the mucus sample on a slide and flatten it by applying a coverslip (22 mm × 22 mm). The depth of this preparation can be standardized by supporting the coverslip with silicone grease or a wax–petroleum jelly mixture (see Box 3.1) containing glass beads of 100 μm diameter (Drobnis et al., 1988).
5. Examine the preparation with phase-contrast optics at ×400 magnification.

Note: For reliable results it is crucial that the mucus sample is of good quality and free of blood contaminants.

Box 3.1 Preparation of a wax–petroleum jelly mixture

Prepare a wax–petroleum jelly mixture ahead of time. It can be stored at room temperature until ready for use. Melt wax (48–66 °C melting point) in a beaker and mix in petroleum jelly (approximately one part wax to two parts jelly) with a glass rod. Once the mixture is homogeneous, let it cool down slightly. While it is still warm, draw it into a 3-ml or 5-ml syringe (without a needle). Once the mixture has solidified, load the syringe with an 18-gauge, blunt-end needle.

3.3.1.5 The vaginal pool semen sample

Spermatozoa are usually killed in the vagina within 2 hours. Examine a wet preparation of the vaginal pool sample (see Section 2.4.2) to ensure that semen has been deposited in the vagina.

3.3.1.6 The cervical mucus sample

The number of spermatozoa in the lower part of the cervical canal depends on the length of time since intercourse. Some 2–3 hours after coitus there is a large accumulation of spermatozoa in the lower part of the cervical canal.

The estimate of the number of spermatozoa in the cervical mucus is traditionally based on the number counted per high-power microscope field (see Box 3.2). The concentration of spermatozoa within the mucus should be expressed as the number of spermatozoa per μl.

Box 3.2 Volume observed per high-power field in a 100-μm-deep mucus preparation

The volume of mucus in each microscope field depends on the area of the field (πr^2, where π is approximately 3.142 and r is the radius of the microscope field) and the depth of the chamber (here 100 μm). The diameter of the microscope field can be measured with a stage micrometer or can be estimated by dividing the diameter of the aperture of the ocular lens by the magnification of the objective lens.

With a ×40 objective and a ×10 ocular of aperture 20 mm, the microscope field has a diameter of approximately 500 μm (20 mm/40). In this case r = 250 μm, r^2 = 62 500 μm^2, πr^2 = 196 375 μm^2 and the volume is 19 637 500 μm^3 or about 20 nl.

Thus, a count of 10 spermatozoa per ×400 HPF in a 100-μm-deep preparation is equivalent to approximately 10 spermatozoa per 20 nl of mucus or 500 spermatozoa per μl. However, as the total number of cells counted is low, the sampling error is high. Report the sampling error for 10 cells given in Table 2.2 (approximately 32%).

Sperm motility in cervical mucus is graded as follows:

- PR = progressive motility;
- NP = non-progressive motility;
- IM = immotile spermatozoa.

The most important indicator of normal cervical function is the presence of any spermatozoa with progressive motility.

3.3.1.7 Interpretation

- The test is negative if no spermatozoa are found in the mucus.
- The presence of any spermatozoa with progressive motility in endocervical mucus 9–14 hours after intercourse argues against significant cervical factors, and sperm autoimmunity in the male or female, as possible causes of infertility (Oei et al., 1995).
- When NP spermatozoa exhibiting a shaking phenomenon are seen, there may be sperm antibodies either in the mucus or on the spermatozoa.

Note: If the initial result is negative or abnormal, the postcoital test should be repeated.

Comment 1: If no spermatozoa are found in the vaginal pool sample, the couple should be asked to confirm that intravaginal ejaculation occurred.

Comment 2: A negative test may be due to incorrect timing. A test performed too early or too late in the menstrual cycle may be negative in a fertile woman. In some women, the test may be positive for only 1 or 2 days during the entire menstrual cycle. When ovulation cannot be predicted with a reasonable degree of accuracy, it may be necessary to repeat the postcoital test several times during a cycle or to perform repeated tests in vitro.

Comment 3: Repeated negative postcoital tests in cycles with optimal timing are required to establish cervical factors as a possible cause of infertility.

3.3.2 In-vitro tests

A detailed assessment of sperm–cervical mucus interaction may be undertaken using in-vitro penetration tests. These tests are usually performed after a negative postcoital test, and are most informative when carried out with cross-over testing using donor semen and donor cervical mucus as controls. They may also be used to assess the significance of a positive sperm antibody test in the male or female partner.

- When the purpose of the sperm–cervical mucus interaction test is to compare the quality of various cervical mucus specimens, a single sample of normozoospermic semen should be used.
- When the purpose is to evaluate the quality of several semen specimens, the same sample of good quality, mid-cycle cervical mucus should be used.

Note: See Appendix 5 for details of collection, storage and evaluation of the characteristics of cervical mucus.

Comment 1: Donor cervical mucus can be obtained at mid-cycle from women who are scheduled for artificial insemination or oocyte retrieval for assisted reproduction. The cervical mucus should be collected prior to insemination, in natural cycles or in cycles in which ovulation has been induced by treatment with gonadotrophins.

Comment 2: Women can be given ethinyl estradiol for 7–10 days to produce estrogenized mucus for testing (see Appendix 5, section A5.2.1).

Comment 3: Women who are receiving clomifene for induction of ovulation should not be used as cervical mucus donors, because of the possible effects of this antiestrogen on the cervix.

- Mid-cycle human cervical mucus should be used.
- In-vitro tests should be done within 1 hour of semen collection, to prevent dehydration or changes in temperature affecting semen quality.
- The pH of cervical mucus from the endocervical canal should be measured with pH paper, range 6.0–10.0, in situ or immediately following collection. If the pH is measured in situ, care should be taken to measure it correctly, since the pH of exocervical mucus is always lower than that of mucus in the endocervical canal. Care should also be taken to avoid contamination with secretions of the vagina, which have a low pH.
- Spermatozoa are susceptible to changes in pH of the cervical mucus. Acidic mucus immobilizes spermatozoa, whereas alkaline mucus may enhance motility. Excessive alkalinity of the cervical mucus (pH>8.5) may adversely affect the viability of spermatozoa. The optimum pH value for sperm migration and survival in the cervical mucus is between 7.0 and 8.5, the pH range of normal,

mid-cycle cervical mucus. While a pH value between 6.0 and 7.0 may be compatible with sperm penetration, motility is often impaired below pH 6.5 and sperm–cervical mucus tests are often not performed if the pH of mucus is less than 7.0.

Note: Surrogate gels, such as bovine cervical mucus or synthetic gels, cannot be regarded as equivalent to human cervical mucus for in-vitro testing of sperm–cervical mucus interaction. However, the use of these materials does provide information on sperm motility within viscous media (Neuwinger et al., 1991; Ivic et al., 2002).

3.3.3 In-vitro simplified slide test

3.3.3.1 Procedure

1. Place a drop of cervical mucus on a slide and flatten it by applying a coverslip (22 mm × 22 mm). The depth of this preparation can be standardized by supporting the coverslip with silicone grease or a wax–petroleum jelly mixture (see Box 3.1) containing glass beads of 100-μm diameter (Drobnis et al., 1988).
2. Deposit a drop of semen at each side of the coverslip and in contact with its edge, so that the semen moves under the coverslip by capillary forces. In this way, clear interfaces are obtained between the cervical mucus and the semen.
3. Store the slide horizontally for 30 minutes at 37 °C in a humid chamber (e.g. on water-saturated filter paper in a covered Petri dish) to prevent drying out.
4. Examine the interface with phase-contrast optics at ×400 magnification.

3.3.3.2 Observations

Observe whether the following features are present:

1. Within a few minutes, finger-like projections (phalanges) of seminal fluid develop and penetrate into the mucus. This is a physical property of the fluids, and can occur even in azoospermic samples (Perloff & Steinberger, 1963; Moghissi et al., 1964).
2. Most spermatozoa penetrate the phalangeal canal before entering the mucus. In many instances, a single spermatozoon appears to lead a column of spermatozoa into the mucus.
3. Once in the cervical mucus, the spermatozoa fan out and appear to move at random. Some return to the seminal plasma, but most migrate deep into the cervical mucus until they meet resistance from cellular debris or leukocytes.
4. Spermatozoa progress into the mucus for 500 μm (i.e. about 10 sperm lengths) from the semen–mucus interface or more.
5. Spermatozoa are motile (note the approximate percentage of motile spermatozoa and whether they are progressively motile).

3.3.3.3 Interpretation

Interpretation of the simplified slide test is subjective, because it is impossible to standardize the size and shape of the semen–mucus interface in a plain slide preparation. Consequently, it gives only a qualitative assessment of sperm–mucus interaction. Nevertheless, a number of useful observations can be made.

1. *Normal result*: spermatozoa penetrate into the mucus phase and more than 90% are motile with definite progression. This suggests that there is no problem with sperm–cervical mucus interaction.
2. *Poor result*: spermatozoa penetrate into the mucus phase, but most do not progress further than 500 μm (i.e. about 10 sperm lengths) from the semen–mucus interface. This suggests that there is a problem with sperm–cervical mucus interaction.
3. *Abnormal result*: either: (1) spermatozoa penetrate into the mucus phase, but rapidly become either immotile or show a "shaking" movement, or (2) spermatozoa do not penetrate the semen–mucus interface. Phalanges may or may not be formed, but the spermatozoa congregate along the semen side of the interface. This suggests the presence of anti-sperm antibodies in the mucus or on the surface of the spermatozoa.

Comment: When an abnormal result is obtained using samples of the couple's semen and mucus, cross-over testing using donor semen and donor cervical mucus can identify whether the semen or the cervical mucus is responsible for the abnormal result.

3.3.4 Capillary tube test

The capillary tube test was originally designed by Kremer (1965), and various modifications have since been proposed. The test measures the ability of spermatozoa to penetrate a column of cervical mucus in a capillary tube. The procedure recommended here is based on the original test.

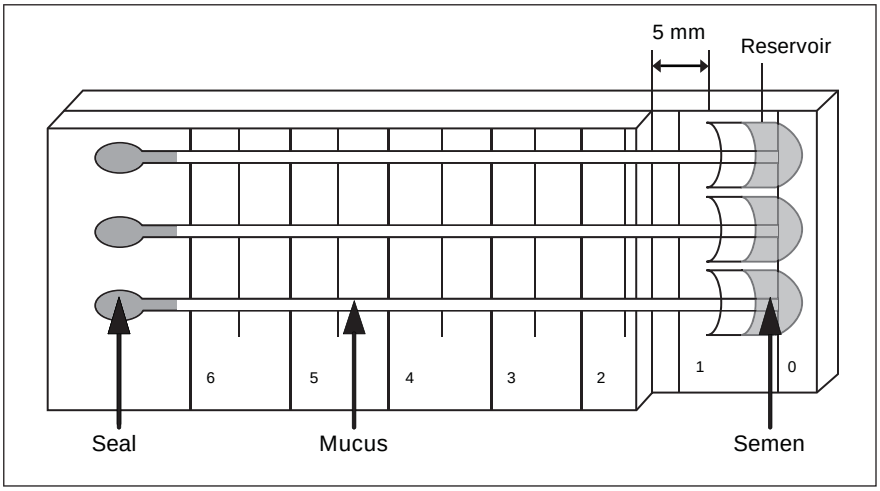
3.3.4.1 Equipment

Various types of capillary tube have been used but flat capillary tubes, 5 cm long and with a 0.3-mm internal diameter viewing path, are recommended.

A Kremer sperm penetration meter (Fig. 3.2) can be constructed in the laboratory as follows.

1. Glue onto a glass slide three reservoirs cut from small, plastic test tubes (radius about 3.5 mm).
2. Glue a second glass slide onto the first. The second slide should be 1.5 cm shorter and positioned at a distance of 5 mm from the reservoirs. This construction prevents creeping of seminal fluid between the capillary tube and the glass slide.
3. Attach a centimetre scale to the slides.

Fig. 3.2 The Kremer sperm penetration meter



3.3.4.2 Procedure

1. Introduce approximately 100 µl of liquefied semen, obtained not later than 1 hour after ejaculation, into each of the semen reservoirs.
2. Aspirate cervical mucus into each capillary tube, making sure that no air bubbles are introduced.
3. Seal one end of each tube with a capillary tube sealant, modelling clay or similar material. Enough sealant should be applied so that the mucus column protrudes slightly out of the open end of the tube.
4. Place the open end of the capillary tube on the slide so that it projects about 0.5 cm into the reservoir containing the semen sample.
5. Store the device horizontally for 2 hours at 37 °C in a humid chamber (e.g. on water-saturated filter paper in a covered Petri dish) to prevent drying out of the semen and mucus.
6. Examine the capillary tube with phase-contrast optics at ×100 magnification, as outlined in Section 3.3.4.3.
7. Return the device to the 37 °C incubator and inspect the capillary tubes again after 24 hours for the presence of progressing spermatozoa.

3.3.4.3 Observations

After 2 hours, assess migration distance, penetration density, migration reduction and presence of spermatozoa with forward motility.

1. *Migration distance*: record the distance from the end of the capillary tube in the semen reservoir to the furthest spermatozoon in the tube.
2. *Penetration density*: measure this at 1 and 4.5 cm from the end of the capillary tube in the semen reservoir. At each point, record the mean number of spermatozoa per low-power field (×100 LPF).

The mean number is obtained from estimates on five adjacent low-power fields, and is expressed as a penetration density rank, as given in Table 3.3. For the classification of the test, the highest sperm penetration density rank is recorded, whether at 1 or 4.5 cm.

Table 3.3 Rank order of sperm penetration density

Mean number of sperm per LPF	Rank order
0	1
0–5	2
6–10	3
11–20	4
21–50	5
51–100	6
>100	7

3. *Migration reduction*: this is calculated as the decrease in penetration density at 4.5 cm compared with that at 1 cm. It is expressed as the difference in rank order.

   Example 1. Penetration density at 1 cm is 51–100 per LPF and at 4.5 cm is 6–10. The migration reduction value is 3 (rank order 6 to rank order 3) (Table 3.3).

   Example 2. Penetration density at 1 cm is 21–50 per LPF and at 4.5 cm is 51–100. The migration reduction value is zero because the penetration density has, in fact, increased (from rank order 5 to rank order 6) (Table 3.3).

4. *Spermatozoa with forward motility*: determine the presence in the cervical mucus of spermatozoa with forward motility at 2 and 24 hours

3.3.4.4 Interpretation

The results are classified as negative, poor or good according to Table 3.4.

3.4 Biochemical assays for accessory sex organ function

Table 3.4 Classification of the capillary tube test results

Migration distance (cm)		Highest penetration density (number of spermatozoa per LPF at 1 or 4.5 cm)		Migration reduction from 1 to 4.5 cm (decrease in rank order number)		Duration of progressive movements in mucus (hours)	Classification
1		0		—		—	Negative
<3	or	<10	or	>3	or	2	Poor
4.5	and	>50	and	<3	and	>24	Good
All other combinations of test results							Fair

Poor-quality semen may result from testicular production of abnormal spermatozoa, or from post-testicular damage to spermatozoa in the epididymis or the ejaculate from abnormal accessory gland secretions. Secretions from accessory glands can be measured to assess gland function, e.g. citric acid, zinc, γ-glutamyl transpeptidase and acid phosphatase for the prostate; fructose and prostaglandins for the seminal vesicles; free L-carnitine, glycerophosphocholine (GPC) and neutral α-glucosidase for the epididymis.

An infection can sometimes cause a decrease in the secretion of these markers, but the total amount of markers present may still be within the normal range. An infection can also cause irreversible damage to the secretory epithelium, so that even after treatment secretion may remain low (Cooper et al., 1990a; von der Kammer et al., 1991).

- Secretory capacity of the prostate. The amount of zinc, citric acid (Möllering & Gruber, 1966) or acid phosphatase (Heite & Wetterauer, 1979) in semen gives a reliable measure of prostate gland secretion, and there are good correlations between these markers. A spectrophotometric assay for zinc is described in Section 3.4.1.
- Secretory capacity of the seminal vesicles. Fructose in semen reflects the secretory function of the seminal vesicles. A spectrophotometric method for its estimation is described in Section 3.4.2.
- Secretory capacity of the epididymis. L-Carnitine, GPC and neutral α-glucosidase are epididymal markers used clinically. Neutral α-glucosidase has been shown to be more specific and sensitive for epididymal disorders than L-carnitine and GPC (Cooper et al., 1990a). There are two isoforms of α-glucosidase in the seminal plasma: the major, neutral form originates solely from the epididymis, and the minor, acidic form, mainly from the prostate. A simple spectrophotometric assay for neutral α-glucosidase is described in Section 3.4.3.

Comment: The total content of any accessory gland secretion in the ejaculate reflects the overall secretory function of that gland (Eliasson, 1975). This is obtained by multiplying the accessory gland marker concentration by the volume of the whole ejaculate.

3.4.1 Measurement of zinc in seminal plasma

3.4.1.1 Background

A kit for measurement of serum zinc by spectrophotometric assay is commercially available and can be adapted for semen. The method described below is based on that of Johnsen & Eliasson (1987), modified for the use of a 96-well plate reader with sensitivity 4 μmol/l (Cooper et al., 1991). The volumes of semen and reagents can be proportionally adjusted for spectrophotometers using 3-ml or 1-ml cuvettes. The appropriate corrections must be made in calculating the results.

3.4.1.2 Principle

The compound 2-(5-bromo-2-pyridylazo)-5-(*N*-propyl-*N*-sulfopropylamino)-phenol (5-Br-PAPS) binds with zinc, producing a change in colour.

5-Br-PAPS + $Zn^{2+} \rightarrow$ 5-Br-PAPS–Zn complex, which absorbs light of wavelength 560 nm.

3.4.1.3 Reagents

1. A kit for the estimation of zinc in serum is commercially available. Use only colour reagent A (2 × 60 ml bottles) and colour reagent B (1 × 30 ml bottle).
2. Zinc standard (100 µmol/l): dissolve 0.144 g of zinc sulfate $ZnSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$ in 50 ml of purified water and dilute this 100 times by adding 1 ml to 99 ml of purified water. Store frozen at –20 °C.
3. Standard curve: dilute the 100 µmol/l zinc standard, prepared in step 2, with purified water to yield five additional standards of 80, 60, 40, 20 and 10 µmol/l.
4. Colour reagent: mix 4 parts of colour reagent A with 1 part of colour reagent B (about 25 ml is needed for one 96-well plate). This chromogen solution is stable for 2 days at room temperature or 1 week at 4 °C.
5. Frozen internal quality-control pools of seminal plasma (see Section 3.4.1.4, step 1).

3.4.1.4 Procedure

1. Centrifuge the semen sample remaining after semen analysis for 10 minutes at 1000*g*. Decant and store the sperm-free seminal plasma at –20 °C until analysis. Sperm-free seminal plasma can be pooled with other samples to provide a standard for internal quality control in future assays.
2. Thaw the sperm-free seminal plasma and mix well on a vortex mixer. Also thaw and mix an aliquot of pooled seminal plasma for internal quality control.
3. Prepare dilutions of each sample of seminal plasma in replicate: to 300 µl of purified water in each of two 1.5-ml tubes, add 5 µl of seminal plasma (with a positive displacement pipette) and mix by vortexing for 5 seconds.
4. Add replicate 40-µl aliquots of the diluted seminal plasma samples from step 3 to a 96-well plate. Include replicate blanks (40 µl of purified water) and 40-µl replicates of each of the standards.
5. Add 200 µl of colour reagent to each well and mix for 5 minutes on a 96-well plate shaker.
6. Read the plate at 560 nm wavelength, using the water blank to set the zero.

3.4.1.5 Calculation

1. Read the concentration of zinc in the sample from the standard curve (mmol/l) by comparing the absorbance values.

2. Reject results that are above the top standard, and re-assay these samples at greater dilution (use purified water to dilute).
3. Multiply the results by the dilution factor of 61 (5 μl of seminal plasma diluted with 300 μl of water) to obtain the concentration of zinc (mmol/l) in undiluted seminal plasma.
4. Replicates should agree within 10%, i.e. (difference between estimates/mean of estimates) × 100 ≤10%. If they do not, repeat the assay on two new aliquots of seminal plasma.
5. Multiply the zinc concentration by the whole volume of semen (ml) to obtain the total zinc content (μmol) of the ejaculate.

3.4.1.6 Lower reference limit

The lower reference limit for zinc is 2.4 μmol per ejaculate (Cooper et al., 1991 and unpublished data from TG Cooper).

3.4.2 Measurement of fructose in seminal plasma

3.4.2.1 Background

The method described below is based on that of Karvonen & Malm (1955), modified for use with a 96-well plate reader with sensitivity 74 μmol/l (Cooper et al., 1990a). The volumes of semen and reagents can be proportionally adjusted for spectrophotometers using 3-ml or 1-ml cuvettes. The appropriate corrections must be made in calculating the results.

3.4.2.2 Principle

Under the influence of heat and low pH, fructose forms a coloured complex with indole.

$$\text{Fructose + indole} \xrightarrow{\text{heat + acid}} \text{complex, which absorbs light of wavelength 470 nm.}$$

3.4.2.3 Reagents

A kit for the estimation of fructose in seminal plasma is commercially available. Alternatively, prepare the following reagents.

1. Deproteinizing agent 1 (63 μmol/l $ZnSO_4$): dissolve 1.8 g of $ZnSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$ in 100 ml of purified water.
2. Deproteinizing agent 2 (1 mol/l NaOH): dissolve 0.4 g of NaOH in 100 ml of purified water.
3. Colour reagent (indole 2 μmol/l in benzoate preservative 16 μmol/l): dissolve 200 mg of benzoic acid in 90 ml of purified water by shaking it in a water bath at 60 °C. Dissolve 25 mg of indole in this and make up to 100 ml with purified water. Filter (0.45-μm pore size) and store at 4 °C.
4. Fructose standard (2.24 mmol/l): dissolve 40 mg of D-fructose in 100 ml of purified water. Store at 4 °C or freeze in aliquots.

5. Standard curve: dilute the 2.24 mmol/l standard with purified water to yield four additional standards of 1.12, 0.56, 0.28 and 0.14 mmol/l.
6. Frozen internal quality-control pools of seminal plasma (see Section 3.4.2.4, step 1).

3.4.2.4 Procedure

1. Centrifuge the semen sample remaining after semen analysis for 10 minutes at 1000*g*. Decant and store the sperm-free seminal plasma at –20 °C until analysis. Sperm-free seminal plasma can be pooled with other samples to provide a standard for internal quality control in future assays.
2. Thaw the sperm-free seminal plasma and mix well on a vortex mixer. Also thaw and mix an aliquot of pooled seminal plasma for internal quality control.
3. Prepare dilutions of each seminal plasma sample in replicate: to 50 µl of purified water in each of two 1.5-ml tubes, add 5 µl of seminal plasma (with a positive displacement pipette) and mix.
4. Deproteinize: to the 55 µl of diluted sample add 12.5 µl of 63 µmol/l $ZnSO_4$ and 12.5 µl of 0.1 mol/l NaOH and mix. Allow to stand for 15 minutes at room temperature, then centrifuge at 8000*g* for 5 minutes.
5. Transfer 50 µl of supernatant from each sample to a test tube. Include replicate blanks (50 µl of water) and 50-µl replicates of each standard.
6. Add 50 µl of indole reagent to each tube and mix.
7. Add 0.5 ml of concentrated (32% v/v) hydrochloric acid (HCl) to each sample, cover with self-sealing, mouldable laboratory film and mix carefully in a fume cupboard.
8. Heat for 20 minutes at 50 °C in a water bath. Mix and cool in ice-water for 15 minutes.
9. Carefully transfer 250 µl with a positive-displacement pipette to a 96-well plate in a fume cupboard.
10. Seal the 96-well plate with transparent adhesive laboratory film to protect the spectrophotometer from the acid.
11. Read the plate at 470 nm wavelength, using the water blank to set the zero.

3.4.2.5 Calculation

1. Read the concentration of fructose in the sample from the standard curve (mmol/l) by comparing absorbance values.
2. Reject results that are above the top standard, and re-assay these samples at greater dilution (use purified water to dilute).
3. Multiply the results for each sample by the dilution factor of 16 (5 µl of seminal plasma diluted with 75 µl of water and deproteinizing agents) to obtain the concentration of fructose (mmol/l) in undiluted seminal plasma.

4. Replicates should agree within 10%, i.e. (difference between estimates/mean of estimates) × 100 ≤10%. If they do not, repeat the assay on two new aliquots of semen.
5. Multiply the fructose concentration by the whole volume of semen (ml) to obtain the total fructose content (μmol) of the ejaculate.

3.4.2.6 Lower reference limit

The lower reference limit for fructose is 13 μmol per ejaculate (Cooper et al., 1991 and unpublished data from TG Cooper).

Comment: Low fructose in semen is characteristic of ejaculatory duct obstruction, bilateral congenital absence of the vas deferens (de la Taille et al., 1998; Daudin et al., 2000; von Eckardstein et al., 2000), partial retrograde ejaculation and androgen deficiency.

3.4.3 Measurement of neutral α-glucosidase in seminal plasma

3.4.3.1 Background

Seminal plasma contains both a neutral α-glucosidase isoenzyme, which originates in the epididymis, and an acid isoenzyme contributed by the prostate. The latter can be selectively inhibited by sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS) (Paquin et al., 1984) to permit measurement of the neutral α-glucosidase, which reflects epididymal function. Accounting for non-glucosidase-related substrate breakdown, by using the inhibitor castanospermine, makes the assay more sensitive. The method described below is for use with a 96-well plate reader with sensitivity 1.9 mU/ml (Cooper et al., 1990b). The volumes of semen and reagents can be proportionally adjusted for spectrophotometers with 3-ml or 1-ml cuvettes. The appropriate corrections must be made in calculating the results.

3.4.3.2 Principle

Glucosidase converts the synthetic glucopyranoside substrate to *p*-nitrophenol, which turns yellow on addition of sodium carbonate.

p-nitrophenol-α-glucopyranoside $\xrightarrow{\alpha\text{-glucosidase}}$ *p*-nitrophenol $\xrightarrow{Na_2CO_3}$ complex, which absorbs light of wavelength 405 nm

3.4.3.3 Reagents

A kit for the estimation of epididymal neutral α-glucosidase in semen is commercially available. Only kits including SDS and castanospermine are recommended for measurement of this enzyme in semen. Alternatively, prepare the following reagents.

1. Buffer 1 (0.2 mol/l phosphate, pH 6.8): dissolve 4.56 g $K_2HPO_4 \cdot 3H_2O$ in 100 ml of purified water. Dissolve 2.72 g of KH_2PO_4 in a separate 100 ml aliquot of purified water. Mix approximately equal volumes of each until the pH is 6.8.

2. Buffer 2: dissolve 1 g of SDS in 100 ml of buffer 1. SDS will precipitate on storage at 4 °C, but redissolves on gentle warming.
3. Colour reagent 1 (for stopping the reaction, 0.1 mol/l sodium carbonate): dissolve 6.20 g of $Na_2CO_3 \cdot H_2O$ in 500 ml of water.
4. Colour reagent 2: dissolve 0.1 g of SDS in 100 ml of colour reagent 1.
5. Substrate *p*-nitrophenol glucopyranoside (PNPG) (5 mg/ml): dissolve 0.1 g of PNPG in 20 ml of buffer 2 and warm the solution on a hotplate at about 50 °C with stirring for about 10 minutes. A few crystals may remain undissolved. The solution should be kept at 37 °C during use. Make a fresh solution for each assay.
6. Glucosidase inhibitor for semen blanks (castanospermine, 10 mmol/l): dissolve 18.9 mg of castanospermine in 10 ml of purified water. Dilute this 10-fold in purified water to give a 1 mmol/l working solution. Freeze approximately 1-ml aliquots at –20 °C.
7. Standard curve of product *p*-nitrophenol (PNP) (5 mmol/l): dissolve 69.5 mg of PNP in 100 ml of purified water, warming the solution if necessary. Store at 4 °C in the dark in an aluminium foil-covered or brown glass bottle. Make up a fresh standard solution every 3 months.
8. Prepare a standard curve (within the last hour of incubation): place 400 µl of 5 mmol/l stock PNP in a 10-ml volumetric flask and make up to 10 ml with colour reagent 2 (200 µmol/l). Dilute the 200 µmol/l standard with colour reagent 2 to yield four additional standards of 160, 120, 80 and 40 µmol/l PNP.
9. Frozen internal quality-control pools of seminal plasma (see Section 3.4.3.4, step 1).

3.4.3.4 Procedure

1. Centrifuge the semen sample remaining after analysis for 10 minutes at 1000*g*. Decant and store the sperm-free seminal plasma at –20 °C until analysis. Sperm-free seminal plasma can be pooled with other samples to provide a quality control pool as an internal standard for future assays.
2. Thaw the sperm-free seminal plasma and mix well on a vortex mixer. Also thaw and mix an aliquot of pooled seminal plasma for internal quality control.
3. Place replicate samples of 15 µl of seminal plasma in each of two 1.5-ml tubes using a positive displacement pipette. Include replicate blanks (15 µl of water) and quadruplicate 15-µl internal quality-control samples from semen pools.
4. To two of the internal quality-control samples add 8 µl of 1 mmol/l castanospermine to provide the seminal plasma blank value.
5. Add 100 µl of PNPG substrate solution, at about 37 °C, to each tube.
6. Vortex each tube and incubate at 37 °C for 2 hours (exact temperature and time control are crucial).

7. Stop incubation after 2 hours by adding 1 ml of colour reagent 1 and mix.
8. Transfer 250 µl of samples and standards to the 96-well plate.
9. Read the plate in a 96-well plate reader at 405 nm wavelength within 60 minutes, using the water blank to set the zero.

3.4.3.5 Calculation

1. Read the concentration of PNP produced by the sample from the standard curve (µmol/l) by comparing absorbance values.
2. Reject samples that lie above the top standard and re-assay these samples after dilution (use buffer 1 to dilute).
3. Multiply by the correction factor (0.6194; see Note) to obtain the activity of neutral glucosidase in undiluted seminal plasma (IU/l).
4. Subtract the activity (IU/l) of the castanospermine seminal plasma blank from each sample to obtain the corrected (glucosidase-related) activity.
5. Replicates should agree within 10%, i.e. (difference between estimates/mean of estimates) × 100 ≤10%. If they do not, repeat the assay on two new aliquots of seminal plasma.
6. Multiply the corrected glucosidase activity by the whole volume of semen (ml) to obtain the glucosidase activity (mU) of the ejaculate.

Note: One international unit (IU) of glucosidase activity is defined as the production of 1 µmol of product (PNP) per minute at 37 °C. In this assay the activity is derived from 15 µl of seminal plasma in a total volume of 1.115 µl over 120 minutes, so the correction factor is (1115/15)/120 = 0.6194.

3.4.3.6 Reference limit

The lower reference limit for neutral α-glucosidase is 20 mU per ejaculate (Cooper et al., 1991 and unpublished data from TG Cooper).

3.5 Computer-aided sperm analysis

3.5.1 Introduction

Until recently, it was not feasible to measure sperm concentration by computer-aided sperm analysis (CASA) because of difficulties in distinguishing spermatozoa from particulate debris (ESHRE, 1998). However, advances in technology, particularly in the use of fluorescent DNA stains and tail-detection algorithms, may now allow sperm concentration—and hence the concentration of progressively motile spermatozoa—to be determined (Zinaman et al., 1996; Garrett et al., 2003). Provided that adequate care is taken in preparing specimens and using the instrument, CASA can now be used for some routine diagnostic applications. Quality-control procedures are necessary to establish and maintain a high standard of instrument operation (see Chapter 7).

Several manufacturers produce CASA systems. These machines are capable of measuring sperm motility and kinematics, and some can also be used to estimate sperm concentration. A few have semi-automated morphology modules. CASA, including assessment of motility, concentration and morphology, has two advantages over manual methods: it has high precision and it provides quantitative data on the kinematic parameters of spermatozoa (forward progression and hyperactivated motility, characteristic of capacitated cells).

Some studies have suggested that CASA estimates of concentration and movement characteristics of progressively motile spermatozoa are significantly related to fertilization rates in vitro and in vivo, as well as to time to conception (Liu et al., 1991a; Barratt et al., 1993; Irvine et al., 1994; Krause, 1995; Donnelly et al., 1998; Larsen et al., 2000; Garrett et al., 2003; Shibahara et al., 2004). The use of CASA to measure sperm motility and concentration is described in Sections 3.5.2 and 3.5.3, respectively, while Section 3.5.4 contains a commentary on the status of computer-aided morphological analysis.

3.5.2 Use of CASA to assess sperm motility

CASA machines are best used for kinematic analysis of spermatozoa, as they can detect motile cells. Estimates of percentage motility may be unreliable, as they depend on determining the number of immotile spermatozoa, and debris may be confused with immotile spermatozoa.

Many factors affect the performance of CASA instruments, e.g. sample preparation, frame rate, sperm concentration and counting-chamber depth (Davis & Katz, 1992; Mortimer, 1994a, b; Kraemer et al., 1998). Nevertheless, reliable and reproducible results can be obtained if appropriate procedures are followed (Davis & Katz, 1992). Guidelines on the use of CASA (Mortimer et al., 1995; ESHRE, 1998) should be consulted.

In using CASA to obtain movement parameters, the tracks of at least 200 motile spermatozoa per specimen should be analysed. This implies that many more spermatozoa will need to be detected. If the spermatozoa are to be categorized by type of motion, or if other analyses of variability within a specimen are planned, the tracks of at least 200, and if possible 400, motile spermatozoa will be needed. The number of spermatozoa analysed in each specimen should be standardized.

The CASA instrument should be linked to computer software that permits data organization and statistical analysis. The distributions of many of the movement parameters are not Gaussian; the median, rather than the mean, is therefore more appropriate as a summary of the central tendency of each variable. The measurements on single spermatozoa may need to be mathematically transformed before certain statistical analyses are done.

3.5.2.1 Procedure

Each CASA instrument must be correctly set up for its anticipated use in order to ensure optimum performance. The manufacturers indicate suitable settings, but users should check that the instrument is performing to the required degree of repeatability and reliability. Use of appropriate quality control materials, e.g. video

recordings, is essential (see Appendix 7, section A7.5). Several authors have discussed CASA settings in a general context (Davis & Katz, 1992; Mortimer, 1994b; ESHRE, 1998).

3.5.2.2 Preparing the samples

Semen samples for CASA should be collected and prepared as outlined in Chapter 2. The CASA system must maintain the specimen at 37 °C, because sperm motion is sensitive to temperature. Motility characteristics and sperm concentration can be assessed in undiluted semen. Sperm motility can be assessed on samples with sperm concentrations between 2×10^6 per ml and 50×10^6 per ml (Garrett et al., 2003).

In samples with high sperm concentrations (i.e. greater than 50×10^6 per ml), collisions may occur with high frequency and are likely to induce errors. Such samples should be diluted, preferably with seminal plasma from the same man.

1. Centrifuge a portion of the sample at 16 000*g* for 6 minutes to produce sperm-free seminal plasma.
2. Dilute the original semen sample with the sperm-free seminal plasma to bring the concentration below 50×10^6 per ml.

Disposable counting chambers, 20 μm deep, give reliable results. This is a dual-chamber system; both chambers should be filled and assessed. Several representative fields should be examined: reading six fields per chamber (12 fields in total) usually gives reliable results. At least 200 spermatozoa should be assessed in each chamber. The same principles of quality control apply as for standard estimations of motility (see Section 2.5.2). Samples can be analysed either directly or from a video recording. Analysing video-recordings (from videotape, CD-ROM or DVD) allows better standardization and implementation of quality assurance procedures (see Appendix 7, section A7.5). The manufacturer will usually recommend the type of recording device to be used and the illumination setting needed for maximum contrast between sperm heads and background.

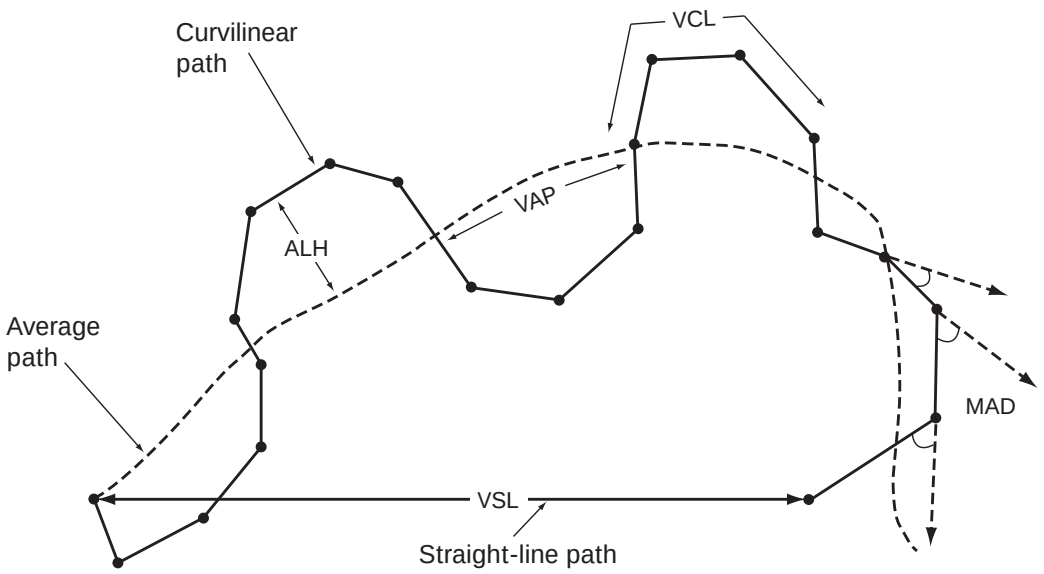
There is some disagreement regarding the time for which spermatozoa should be followed to achieve accurate results, but a minimum of 1 second should be sufficient for the basic CASA measurements (Mortimer, 1994b).

3.5.2.3 CASA terminology

Some standard terminology for variables measured by CASA systems is illustrated in Fig. 3.3.

1. VCL, curvilinear velocity (μm/s). Time-averaged velocity of a sperm head along its actual curvilinear path, as perceived in two dimensions in the microscope. A measure of cell vigour.
2. VSL, straight-line (rectilinear) velocity (μm/s). Time-averaged velocity of a sperm head along the straight line between its first detected position and its last.

Fig. 3.3 Standard terminology for variables measured by CASA systems



3. VAP, average path velocity (μm/s). Time-averaged velocity of a sperm head along its average path. This path is computed by smoothing the curvilinear trajectory according to algorithms in the CASA instrument; these algorithms vary between instruments, so values may not be comparable among systems.
4. ALH, amplitude of lateral head displacement (μm). Magnitude of lateral displacement of a sperm head about its average path. It can be expressed as a maximum or an average of such displacements. Different CASA instruments compute ALH using different algorithms, so values may not be comparable among systems.
5. LIN, linearity. The linearity of a curvilinear path, VSL/VCL.
6. WOB, wobble. A measure of oscillation of the actual path about the average path, VAP/VCL.
7. STR, straightness. Linearity of the average path, VSL/VAP.
8. BCF, beat-cross frequency (Hz). The average rate at which the curvilinear path crosses the average path.
9. MAD, mean angular displacement (degrees). The time-averaged absolute values of the instantaneous turning angle of the sperm head along its curvilinear trajectory.

Note: Different CASA instruments use different mathematical algorithms to compute many of these movement variables. The comparability of measurements across all instruments is not yet known.

3.5.3 Use of CASA to estimate sperm concentration

The use of fluorescent DNA stains with CASA allows the concentration of motile sperm and percentage motility to be determined accurately, but scrupulous adherence to technique is required (Garrett et al., 2003). For example, if disposable chambers are used, it is important to assess the sample at several different distances from the site of loading the chamber as the distribution of spermatozoa throughout the chamber will be non-uniform (Douglas-Hamilton et al., 2005b). Validation against a haemocytometer is essential.

Sperm concentrations of between 2×10^6 per ml and 50×10^6 per ml can be measured (Garrett et al., 2003). Samples with a sperm concentration higher than 50×10^6 per ml will need to be diluted (see Section 3.5.2.2).

Comment: The CASA instrument detects and counts fluorescent sperm heads. Without microscopic evaluation, there is no way of knowing if the spermatozoa are intact (i.e. the head is attached to a tail).

3.5.4 Computer-aided sperm morphometric assessment

Image analysis has the potential to bring about major advances in quantification, objectivity and reproducibility in the assessment of sperm morphology. Commercial systems are available for quantifying the morphology of the sperm head and midpiece, and possibly the principal piece. However, tail defects affecting motility can be more directly assessed by using CASA to measure motility and motion. CASA systems generally classify the sperm head and midpiece as normal or abnormal and give the mean and standard deviation or median for head and midpiece dimensions, head ellipticity and regularity, and a stain-dependent measurement of the acrosome area.

Automated systems have the potential for greater objectivity, precision and reproducibility than manual systems (Menkveld et al., 1990). Precision and reproducibility can be less than 7% (Garrett & Baker, 1995), which is superior to manual evaluation by an experienced technician. The reproducibility and accuracy of the results of computer-aided sperm morphometric assessment (CASMA) can, however, be compromised by methodological inconsistencies, such as focus, illumination, sample preparation and staining (Lacquet et al., 1996; Menkveld et al., 1997) and by technical difficulties in correctly differentiating sperm heads from seminal debris, particularly when sperm concentration is low (Garrett & Baker, 1995; Menkveld et al., 1997; Coetzee et al., 1999a, b). The nature of automated evaluation means that there is no way to compensate for preparation defects and artefacts. Thus small differences in background shading relative to cell staining can result in incorrect classification or an inability to identify the cell as a spermatozoon, with a consequent bias in the results.

As with manual morphology assessment, procedures and instruments must be standardized and quality control maintained to ensure comparable and reliable results. Semen may be treated as in Section 2.13.2.4 to reduce background for

CASMA recordings. If the sperm concentration is low ($<2 \times 10^6$ per ml), samples will need to be concentrated by centrifugation, as described in Section 2.13.2.2.

Note: Centrifugation may affect sperm morphology and its use must be recorded.

Two studies have reported significant relationships between CASMA results and fertility endpoints. Coetzee et al. (1999c) found automated normal sperm morphology outcomes to be significant predictors of both fertilization rates in vitro and pregnancy. Garrett et al. (2003) found that the percentage of spermatozoa in semen that exhibited head morphology characteristic of those that are bound to the zona pellucida ("zona-preferred", %Z) together with straight-line velocity (VSL) in semen were significantly and independently related to natural pregnancy rates in a large group of subfertile couples. The relationships of both %Z and VSL with fertility appeared to be continuous, and no threshold value was identified above which there was no further increase in pregnancy rate. More studies of fertility outcomes in large populations are required to refine the application of CASA to measuring sperm morphology.

Automated systems may have a role in providing data for quality control systems, but more research is needed to demonstrate their benefit for clinics.

CHAPTER 4 Research procedures

When tests of sperm function are to be performed, it is critical that the spermatozoa are separated from the seminal plasma within 1 hour of ejaculation, to limit any damage to spermatozoa from products of non-sperm cells. As our knowledge of the molecular mechanisms regulating sperm function increases, so too will opportunities for the development of new diagnostic tests. For example, recent data emphasize the importance of nuclear DNA compaction and integrity in determining the functional competence of human spermatozoa. Emerging evidence suggests associations between DNA integrity and chromatin organization in spermatozoa and fertility (Sakkas et al., 1998; Aitken & Krausz, 2001; Virro et al., 2004).

Similarly, advances in our understanding of the signal transduction pathways regulating sperm function will have implications for the development of diagnostic tests capable of generating detailed information on the precise nature of the processes that are defective in the spermatozoa of infertile men. In order to gain deeper insights into the biological basis of male infertility, a battery of functional tests has been developed aimed at assessing the competence of human spermatozoa to fulfil the fundamental processes essential to conception: binding to the zona pellucida, acrosomal exocytosis, and fusion with the vitelline membrane of the oocyte.

4.1 Reactive oxygen species

4.1.1 Introduction

The excessive generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and the presence of high activities of cytoplasmic enzymes, such as creatine phosphokinase, may reflect abnormal spermatozoa with excess residual cytoplasm in the midpiece (Rao et al., 1989; Gomez et al., 1996; Aitken et al., 2004).

Reactive oxygen species are metabolites of oxygen and include the superoxide anion, hydrogen peroxide, hydroxyl and hydroperoxyl radicals, and nitric oxide. When present in excess, they can initiate pathological changes by inducing oxidative damage to cellular lipids, proteins and DNA (Griveau & Le Lannou, 1997; Aitken et al., 2003; Henkel et al., 2004). Most cells are equipped with either enzymatic antioxidant systems (superoxide dismutase, glutathione peroxidase and catalase) or non-enzymatic antioxidant systems (uric acid, ascorbic acid, α-tocopherol), and when these defences are overwhelmed, sperm function is impaired (Agarwal et al., 2004).

In the human ejaculate, reactive oxygen species are produced by both spermatozoa (Aitken & Clarkson, 1987; Alvarez et al., 1987; Iwasaki & Gagnon, 1992) and leukocytes (Aitken & West, 1990). Seminal plasma possesses free radical antioxidant scavengers and antioxidant enzymes, which may be deficient in some men (Jones et al., 1979; Smith et al., 1996). Thus the removal of seminal plasma during the preparation of spermatozoa for assisted conception (see Chapter 5) may render these cells vulnerable to oxidative attack. High ROS production may cause peroxidative damage and loss of sperm function, as well as DNA damage in both the nuclear and mitochondrial genomes (Sawyer et al., 2003). Sperm sur-

vival assays are frequently used to assess the quality of human spermatozoa. The results of such assays are highly correlated with the lipid peroxidation status of the spermatozoa (Gomez et al., 1998).

A chemiluminescent procedure, employing probes such as luminol or lucigenin, may be used to measure ROS production and the redox activity of human spermatozoa.

4.1.2 Measurement of reactive oxygen species generated by sperm suspensions

4.1.2.1 Principle

In this procedure, a sensitive luminometer is used to measure low amounts of light generated by human spermatozoa in the presence of a chemiluminescent probe, such as luminol. The methodology described employs a mixture of luminol and horseradish peroxidase to make sensitive measurements of hydrogen peroxide generation. Other probes (e.g. lucigenin) can also be used to monitor the production of ROS by washed human ejaculates (Aitken et al., 1992; McKinney et al., 1996).

Signals generated in response to the probe formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine (FMLP) are specific for the leukocyte population, since there are no FMLP receptors on the surface of human spermatozoa (Krausz et al., 1992). Responses can be calibrated with suspensions containing known numbers of polymorphonuclear leukocytes (see Fig. 4.1).

Comment 1: The precise activity measured by these probes is still open to question (Aitken et al., 2004) but the data generated reflect the function of the spermatozoa (Zorn et al., 2003; Said et al., 2004).

Comment 2: A single leukocyte can generate at least 100 times more ROS than a spermatozoon. A low level of leukocyte contamination can therefore have a major influence on the chemiluminescent signals generated by a sperm suspension.

4.1.2.2 Reagents

1. Hanks' balanced salt solution (HBSS), without phenol red: see Appendix 4, section A4.5.
2. Krebs–Ringer medium (KRM), without phenol red: see Appendix 4, section A4.7.
3. Luminol, 25 mmol/l: dissolve 29 mg of luminol (5-amino-2,3-dehydro-1, 4-phthalazinedione) in 10 ml of dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).
4. Horseradish peroxidase (HRP) (type VI, 310 IU/mg protein): dissolve 5 mg (1550 IU) in 1 ml of KRM.
5. FMLP (leukocyte-specific probe, 10 mmol/l): dissolve 44 mg of FMLP in 10 ml of DMSO.

6. Phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate (PMA), 1 mmol/l stock solution: dissolve 6.2 mg of PMA in 10 ml of DMSO. Dilute 1 mmol/l PMA 100-fold in DMSO to give a 10 μmol/l working solution.
7. Zymosan.
8. Gelatin: 0.1% (1 g/l) in HBSS.

4.1.2.3 Opsonization of zymosan

1. Suspend 500 mg of zymosan in 10 ml of HBSS.
2. Vortex vigorously.
3. Boil for 20 minutes in a beaker, covered to prevent evaporation.
4. Centrifuge at 500*g* for 5 minutes.
5. Wash the pellet with 10 ml of HBSS.
6. Repeat the wash.
7. Resuspend the pellet in 5 ml of fresh human serum by gentle pipetting.
8. Incubate for 20 minutes.
9. Centrifuge at 500*g* for 5 minutes.
10. Wash the pellet with 10 ml of HBSS.
11. Repeat the wash.
12. Resuspend the pellet to a concentration of 50 mg/ml in 10 ml of HBSS + 0.1% (1 g/l) gelatin by gentle pipetting.
13. Store at –20 ºC until needed.

4.1.2.4 Detecting spontaneous generation of ROS

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3) and remove a volume containing at least 10×10^6 spermatozoa for assessment for ROS.
2. Wash the spermatozoa (see Section 5.3) in KRM and adjust to 10×10^6 spermatozoa per ml.
3. Pipette 400 μl of the washed spermatozoa suspension suspended in KRM without phenol red into a disposable luminometer container. Take care not to create air bubbles.
4. Add 4 μl of 25 mmol/l luminol.
5. Add 8 μl of horseradish peroxidase (1550 IU/ml) solution.
6. Monitor the chemiluminescent signal in the luminometer at 37 °C for about 5 minutes until it has stabilized.

ROS generation by seminal leukocytes can be stimulated by the addition of FMLP, zymosan or PMA, but PMA also stimulates ROS production by spermatozoa.

4.1.2.5 FMLP provocation of ROS generation by leukocytes

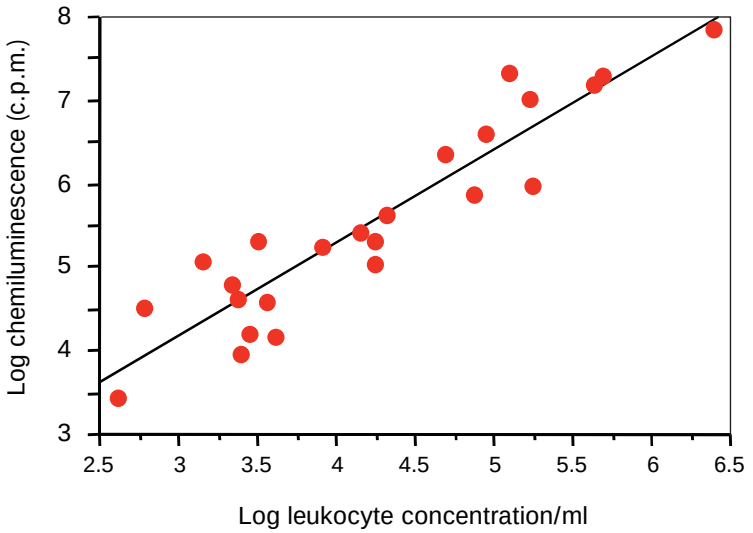
Add 2 μl of 10 mmol/l FMLP to the above sample to stimulate a chemiluminescent signal from any leukocytes that are present in the sperm suspension (see Fig. 4.2).

4.1.2.6 Zymosan provocation of ROS generation by leukocytes

Add 20 μl of the opsonized zymosan material to the above sample to stimulate a chemiluminescent signal from any leukocytes that are present in the sperm suspension. The size of the signal subsequently generated is directly proportional to the level of leukocyte contamination (see Fig. 4.1).

Fig. 4.1 Chemiluminescence generated in response to opsonized zymosan treatment

A log–linear relationship exists between the leukocyte concentration and the chemiluminescence signal.



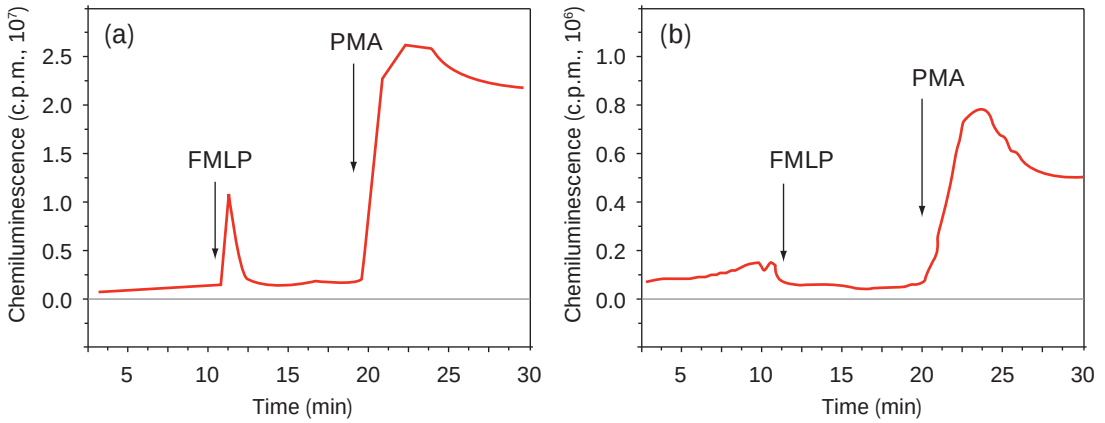
Data courtesy of RJ Aitken.

4.1.2.7 PMA provocation of ROS generation by leukocytes and spermatozoa

1. Dilute the stock PMA solution 100-fold in DMSO to give a 10 μmol/l working stock solution.
2. Wait for the FMLP or opsonized zymosan signal to subside.
3. Add 4 μl of 10 μmol/l PMA to the same sperm suspension (final concentration 100 nmol/l) to stimulate a chemiluminescent signal from spermatozoa (see Fig. 4.2).

Fig. 4.2 Relative contributions made by leukocyte and sperm subpopulations to the reactive-oxygen-generating capacity of the cell suspension

(*a*) In the presence of leukocyte contamination, a burst of ROS generation is observed on addition of the leukocyte-specific probe FMLP. The subsequent addition of PMA generates a sustained, intense chemiluminescent signal from both the spermatozoa and leukocyte populations. (*b*) In the absence of leukocyte contamination, the FMLP response is lost, while PMA elicits a pronounced chemiluminescent signal from the spermatozoa (see also Krausz et al., 1992).



Data courtesy of RJ Aitken.

4.1.2.8 Results

Examine the graphical output after stimulation for evidence of leukocyte contamination.

4.2 Human sperm–oocyte interaction tests

The binding of spermatozoa to the zona pellucida initiates the acrosome reaction, releases free and exposes bound lytic acrosomal components, and allows the spermatozoa to penetrate through the zona matrix, driven by the increased flagellar thrusting of hyperactivated motility. To evaluate the binding events, non-viable, non-fertilizable human oocytes from autopsy, surgically removed ovaries or failed in-vitro fertilization may be used. These tests can be performed using oocytes that have been stored in salt, but are usually limited by the lack of availability of human oocytes (Yanagimachi et al., 1979; Kruger et al., 1991; Liu & Baker, 1992b; Liu et al., 2004).

4.3 Human zona pellucida binding tests

One zona pellucida binding assay, the hemizona assay (Burkman et al., 1988), involves microdissection of the zona pellucida into equal halves and the exposure of each matching half to the same concentration of test or control spermatozoa. Another sperm–zona binding assay (Liu et al., 1988, 1989) involves labelling the

test sample spermatozoa with a fluorescent dye (e.g. fluorescein) and a control sperm sample with another dye (e.g. rhodamine). The number of spermatozoa from the test and control samples bound to the same intact zona are counted and reported as a ratio. Results from both zona binding tests have been shown to be correlated with fertilization rates in vitro (Liu & Baker, 2003).

It may be clinically useful to evaluate the number of bound spermatozoa in cases of low or failed in-vitro fertilization, idiopathic infertility and teratozoospermia (Franken et al., 1989; Liu & Baker, 1992a, 2004). The binding of few or no spermatozoa to the zona pellucida usually indicates a sperm defect.

4.4 Assessment of the acrosome reaction

The physiological acrosome reaction occurs at the zona pellucida after sperm binding. The zona pellucida-induced acrosome reaction can be assessed on spermatozoa removed from the surface of the zona pellucida or exposed to disaggregated human zona pellucida proteins (Liu & Baker, 1994, 1996; Franken et al., 2000). In cases of teratozoospermia and oligozoospermia, some men may have otherwise normal semen analyses, but spermatozoa that display disordered zona pellucida-induced acrosome reactions. Others may have spermatozoa that exhibit normal zona pellucida binding but have a poor zona pellucida-induced acrosome reaction (Liu et al., 2004). These tests are limited by the restricted availability of human zonae pellucidae. Zonae from other primates cannot be used as surrogates because of their restricted binding specificity (Bedford, 1977; Liu et al., 1991b; Oehninger et al., 1993). Other stimuli, such as calcium ionophores, will induce the acrosome reaction but the results are not related to those obtained from the zona pellucida-induced acrosome reaction (Liu & Baker, 1996). Acrosomal status after induction of the acrosome reaction can be assessed by microscopy or flow cytometry (Fenichel et al., 1989; Henley et al., 1994; Cooper & Yeung, 1998) with fluorescently labelled lectins, such as *Pisum sativum* (pea agglutinin) (see Section 4.4.1) or *Arachis hypogaea* (peanut lectin), or monoclonal antibodies against the acrosome antigen CD46 (Cross, 1995).

4.4.1 Procedure for the fluorescence assessment of acrosomal status

The method was originally developed by Cross et al. (1986) and subsequently modified by Liu & Baker (1988). The modified procedure is simpler, reproducible and produces very clear images (Fig. 4.3). It is preferable to use a highly motile sperm preparation free from contaminants such as leukocytes, germ cells and dead spermatozoa. Thus either the sample should be washed (see Section 5.3), or swim-up (see Section 5.4) or density-gradient preparations (see Section 5.5) should be made, depending on the quality of the sample.

4.4.1.1 Reagents

1. *Pisum sativum* agglutinin (PSA) labelled with fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC) (PSA–FITC).
2. Phosphate-buffered saline (PBS), pH 7.4.

3. NaCl, 0.9% (9 g/l): dissolve 0.9g of NaCl in 100 ml of purified water.
4. Ethanol 95% (v/v).
5. PSA stock solution: dilute 2 mg of PSA–FITC in 4 ml of PBS. Store 0.5-ml aliquots at –20 °C.
6. PSA working solution: dilute 0.5 ml of PSA stock solution in 10 ml of PBS and store at 4 °C. This solution is stable for up to 4 weeks.

4.4.1.2 Simple washing of spermatozoa

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3) and remove an aliquot of about 0.2 ml.
2. Dilute to 10 ml with 0.9% (9 g/l) saline.
3. Centrifuge at 800*g* for 10 minutes.
4. Tip off and discard all but 20–40 µl of the supernatant.
5. Resuspend the sperm pellet in the remaining supernatant by gentle pipetting.
6. Repeat the washing procedure.

4.4.1.3 Treating purified sperm preparations

1. Dilute swim-up (see Section 5.4) or once-washed density-gradient preparations (see Section 5.5) to 10 ml with saline.
2. Centrifuge at 800*g* for 10 minutes.
3. Tip off and discard all but 20–40 µl of the supernatant.
4. Resuspend the sperm pellet in the remaining supernatant by gentle pipetting.

4.4.1.4 Preparing a smear

1. Prepare replicate sperm smears about 1 cm long from about 5 µl of suspension.
2. Inspect the wet smears by phase-contrast microscopy (×400).
3. Ensure that the spermatozoa are evenly distributed on the slides without clumping.
4. Allow the slides to air dry.
5. Fix in 95% (v/v) ethanol for 30 minutes.
6. Allow to air dry.

4.4.1.5 Staining with PSA–FITC

1. Pour 10 ml of PSA–FITC working solution into a vertical staining jar.
2. Immerse the fixed and air-dried slides in the PSA–FITC stain.
3. Allow to stain for more than 1 hour at 4 °C.

4. Wash each slide with purified water and mount in ethanol-soluble medium (see Sections 2.14.2.4 and 2.14.2.5).

Note: Longer staining times (up to 18 hours) will not affect PSA results. Shorter times (less than 1 hour) will make it difficult to score the slide.

4.4.1.6 Scoring

View the slide with fluorescence optics at ×400 magnification with oil immersion at 450–490 nm excitation. Categorize the spermatozoa as follows.

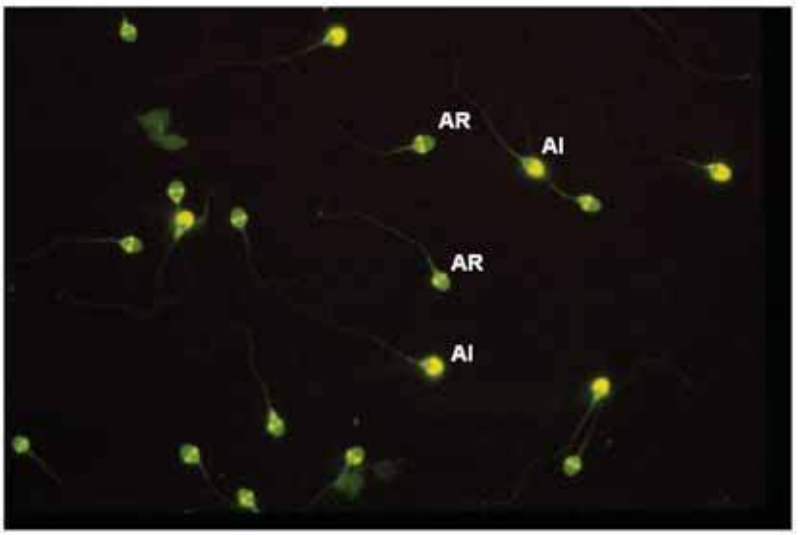
1. Acrosome-intact (AI): spermatozoa in which more than half the head is brightly and uniformly fluorescing (see Fig 4.3).
2. Acrosome-reacted (AR): spermatozoa with only a fluorescing band at the equatorial segment or no fluorescing stain at all in the acrosome region (see Fig. 4.3).
3. Abnormal acrosomes: all other spermatozoa.

4.4.1.7 Counting acrosome-reacted spermatozoa

1. Tally the number in each acrosomal category (AI and AR) with the aid of a laboratory counter.
2. Evaluate 200 spermatozoa in each replicate, in order to achieve an acceptably low sampling error (see Box 2.5).
3. Calculate the average and difference of the two percentages of acrosome-reacted spermatozoa from the replicate slides.
4. Determine the acceptability of the difference from Table 2.1 or Fig. A7.2, Appendix 7. (Each shows the maximum difference between two percentages that is expected to occur in 95% of samples because of sampling error alone.)
5. If the difference between the percentages is acceptable, report the average percentage of acrosome-reacted spermatozoa. If the difference is too high, reassess the two slides (see Box 2.6).
6. Report the percentage of acrosome-reacted spermatozoa to the nearest whole number.

Fig. 4.3 Fluorescent *Pisum sativum* agglutinin (PSA) staining of human spermatozoa

AI spermatozoa, with stained proximal heads (acrosome), and AR spermatozoa, with stained equatorial bands or post-acrosomal regions, are shown.



Micrograph courtesy of HWG Baker.

4.4.2 Induced acrosome reaction assay

The acrosome reaction is an exocytotic process that occurs after spermatozoa bind to the zona pellucida and must take place before the spermatozoon can penetrate the oocyte vestments and fuse with the oocyte. Calcium influx is believed to be an initiating event in the normal acrosome reaction. Inducing calcium influx by using a calcium ionophore is one way of testing the competence of capacitated spermatozoa to undergo the acrosome reaction (Aitken et al., 1993). This is the basis of this assay, also called the acrosome reaction after ionophore challenge (ARIC) test. However, further evaluation is needed before testing of acrosome status can be considered a routine clinical assay.

4.4.2.1 Reagents

1. Ham's F-10 medium (see Appendix 4, section A4.4) containing 3.5% (35 g/l) human serum albumin (HSA).
2. Biggers, Whitten and Whittingham (BWW) stock solution: see Appendix 4, section A4.1.
3. Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).
4. Ionophore A23187, 1 mmol/l stock solution: dissolve 5.23 mg of A23187 in 10 ml of DMSO.
5. Glutaraldehyde 3% (v/v), or ethanol 70% (v/v).

4.4.2.2 Procedure

1. Allow 30–60 minutes for complete liquefaction of the fresh semen.
2. Prepare the Ham's F-10–HSA capacitation-inducing medium fresh for each assay.
3. Warm the medium to 37 °C before use, preferably in a 5% (v/v) CO_2-in-air incubator.
4. Prepare a highly motile sperm population, free from contaminants such as leukocytes, germ cells and dead spermatozoa, by density-gradient centrifugation (see Section 5.5) using fresh Ham's F-10 HSA medium.
5. Prepare control and replicate experimental tubes, each containing approximately 1 ml of suspension with 1×10^6 motile spermatozoa.
6. Incubate the sperm suspensions for 3 hours at 37 °C in an atmosphere of 5% (v/v) CO_2 in air to induce capacitation (loosen the cap of the tube to allow gas exchange). If a CO_2 incubator is not available, use a Hepes-buffered medium (see Appendix 4, section A4.1, Note 1), cap the tubes tightly and incubate at 37 °C.
7. Add 10 µl of A23187 stock solution (1 mmol/l) to the replicate experimental tubes to yield a final concentration of 10 µmol/l.
8. Add 10 µl of DMSO to the control tube.
9. Incubate all the tubes at 37 °C for 15 minutes.
10. Remove a small aliquot from each tube for motility determination.
11. Stop the reaction by adding 100 µl of 3% (v/v) glutaraldehyde or 70% (v/v) ethanol.
12. Transfer the fixed spermatozoa to precleaned microscope slides and dry in air.
13. Stain the spermatozoa using fluorescent labels (see Section 4.4.1.5).
14. Evaluate by fluorescence microscopy at ×400 magnification with oil immersion at 450–490 nm excitation.
15. Assess the percentage of acrosome-reacted spermatozoa in the experimental samples (test %AR) and the control samples (control %AR).

4.4.2.3 Scoring

1. The acrosome reaction after ionophore challenge (ARIC) is the test %AR minus the control %AR.
2. The normal difference is approximately 15% AR.
3. Values under 10% AR are considered abnormal.
4. Values between 10% AR and 15% AR suggest that sperm function may be abnormal.
5. Control values above 15% indicate a spontaneous and premature AR.

4.4.2.4 Quality control

1. A positive control sample (semen from a man whose spermatozoa have previously responded well to ionophore (>15% AR)) should be run each time the test is performed.
2. Each time a new batch of stain is prepared, perform a cross-over test with the old stain, using positive-control spermatozoa with a known response, to ensure that the stain has been made properly.

4.5 Zona-free hamster oocyte penetration test

The fusion of human spermatozoa to the hamster oocyte is functionally the same as that with the human vitelline membrane, since it is initiated by the plasma membrane overlying the equatorial segment of acrosome-reacted human spermatozoa. The hamster oocyte penetration (HOP) test, or sperm penetration assay, differs from the physiological situation in that the zona pellucida is absent. A standard protocol for this test is given below.

Comment: The conventional hamster oocyte test depends on the occurrence of spontaneous acrosome reactions in populations of spermatozoa incubated for prolonged periods in vitro. Since this procedure is less efficient than the biological process and may involve different mechanisms, false-negative results (men whose spermatozoa fail in the hamster oocyte test but successfully fertilize human oocytes in vitro or in vivo) have frequently been recorded (WHO, 1986). Despite this potentially confounding limitation, the test provides information on the fusinogenic nature of capacitated sperm head membranes.

Two of the key intracellular signals that initiate the acrosome reaction following sperm–zona pellucida interaction are an influx of calcium and cytoplasmic alkalinization. As both can be generated artificially with a divalent cation ionophore (Aitken et al., 1993), an alternative method using ionophore-stimulated spermatozoa is also described.

4.5.1 Protocol

4.5.1.1 Reagents

1. BWW stock solution: see Appendix 4, section A4.1.
2. Hyaluronidase (300–500 IU/mg).
3. Trypsin type I (10 000 BAEE U/mg).
4. Wax (melting point 48–66 °C).
5. Petroleum jelly.
6. Mineral oil.
7. Zona-free hamster oocytes: these can be purchased commercially or obtained by superovulation of hamsters (see Box 4.1).

8. Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).
9. Ionophore (for alternative protocol) 1 mmol/l stock solution: dissolve 5.23 mg of the divalent cation ionophore A23187 in 10 ml DMSO.

4.5.1.2 Standard protocol not incorporating ionophore challenge

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
2. Prepare semen samples by density-gradient centrifugation (see Section 5.5) or swim-up (see Section 5.4).
3. Remove most of the supernatant from the pellet.
4. Dislodge the pellet by gentle pipetting and establish the concentration of spermatozoa in the pellet (see Sections 2.7 and 2.8).
5. Dilute the pellet to approximately 10×10^6 spermatozoa per ml in approximately 0.5 ml of medium.
6. Incline the tube at an angle of 45° to the horizontal to increase the surface area.
7. Incubate the sperm suspensions for 18–24 hours at 37 °C in an atmosphere of 5% (v/v) CO_2 in air to induce capacitation (loosen the cap of the tube to allow gas exchange). If a CO_2 incubator is not available, use a Hepes-buffered medium (see Appendix 4, section A4.1, Note 1), cap the tubes tightly and incubate at 37 °C.
8. Return the tubes to the vertical position for 20 minutes to allow settling of any immotile cells after capacitation.
9. Aspirate motile spermatozoa from the top third of the supernatant, being careful not to disturb the dead spermatozoa at the interface, and transfer them to a new tube.
10. Adjust the concentration to 3.5×10^6 motile spermatozoa per ml of medium.
11. With a positive-displacement pipette, aspirate known volumes (50–150 µl) of sperm suspension and slowly dispense them into a small Petri dish. With a plastic disposable pipette, cover the droplet with prewarmed mineral oil equilibrated in CO_2, being careful not to disturb the sperm suspension. Add enough oil to surround and just cover each droplet of spermatozoa.

4.5.1.3 Alternative protocol incorporating a calcium (Ca^{2+}) ionophore

1. Prepare a highly motile sperm population by density-gradient centrifugation, as described in Section 5.5.
2. Aspirate the pellet at the bottom of the 80% density-gradient medium fraction and transfer it into 8 ml of BWW.
3. Centrifuge at 500*g* for 5 minutes.
4. Decant most of the supernatant from the pellet and dislodge the pellet by gentle pipetting.

5. Establish the concentration of spermatozoa in the pellet (see Sections 2.7 and 2.8) and dilute to approximately 5×10^6 motile spermatozoa per ml of fresh BWW.
6. Add 1.25 and 2.5 µl of A23187 stock solution (1 mmol/l) to separate 1-ml aliquots of sperm suspension, to achieve two final concentrations of 1.25 and 2.5 µmol/l, respectively.
7. Incubate the spermatozoa with the ionophore for 3 hours at 37 °C.
8. Centrifuge the cells at 500*g* for 5 minutes.
9. Decant most of the supernatant from the pellet and dislodge the pellet by gentle pipetting.
10. Assess the percentage of motile spermatozoa.
11. Dilute to approximately 3.5×10^6 motile spermatozoa per ml of fresh BWW. Valid results can still be obtained using concentrations as low as 1×10^6 motile spermatozoa per ml (Aitken & Elton, 1986).
12. Disperse spermatozoa under mineral oil, as described in 4.5.1.2, step 11.

Note: The dose–response curve for ionophore treatment varies between individuals, so it is preferable to test both ionophore concentrations.

Box 4.1 Induction of ovulation in hamsters

Ensure that all legal requirements for injecting living animals are satisfied. Prepare solutions of the appropriate dose of pregnant mare's serum gonadotrophin (PMSG) and human chorionic gonadotrophin (hCG). Dispense into small vials. Store at –20 °C until use. Inject immature hamsters, or mature hamsters on day 1 of the estrous cycle, intraperitoneally (i.p.) with 30 IU of PMSG. After 48–72 hours, inject them with 40 IU of hCG i.p. Grasp the animal's back and pull the abdominal skin taut over its belly with one hand; with the other deliver the hormone into the abdominal cavity (just above the hip joints) from a 1-ml syringe through a 21-gauge needle. Change needles between animals to ensure easy penetration of the skin and minimal discomfort to the animals.

4.5.1.4 Collecting the ovaries

1. Recover the oocytes within 18 hours after the injection of hCG by sacrificing the animals according to methods approved by the relevant animal care and use committee.
2. Place the hamsters on their back and dampen the abdominal fur with 95% (v/v) ethanol.
3. Grasp the skin with toothed forceps and cut through the skin and muscle with scissors to expose the uterus and ovaries.
4. Wipe the forceps and scissors free of fur with 95% (v/v) ethanol.
5. Push the intestines out of the abdominal cavity to expose the uterine horns.

6. Grasp one uterine horn with the forceps and lift it out of the abdominal cavity to expose the oviduct, ovary and ovarian ligament.
7. Hold the most distal portion of the uterine horn with the forceps and cut through the tip of the uterus just beneath the forceps. Cut off the ovary and place it in warm (37 °C) BWW in a small Petri dish.
8. Collect the second ovary in the same way.

4.5.1.5 Collecting the cumulus masses

1. Examine the ovaries by transillumination in a dissecting microscope to locate the cumulus cells containing the oocytes in the swollen portion of the oviduct.
2. Hold the oviduct with forceps and puncture the swollen area with a 21-gauge needle. The cumulus mass will pour out of the puncture hole.
3. Tease out the cumulus mass with the needle. Squeeze the oviduct with the forceps to remove all the cumulus mass.

4.5.1.6 Recovering and treating the oocytes

1. Gather the cumulus cells with needle and forceps and place the cells in a watchglass dish, spot plate or other shallow container containing 0.1% (1 g/l) hyaluronidase (300–500 IU/ml) in warm, CO_2-equilibrated BWW.
2. Incubate the container, covered with aluminium foil to protect the cells from light, for 10 minutes at room temperature. Observe the separation of the cumulus cells in a dissecting microscope.
3. Use a flame-drawn glass pipette (see Box 4.2) to transfer freed oocytes from the hyaluronidase to the warm equilibrated BWW.
4. Rinse the recovered oocytes twice in BWW by transferring them into fresh drops of warm, equilibrated BWW. This can be done in a glass multi-well dish or spot plate. Rinse the pipette with BWW between each oocyte transfer.
5. Treat the oocytes with 0.1% (1 g/l) trypsin (10 000 IU/ml) for approximately 1 minute at room temperature to remove the zonae pellucidae. Observe the digestion of the zona in a dissecting microscope and remove the oocytes as soon as the zona has dissolved.
6. Wash the oocytes three times more with BWW.
7. Warm the isolated oocytes to 37 °C and introduce them into the sperm suspensions. Alternatively, they may be stored at 4 °C for up to 24 hours before use.

Box 4.2 Preparation of glass pipettes

Rotate a glass capillary tube or Pasteur pipette just above a Bunsen burner flame, holding the ends of the glass tube with both hands and rolling it back and forth over the flame to ensure even heating of the glass. Just as the glass starts to melt, pull your hands apart quickly to stretch it. Snap off the thread-like strand of glass to the desired width (approximately 1 mm) of the pipette opening. Attach the non-drawn-out end of the pipette to a 1-ml syringe with tubing.

4.5.1.7 Co-incubation of gametes

1. Dispense the zona-free hamster oocytes into several droplets, with about five oocytes per drop (i.e. for 20 oocytes per semen sample prepare four aliquots of five oocytes per drop).
2. Load groups of about five oocytes into the glass pipette with little medium so as not to dilute the sperm suspensions too much.
3. Insert the pipette tip directly into the centre of one droplet of sperm suspension and slowly dispense the oocytes. Maintain positive pressure to prevent the mineral oil from entering the pipette and take care not to introduce air bubbles into the sperm suspension.
4. Wipe any excess oil from the pipette tip after removal from the sperm suspension.
5. Repeat step 3 until all oocytes have been transferred to the sperm suspensions.
6. Rinse the pipette thoroughly in BWW after each egg transfer to prevent cross-contamination of spermatozoa.
7. Incubate the gametes for 3 hours at 37 °C in an atmosphere of 5% (v/v) CO_2 in air.
8. Recover the oocytes from the oil droplets. Take care to wipe any oil from the tip of the pipette before transferring the oocytes to BWW.
9. Wash the oocytes free of loosely adherent spermatozoa with the flame-drawn Pasteur pipette, by rinsing in BWW.

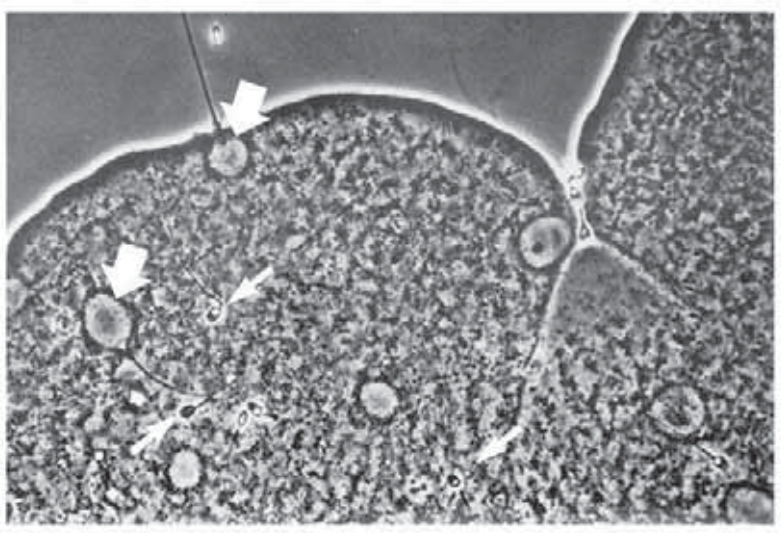
4.5.1.8 Analysing the oocytes

1. Place four pillars of wax–petroleum jelly mixture (see Box 3.1) in a rectangular pattern to support the coverslip (22 mm × 22 mm, thickness number 1.5, 0.17 mm) at its corners.
2. Place a small droplet of oocyte-containing BWW in the centre of the four pillars.
3. Lower the coverslip over the wax pillars and gently press it down, to begin to flatten the oocytes. A well-flattened oocyte is required for optimal observation of decondensed sperm heads.
4. If necessary, add more BWW to flood the slide to prevent squashing of the oocytes.
5. Examine the preparation by phase-contrast microscopy at ×200 magnification.
6. Count the number of decondensed sperm heads with an attached or closely associated tail (see Fig. 4.4).
7. Record the percentage of eggs penetrated by at least one spermatozoon and the number of spermatozoa per penetrated egg.

8. Record the presence of any spermatozoa that remain bound to the surface of the oocyte after the initial washing procedure, since this may give some indication of the proportion of the sperm population that has undergone the acrosome reaction.

Fig. 4.4 Phase-contrast micrograph of a zona-free hamster oocyte containing human spermatozoa

The wide arrows indicate the presence of decondensed sperm heads within the ooplasm; the narrow arrows point to non-penetrated spermatozoa on the egg surface.



Reproduced from Aitken et al. (1983) with kind permission of Springer Science+ Business Media.

4.5.1.9 Quality control

The assays must be performed with a positive control semen sample exhibiting >50% penetration.

4.6 Assessment of sperm chromatin

Several methods have been used to test the normality of sperm chromatin and DNA. They all use dyes that bind to histone (aniline blue) or nucleic acid (acridine orange, chromomycin) and are assessed histologically or by flow cytometry. Newer methods include those based on assessment of DNA strand breaks, such as terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT)-mediated deoxyuridine triphosphate (dUTP)-nick-end labelling (or TUNEL for short (in situ end-labelling, ISEL)), comet assays or sperm chromatin dispersion (SCD). The results of these tests are correlated with each other (Chohan et al., 2006) and with sperm morphology, motility and viability. They may give additional information about fertilization rates with standard IVF and, possibly, spontaneous pregnancy rates. The sperm chromatin structure assay (SCSA) can be predictive of fertilization failure in vivo and in vitro (Evenson & Wixon, 2006). Whether there is any relationship between the results of these tests and miscarriage or other outcomes of pregnancy is not yet clear.

PART II.

Sperm preparation

CHAPTER 5 Sperm preparation techniques

5.1 Introduction

Spermatozoa may need to be separated from seminal plasma for a variety of purposes, such as diagnostic tests of function and therapeutic recovery for insemination and assisted reproductive technologies (ART). If tests of sperm function are to be performed, it is critical that the spermatozoa are separated from the seminal plasma within 1 hour of ejaculation, to limit any damage from products of non-sperm cells.

Comment 1: Counting too few spermatozoa will produce an uncertain result (see Appendix 7, section A7.1.1) which may have consequences for diagnosis and therapy (see Appendix 7, section A7.2). This may be unavoidable when spermatozoa are required for therapeutic purposes and few are available.

Comment 2: When smaller semen volumes are taken and fewer spermatozoa are counted than recommended, the precision of the values obtained will be significantly reduced. When fewer than 400 spermatozoa are counted, report the sampling error for the number of cells counted (see Table 2.2).

5.1.1 When spermatozoa may need to be separated from seminal plasma

Although seminal plasma helps spermatozoa penetrate cervical mucus (Overstreet et al., 1980), some of its components (e.g. prostaglandins, zinc) are obstacles to the achievement of pregnancy when natural barriers are bypassed in ART, such as intrauterine insemination (IUI) or in-vitro fertilization (IVF). The separation of human spermatozoa from seminal plasma to yield a final preparation containing a high percentage of morphologically normal and motile cells, free from debris, non-germ cells and dead spermatozoa, is important for clinical practice. Diluting semen with culture media and centrifuging is still used for preparing normozoospermic specimens for IUI (Boomsma et al., 2004). However, density-gradient centrifugation and direct swim-up are generally preferred for specimens with one or more abnormalities in semen parameters (see e.g. Morshedi et al., 2003). Glass-wool columns are reported to be as effective as density gradients for the separation of spermatozoa from semen with suboptimal characteristics (Rhemrev et al., 1989; Johnson et al., 1996).

5.1.2 Choice of method

The choice of sperm preparation technique is dictated by the nature of the semen sample (see Canale et al., 1994). For example, the direct swim-up technique is often used when the semen samples are considered to be largely normal, whereas in cases of severe oligozoospermia, teratozoospermia or asthenozoospermia, density gradients are usually preferred because of the greater total number of motile spermatozoa recovered. Density gradients can also be altered to optimize handling of specific properties of individual samples: the total volume of gradient material can be reduced, limiting the distance that the spermatozoa migrate

and maximizing total motile sperm recovery, or the centrifugation time can be increased for specimens with high viscosity.

Each laboratory should determine the centrifugal force and centrifugation time necessary to form a manageable sperm pellet. When sperm numbers are extremely low, it may be necessary to modify the centrifugal force or the time, in order to increase the chances of recovering the maximum number of spermatozoa. Modifications to recommended times and centrifugal forces should be rigorously tested prior to clinical implementation. The most suitable method of preparation can be identified from the functional capacity of the prepared spermatozoa, as determined, for example, by the zona-free hamster oocyte penetration test (see Section 4.5).

5.1.3 Efficiency of sperm separation from seminal plasma and infectious organisms

The efficiency of a sperm selection technique is usually expressed as the absolute sperm number, the total number of motile spermatozoa, or the recovery of morphologically normal motile spermatozoa. Swim-up generally produces a lower recovery of motile spermatozoa (<20%) than does density-gradient centrifugation (>20%) (but see Ng et al., 1992). Swim-up and density-gradient centrifugation also produce different levels of contamination with seminal components in the final sperm preparation. Using the prostatic secretion zinc as a marker of soluble seminal components, Björndahl et al. (2005) demonstrated time-dependent diffusion of zinc from semen into the overlaying swim-up medium. The final zinc concentration in swim-up preparations was greater than that after density-gradient preparation.

Semen samples may contain harmful infectious agents, and technicians should handle them as a biohazard with extreme care. Sperm preparation techniques cannot be considered 100% effective in removing infectious agents from semen (see Section 5.6). Safety guidelines, as outlined in Appendix 2, should be strictly observed. Good laboratory practice is fundamental to laboratory safety (WHO, 2004).

5.2 General principles

Three simple sperm preparation techniques are described in the following sections. For all of them, the culture medium suggested is a balanced salt solution supplemented with protein and containing a buffer appropriate for the environmental conditions in which the spermatozoa will be processed. For assisted reproduction procedures, such as intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI), in-vitro fertilization (IVF), artificial insemination (AI) or gamete intrafallopian transfer (GIFT), it is imperative that the human serum albumin is highly purified and free from viral, bacterial and prion contamination. Albumins specifically designed for such procedures are commercially available. If the incubator contains only atmospheric air and the temperature is 37 °C, the medium should be buffered with Hepes or a similar buffer, and the caps of the tubes should be tightly closed. If the incubator atmosphere is 5% (v/v) CO_2 in air and the temperature is 37 °C, then the medium is best buffered with sodium bicarbonate or a similar buffer, and the caps of the test-tubes should be loose to allow gas exchange. Adherence to this will ensure that the culture pH is compatible with sperm survival. The final disposition of the

processed spermatozoa will determine which buffered medium is appropriate. For example, sperm function assays in general will require a medium that supports sperm capacitation, and typically contains sodium bicarbonate (25 mmol/l).

Semen should be collected in a sterile manner (see Section 2.2.3). Sterile techniques and materials are essential when applying a sperm preparation technique for therapeutic applications.

5.3 Simple washing

This simple washing procedure provides the highest yield of spermatozoa and is adequate if semen samples are of good quality. It is often used for preparing spermatozoa for IUI.

5.3.1 Reagents

1. BWW, Earle's, Ham's F-10 or human tubal fluid (HTF) (commercially available or see Appendix 4, sections A4.1, A4.3, A4.4 and A4.6) supplemented preferably with human serum albumin (HSA), or serum, as described below.
2. HSA, highly purified and free from viral, bacterial and prion contamination and endotoxins.
3. HSA supplement: to 50 ml of medium add 300 mg of HSA, 1.5 mg of sodium pyruvate, 0.18 ml of sodium lactate (60% (v/v) syrup) and 100 mg of sodium bicarbonate.
4. Serum supplement: to 46 ml of medium add 4 ml of heat-inactivated (56 °C for 20 minutes) client's serum, 1.5 mg of sodium pyruvate, 0.18 ml of sodium lactate (60% (v/v) syrup) and 100 mg of sodium bicarbonate.

5.3.2 Procedure

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
2. Dilute the entire semen sample 1 + 1 (1:2) with supplemented medium to promote removal of seminal plasma.
3. Transfer the diluted suspension into multiple centrifuge tubes, with preferably not more than 3 ml per tube.
4. Centrifuge at 300–500*g* for 5–10 minutes.
5. Carefully aspirate and discard the supernatants.
6. Resuspend the combined sperm pellets in 1 ml of supplemented medium by gentle pipetting.
7. Centrifuge again at 300–500*g* for 3–5 minutes.
8. Carefully aspirate and discard the supernatant.
9. Resuspend the sperm pellet, by gentle pipetting, in a volume of supplemented medium appropriate for final disposition, e.g. insemination, so that concentration and motility can be determined (see Sections 2.5 and 2.7).

Note: The number of washings to remove seminal plasma can be reduced by using fewer tubes and increasing the volume in each tube. If this is done, the centrifugal force and duration of centrifugation should be increased, to ensure complete pelleting of spermatozoa, e.g. 500–600*g* for 8–10 minutes.

5.4 Direct swim-up

Spermatozoa may be selected by their ability to swim out of seminal plasma and into culture medium. This is known as the "swim-up" technique. The semen should preferably not be diluted and centrifuged prior to swim-up, because this can result in peroxidative damage to the sperm membranes (Aitken & Clarkson, 1988). Thus, a direct swim-up of spermatozoa from semen is the preferred method for separating out motile spermatozoa (see e.g. Mortimer, 1994a, b). The direct swim-up technique can be performed either by layering culture medium over the liquefied semen or by layering liquefied semen under the culture medium. Motile spermatozoa then swim into the culture medium. This procedure gives a lower yield of spermatozoa than washing, but selects them for their motility and is useful where the percentage of motile spermatozoa in semen is low, e.g. for IVF and ICSI.

5.4.1 Reagents

1. BWW, Earle's, Ham's F-10 or HTF (Appendix 4, sections A4.1, A4.3, A4.4 and A4.6) supplemented preferably with HSA, or serum, as described below.
2. HSA, highly purified and free from viral, bacterial and prion contamination and endotoxins.
3. HSA supplement: to 50 ml of medium add 300 mg of HSA, 1.5 mg of sodium pyruvate, 0.18 ml of sodium lactate (60% (v/v) syrup) and 100 mg of sodium bicarbonate.
4. Serum supplement: to 46 ml of medium add 4 ml of heat-inactivated (56 °C for 20 minutes) client's serum, 1.5 mg of sodium pyruvate, 0.18 ml of sodium lactate (60% (v/v) syrup) and 100 mg of sodium bicarbonate.

5.4.2 Procedure

1. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
2. Place 1 ml of semen in a sterile 15-ml conical centrifuge tube, and gently layer 1.2 ml of supplemented medium over it. Alternatively, pipette the semen carefully under the supplemented culture medium.
3. Incline the tube at an angle of about 45°, to increase the surface area of the semen–culture medium interface, and incubate for 1 hour at 37 °C.
4. Gently return the tube to the upright position and remove the uppermost 1 ml of medium. This will contain highly motile sperm cells.
5. Dilute this with 1.5–2.0 ml of supplemented medium.

6. Centrifuge at 300–500*g* for 5 minutes and discard the supernatant.
7. Resuspend the sperm pellet in 0.5 ml of supplemented medium for assessment of sperm concentration, total motility and progressive motility (see Sections 2.5 and 2.7).
8. The specimen may be used directly for therapeutic or research purposes.

5.5 Discontinuous density gradients

Discontinuous density gradients can provide the best selection of good-quality spermatozoa, giving good separation from other cell types and debris. It is easier to standardize than the swim-up technique, and thus results are more consistent. This technique is used to recover and prepare spermatozoa for use in IVF and ICSI.

This method uses centrifugation of seminal plasma over density gradients consisting of colloidal silica coated with silane, which separates cells by their density. In addition, motile spermatozoa swim actively through the gradient material to form a soft pellet at the bottom of the tube. A simple two-step discontinuous density-gradient preparation method is most widely applied, typically with a 40% (v/v) density top layer and an 80% (v/v) density lower layer. Sperm preparation using density-gradient centrifugation usually results in a fraction of highly motile spermatozoa, free from debris, contaminating leukocytes, non-germ cells and degenerating germ cells.

A number of commercial products are available for making density gradients suitable for semen processing. These products should be used according to the manufacturers' recommendations. Any departure from procedural recommendations should be evidence-based. Most density-gradient media contain high relative molecular mass components that have inherently low osmolality, so they are usually prepared in medium that is iso-osmotic with female reproductive tract fluids.

5.5.1 Reagents

1. BWW, Earle's, Ham's F-10 or HTF (see Appendix 4, sections A4.1, A4.3, A4.4 and A4.6), supplemented preferably with HSA, or serum, as described below.
2. HSA, highly purified and free from viral, bacterial and prion contamination and endotoxins.
3. HSA supplement: to 50 ml of medium add 300 mg of HSA, 1.5 mg of sodium pyruvate, 0.18 ml of sodium lactate (60% (v/v) syrup) and 100 mg of sodium bicarbonate.
4. Serum supplement: to 46 ml of medium add 4 ml of heat-inactivated (56 °C for 30-45 minutes) patient's serum, 1.5 mg of sodium pyruvate, 0.18 ml of sodium lactate (60% (v/v) syrup) and 100 mg of sodium bicarbonate.
5. Isotonic density-gradient medium: to 10 ml of 10× concentrated culture medium (commercially available or see Appendix 4, sections A4.1, A4.3, A4.4 and A4.6), add 90 ml of density-gradient medium, 300 mg of HSA, 3 mg of sodium pyruvate, 0.37 ml of sodium lactate (60% (v/v) syrup) and 200 mg of sodium bicarbonate.

6. Gradient 80% (v/v): to 40 ml of isotonic gradient medium add 10 ml of supplemented medium.
7. Gradient 40% (v/v): to 20 ml of isotonic gradient medium add 30 ml of supplemented medium.

Note: Although these isotonic density-gradient media are often referred to as 100%, 80% and 40% (v/v), they are really 90%, 72% and 36% (v/v).

5.5.2 Procedure

1. Prepare the density-gradient medium in a test-tube by layering 1 ml of 40% (v/v) density-gradient medium over 1 ml of 80% (v/v) density-gradient medium.
2. Mix the semen sample well (see Box 2.3).
3. Place 1 ml of semen above the density-gradient media and centrifuge at 300–400*g* for 15–30 minutes. More than one tube per semen sample may be used, if necessary.
4. Remove most of the supernatant from the sperm pellet.
5. Resuspend the sperm pellet in 5 ml of supplemented medium by gentle pipetting (to aid removal of contaminating density-gradient medium) and centrifuge at 200*g* for 4–10 minutes.
6. Repeat the washing procedure (steps 4 and 5 above).
7. Resuspend the final pellet in supplemented medium by gentle pipetting so that concentration and motility can be determined (see Sections 2.5 and 2.7).

5.6 Preparing HIV-infected semen samples

If the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is present in semen, viral RNA and proviral DNA can be found free in seminal plasma and in non-sperm cells. As HIV receptors (CD4, CCR5, CXCR4) are expressed only by non-sperm cells, a combination of density-gradient centrifugation followed by swim-up has been proposed as a way of preventing infection of uninfected female partners (Gilling-Smith et al., 2006; Savasi et al., 2007). These procedures were developed to separate virus-infected non-sperm cells and seminal plasma (in the density-gradient supernatant) from HIV-free, motile spermatozoa in the swim-up (from the density-gradient pellet). Prepared samples should be tested by reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) before use, and only HIV-free samples used for ART. While results so far are encouraging, there is as yet insufficient evidence of the elimination of risk of HIV infection through sperm preparation.

Note: This technique should be used only in secure facilities to minimize the risk of cross-contamination of HIV-free samples (Gilling-Smith et al., 2005).

5.7 Preparing testicular and epididymal spermatozoa

Spermatozoa recovered from testicular tissue and the epididymis require special preparation.

The typical indication for epididymal aspiration is obstructive azoospermia rather than testicular dysfunction. Consequently, relatively large numbers of spermatozoa can be harvested for therapeutic purposes. Epididymal aspirates can often be obtained with minimal contamination from red blood cells and non-germ cells, making the isolation and selection of motile epididymal spermatozoa relatively straightforward. If large numbers of epididymal spermatozoa are obtained, density-gradient centrifugation is an effective method of preparing them for subsequent use (see Section 5.5). If sperm numbers are low, a simple wash can be performed (see Section 5.3).

Testicular spermatozoa can be retrieved by open biopsy (with or without microdissection) or by percutaneous needle biopsy. Testicular specimens are invariably contaminated with non-germ cells and large numbers of red blood cells, so additional steps are needed to isolate a clean preparation of spermatozoa. In order to free the seminiferous tubule-bound elongated spermatids ("testicular spermatozoa"), enzymatic or mechanical methods are needed. Testicular spermatozoa are prepared for ICSI, since sperm numbers are low and their motility is poor.

5.7.1 Enzymatic method

1. Incubate the testicular tissue with collagenase (e.g. 0.8 mg of *Clostridium histolyticum*, type 1A per ml of medium) for 1.5–2 hours at 37 °C, vortexing every 30 minutes.
2. Centrifuge at 100*g* for 10 minutes and examine the pellet.

5.7.2 Mechanical method

1. Macerate the testicular tissue in culture medium with glass coverslips until a fine slurry of dissociated tissue is produced.
2. Alternatively, strip the cells from the seminiferous tubules using fine needles (attached to disposable tuberculin syringes) bent parallel to the base of the culture dish.

5.7.3 Processing sperm suspensions for intracytoplasmic sperm injection

1. Wash the specimens obtained by adding 1.5 ml of culture medium.
2. Centrifuge at 300*g* for 8–10 minutes.
3. Remove the supernatant and resuspend the pellet in 0.5 ml of fresh culture medium.
4. Estimate the motility and number of spermatozoa in the pellet. (Some specimens with a low number of spermatozoa may need to be resuspended in a lower volume of medium.)

5. Place a 5–10 μl droplet of culture medium in a culture dish.
6. Cover it with mineral oil (pre-equilibrated with CO_2).
7. Introduce 5–10 μl of the sperm suspension into the culture medium.
8. Carefully aspirate the motile spermatozoa found at the interface between the culture medium and oil with an ICSI pipette.
9. Transfer them to a droplet of viscous solution, e.g. polyvinylpyrrolidone (7–10% (100 g/l) in medium).

5.8 Preparing retrograde ejaculation samples

In some men, semen passes into the bladder at ejaculation, resulting in aspermia, or no apparent ejaculate. Confirmation of this situation is obtained by examining a sample of post-ejaculatory urine for the presence of spermatozoa. If pharmacological treatment is not possible or not successful, spermatozoa may be retrieved from the urine. Alkalinization of the urine by ingestion of sodium bicarbonate, for example, will increase the chance that any spermatozoa passing into the urine will retain their motility characteristics (Mahadevan et al., 1981).

At the laboratory, the man should be asked to:

- urinate without completely emptying the bladder;
- produce an ejaculate by masturbation into a specimen container;
- urinate again into a second specimen vessel containing culture medium (to alkalinize the urine further).

Both the ejaculate, if any, and urine samples should be analysed. Because a large volume of urine may be produced, it is often necessary to concentrate the specimen by centrifugation (500*g* for 8 minutes) The retrograde specimen, once concentrated, and the antegrade specimen, if produced, can be most effectively processed using the density-gradient preparation method (see Section 5.5).

5.9 Preparing assisted ejaculation samples

Semen from men with disturbed ejaculation, or who cannot ejaculate, may be collected by direct vibratory stimulation of the penis or rectal electrical stimulation of the accessory organs. Ejaculates from men with spinal cord injury will frequently have high sperm concentrations, decreased sperm motility and red and white blood cell contamination. Specimens obtained by electro-ejaculation can be processed most effectively by density-gradient centrifugation (see Section 5.5). Regardless of the method of preparation, these types of ejaculates will often contain a high percentage of immotile sperm cells.

CHAPTER 6 Cryopreservation of spermatozoa

6.1 Introduction

Cryopreservation of spermatozoa is an important part of the work of many semen analysis laboratories, particularly those associated with infertility clinics.

The history of human sperm cryobiology dates from the late 1940s. The discovery that glycerol protected spermatozoa against damage from freezing led to the use of human spermatozoa stored on dry ice at –79 °C (Polge et al., 1949; Bunge & Sherman, 1953; Bunge et al., 1954). Subsequently, liquid nitrogen was used and semen cryopreservation developed rapidly in many countries with the establishment of commercial sperm banks or coordinated national services (Perloff et al., 1964; David et al., 1980; Clarke et al., 1997; Leibo et al., 2002).

A variety of cryopreservation protocols are now used with different cryoprotectants and freezing procedures. Cell survival after freezing and thawing depends largely on minimization of intracellular ice crystal formation. This is done by using appropriate cryoprotectants and applying rates of cooling and warming that minimize the amount of intracellular water subject to ice formation (Sherman, 1990; Keel & Webster, 1993; Watson, 1995). If the spermatozoa spend significant periods of time above –130 °C (the glassy transition temperature), particularly during the thawing process, recrystallization can occur, with growth of potentially damaging intracellular ice crystals.

Human spermatozoa tolerate a range of cooling and warming rates. They are not very sensitive to damage caused by rapid initial cooling (cold shock), possibly because of high membrane fluidity from the unsaturated fatty acids in the lipid bilayer (Clarke et al., 2003). They may also be more resistant than other cells to cryopreservation damage because of their low water content (about 50%). However, cryopreservation does have an adverse effect on human sperm function, particularly motility. On average, only about 50% of the motile spermatozoa survive freezing and thawing (Keel & Webster, 1993). Optimizing the cryopreservation process will minimize this damage and may increase pregnancy rates (Woods et al., 2004).

Pregnancy rates after artificial insemination with cryopreserved donor semen are often related to sperm quality after thawing, timing of insemination and, particularly, recipient factors such as age, previous pregnancy with donor insemination, and ovulatory and uterine tubal disorders (Le Lannou & Lansac, 1993). If semen is stored under appropriate conditions, there is no obvious deterioration in sperm quality with time; children have been born following fertilization using semen stored for over 28 years (Feldschuh et al., 2005; Clarke et al., 2006).

Spermatozoa may be stored for a variety of reasons (see Box 6.1). In some cases, the cryopreservation procedure may need to be modified (see Section 6.2.2).

Box 6.1 Reasons for cryopreservation of spermatozoa

Donor semen

Semen from healthy donors known or presumed to be fertile may be stored for future use. These donors may be recruited by a clinic or sperm bank and their spermatozoa used anonymously. Alternatively, the recipients may know the donors. Donor spermatozoa can be used for AI, IUI, IVF or ICSI:

- for the partner of an infertile man with no live spermatozoa or elongated spermatids suitable for ICSI, or where treatment has failed or is too costly;
- to prevent transmission of an inherited disorder;
- to prevent fetal haemolytic anaemia from blood group incompatibility;
- after recurrent miscarriage, where donor insemination may result in a successful pregnancy;
- for women who wish to conceive, but do not have a male partner.

Local and national legislation regarding genetic and infection screening should always be complied with.

Fertility preservation

Semen may be obtained and stored before a man undergoes a procedure or exposure that might prevent or impair his fertility, such as:

- vasectomy (in case of a future change in marital situation or desire for more children);
- treatment with cytotoxic agents or radiotherapy, which is likely to impair spermatogenesis permanently (Meseguer et al., 2006; Schmidt et al., 2004);
- active duty in a dangerous occupation, e.g. in military forces, in countries where posthumous procreation is acceptable.

Infertility treatment

Spermatozoa may be stored for treatment of the man's partner by artificial insemination by husband's semen (AIH), IUI, IVF or ICSI, in cases of:

- severe oligozoospermia or intermittent presence of motile spermatozoa in the semen (as backup for ICSI) (Bourne et al., 1995);
- treatment of infertility that may not persist, such as surgery for genital tract obstruction or gonadotrophin treatment for hypothalamo-pituitary hypogonadism;
- the need for special collection, such as assisted ejaculation for patients with spinal cord injury, spermatozoa from retrograde ejaculation in urine, or surgical collection from the genital tract;
- men who are unable to provide fresh semen on the day of an ART procedure.

Minimizing infectious disease transmission

For men with HIV controlled by antiretroviral therapy, samples with an undetectable viral load may be stored for IUI, IVF or ICSI, to attempt conception while reducing the risk of transmission of HIV to the female partner.

Note 1: For fertility preservation or infertility treatment, enough normal specimens should be stored for 10 or more inseminations, to ensure a good chance of pregnancy. With abnormal semen, pooling of multiple samples for AIH has not been proven to be useful.

Note 2: As only a single spermatozoon is needed for ICSI of each oocyte, cryopreservation of any live spermatozoa is worthwhile.

Note 3: Storage of semen collected before a potentially sterilizing procedure often has significant psychological value, because it gives the hope of future paternity. For men about to undergo therapy with alkylating agents or radiotherapy, the semen must be collected before the therapy starts, because of the risk of mutagenesis in the spermatozoa. All males requiring chemo- or radiotherapy, including adolescents (Kamischke et al., 2004), should be offered the possibility of storage of spermatozoa.

The cryopreservation and subsequent storage of human spermatozoa is a highly complex process that places a special responsibility and potential liability on the laboratory staff. A comprehensive risk assessment is recommended (see Box 6.2).

Box 6.2 Risk assessment of cryopreservation and storage of human semen

In assessing the risks associated with cryopreservation and storage of semen, the following issues should be considered.

Resources

- Physical security of the vessels, specimens and storage room, to reduce risk of loss by theft or fire, or failure of cryopreservation straws, ampoules and vessels, or liquid nitrogen supply.
- Suitability of equipment for proposed use.
- System of containment and removal of nitrogen.

Staff safety and protection

- Personal protective equipment.
- Alarm systems for detection of low liquid nitrogen and low atmospheric oxygen levels.

Risk of cross-contamination

To reduce the risk of cross-contamination with infectious agents between samples in storage (e.g. transmission of HIV, or hepatitis B or C via a cryopreservation vessel), consider:

- type of storage container: vials or straws and method of sealing straws (heat or polymer);
- nature of storage: liquid nitrogen or vapour phase;
- protocol and method of storage of high-risk samples (samples known or suspected to contain viruses).

Security of frozen samples

- Split samples and store at different sites to reduce risk of total loss.
- Double-check identity of samples at each step.
- Use robust labelling and identifying codes.
- Have procedures for regular audit of use of material and samples remaining in storage.

Sources: Tedder, 1995; Mortimer, 2004; Gilling-Smith et al., 2005; Tomlinson, 2005.

Note 1: Storage in the vapour phase rather than in liquid nitrogen itself may reduce the chances of cross-contamination. However, large temperature gradients can exist in vapour storage vessels, depending on the shape, sample load and type of sample containers. In extreme cases, a temperature of less than –100 °C cannot be achieved (Tomlinson, 2005). If vapour phase storage is used, care is needed to ensure that the temperature of the samples does not go above –130 °C (the glassy transformation temperature) as this may result in damage to the spermatozoa (see Clarke, 1999).

Note 2: Secure straws made from heat-sealable ionomeric resin are available for storage in liquid nitrogen. These are leak-proof, bacteria- and virus-proof, and mechanically resistant at –196 °C (Mortimer, 2004; Gilling-Smith et al., 2005; Tomlinson, 2005).

6.2 Semen cryopreservation protocols

Several freezing and sperm bank management protocols are available (Mortimer, 2004; Wolf, 1995). Several cryoprotectants are available commercially. Details of a commonly used cryoprotectant, glycerol-egg-yolk-citrate (GEYC), and machine-controlled or vapour freezing are given below.

6.2.1 Standard procedure

6.2.1.1 Preparing the GEYC cryoprotectant

1. To 65 ml of sterile purified water add 1.5 g of glucose and 1.3 g of sodium citrate tribasic dihydrate.
2. Add 15 ml of glycerol and mix thoroughly.
3. Add 1.3 g of glycine. When dissolved, filter the solution through a 0.45-μm pore filter.
4. Add 20 ml of fresh egg yolk (preferably obtained from specific pathogen-free eggs): wash the egg and remove the shell. Pierce the membrane surrounding the yolk and take up into a syringe (approximately 10 ml of yolk will be obtained per egg).
5. Place the whole suspension in a water-bath at 56 °C for 40 minutes with occasional swirling.
6. Check the pH of the solution. If it is outside the range 6.8–7.2, discard the solution and prepare a new one, in case incorrect ingredients or amounts were added.
7. Bacterial culture for sterility testing can be performed at this stage.
8. Testing for sperm toxicity can be performed at this stage.
9. Dispense the solution in 2-ml aliquots in a sterile work cabinet and store at –70 °C.

10. Use within 3 months.

Cryoprotectants similar to GEYC are commercially available.

6.2.1.2 Adding cryoprotectant to semen

1. Thaw the cryoprotectant, warm to room temperature and mix. Initial warming to 37 °C may be beneficial.
2. High concentrations of glycerol are detrimental to spermatozoa. It is thus vital to take special care when adding and mixing the cryoprotectant with the semen.
3. Add one volume of GEYC to two volumes of semen, either drop by drop with swirling, or by gentle pipetting up and down, or gradually in five additions with gentle mixing over approximately 10 minutes at room temperature.
4. After the GEYC has been added, incubate the mixture at 30–35 °C for 5 minutes.

6.2.1.3 Filling semen straws

1. Plastic 0.5-ml straws are popular because of their heat transfer properties and ease of storage. Plastic vials may be used for storing larger volumes.
2. Aspirate the semen–GEYC mixture into 0.5 ml plastic semen straws or place in cryovials. Straws can be filled with a manifold on a vacuum device or an adaptor that fits over the end of the straw.

6.2.1.4 Sealing semen straws

Straws with an upper plug of dry polyvinyl alcohol powder held between two sections of cotton wool automatically seal when the semen makes contact with and polymerizes the powder.

1. Leave a 1-cm air space at the lower end by tapping the straw on the side of the container.
2. Close this end by dipping in sterile polyvinyl alcohol sealing powder and placing the straws in water to a depth of 1 cm.
3. Heat-sealing the straws may be preferable, as the powder seals may be permeable to infectious agents.
4. Alternatively, the samples may be stored in plastic vials or ampoules. They should be filled to not more than 90% of their capacity.
5. Wipe the outside of the container dry and then sterilize with 70% (v/v) alcohol or other microbial decontaminant.

6.2.1.5 Cooling and freezing the semen in programmable freezers

Programmable freezers are available that control the injection of liquid nitrogen vapour into the freezing chamber.

1. Place the straws or cryovials in a programmable freezer and follow the manufacturer's instructions to activate the programme.
2. A common programme is to cool the straws at 1.5 °C per minute from 20 °C to –6 °C and then at 6 °C per minute to –100 °C. This takes about 40 minutes. The machine will then hold the chamber at –100 °C for 30 minutes to allow for delays before the straws are transferred to liquid nitrogen.
3. Other, more complicated, procedures may be used, depending on experience in individual laboratories (Pérez-Sánchez et al., 1994).

6.2.1.6 Cooling and freezing the semen manually

Manual methods are less controllable than programmable freezers but can give adequate results. There are many alternatives to this procedure.

1. Place the straws in a refrigerator freezer (–20 °C) for 30 minutes, then on dry ice (–79 °C) for 30 minutes before placing in liquid nitrogen (–196 °C).
2. The straws may be moved from the –20 °C freezer into another freezer at –70 °C, or into a basket or goblet in a mixture of liquid nitrogen vapour and air in the neck of a small liquid nitrogen container at –80 °C to –100 °C for 10–15 minutes, before being placed in liquid nitrogen. They can also be placed on a rack 10–20 cm above liquid nitrogen in a large container, and left for 1 hour to develop a temperature gradient above the liquid nitrogen.

6.2.1.7 Storage of frozen semen

1. Place the frozen straws in plastic storage tubes (mini-goblets) and insert these in larger storage goblets.
2. Place cryovials in clips on metal canes or in storage boxes that fit into the storage tanks, preferably in the vapour phase, because cryovial lids do not provide a complete seal.
3. Store the goblets with the straws or wands in liquid nitrogen vacuum (Dewar) flasks or tanks.

6.2.1.8 Transport of frozen semen

Frozen spermatozoa can be transported in commercially available dry shipper tanks cooled with liquid nitrogen. Depending on the size of the shipper, suitably low temperatures can be maintained for several days to several weeks, as the liquid nitrogen evaporates.

Note: Ensure that local, national and international regulations on shipping liquid nitrogen and human biological samples are complied with.

6.2.1.9 Thawing of frozen semen

1. Before use, remove as many straws as required from the liquid nitrogen or vapour tank and place them on tissue paper or in a rack to allow them to reach

room temperature (this takes about 6 minutes). Cryovials take longer to thaw (10–20 minutes).

2. Within 10 minutes, cut off the end of the straw with sterile scissors and load the insemination device (for therapeutic use) or expel the contents to determine post-thaw motility (for checking the freezing process).
3. More rapid thawing may be better if the freezing process is rapid (Verheyen et al., 1993).
4. Removing cryoprotectant by sequential dilution in small-volume steps avoids undue osmotic stresses (Gao et al., 1995) and may improve pregnancy results.

6.2.2 Modified freezing protocols for oligozoospermic samples and surgically retrieved spermatozoa

- Semen that contains only a few motile spermatozoa, and sperm suspensions obtained from the genital tract, can be stored for subsequent ICSI.
- If necessary, centrifuge the semen at 1500*g* for 10 minutes to concentrate the spermatozoa into a minimum volume of about 0.4 ml. Add GEYC and process as described above.
- Epididymal fluid, testicular extracts or other sperm suspensions processed in the laboratory by swim-up or centrifugation on density gradients (see Sections 5.4 and 5.5) and resuspended in a sperm preparation medium with Hepes buffer and human serum albumin 4 mg/ml can be cryopreserved with Tyrode's glucose glycerol (TGG) cryoprotectant, or a commercial cryoprotectant containing human albumin.

6.2.2.1 Modified cryoprotectant (TGG)

1. To 40 ml of sterile Tyrode's solution (see Appendix 4, section A4.9) add 5 ml of sterile human albumin stock (100 mg/ml), 0.9 g of glucose and 5 ml of glycerol. Filter the solution through a 0.45-μm pore filter.
2. Store in 2-ml aliquots at –70 °C.

6.2.2.2 Procedure

1. If the sample volume is greater than 2.0 ml, and if few motile spermatozoa are present, centrifuge at 1500*g* for 5 minutes at room temperature.
2. Aspirate the supernatant to leave about 1.0 ml and resuspend the spermatozoa in it. Determine the percentage of motile spermatozoa (PR + NP); if very few motile spermatozoa are present, estimate the number of motile cells under each coverslip.
3. Thaw a 2-ml aliquot of TGG.
4. Add one volume of TGG to one volume of final sperm preparation, gradually, with mixing.

5. Package in straws or cryovials and freeze as above. If any straws are not full, cap the mini-goblet to prevent the straws from floating when frozen.

6.2.3 Labelling of straws and records

A robust coding system for labelling straws or vials is essential. Use the code in all laboratory data sheets and computer databases to maintain the anonymity of donors. Keep the key to the code with the identity of the donor separately and securely. There are many potential coding systems; the important requirement is to have a unique code for each donor or storage client. The following coding system works satisfactorily.

- Each new anonymous donor is allocated a two letter code (AA, AB, AC ... BA ... etc., ending with ZZ, after which a new method is needed).
- A three-letter code system is used for patients and known donors: AAA, AAB, etc.
- Each specimen from a particular donor is indicated by a number following his personal code. For example, the eighth donation given by donor BT is labelled BT-8.
- The letter code and specimen number should be written on each straw or vial using a black indelible marker. Alternatively, use a printed label designed for use in liquid nitrogen.
- The mini-goblet in which the straws are stored should also contain a marker stick with the code and specimen number.
- Colour-coding of goblets, mini-goblets, straws and sealing powder is also useful for rapid identification.
- As the stored spermatozoa are used the tally of straws or vials is adjusted in the database.

Note: All procedures involving the identity of donor or patient samples, including receipt of samples, preparation and labelling of straws, placement in tanks and thawing of straws for use or discarding, should be double-checked by two people and evidence of this checking witnessed in the laboratory records. Ideally a technician should process only one semen sample at any given time.

PART III.

Quality assurance

CHAPTER 7 Quality assurance and quality control

7.1 Controlling for quality in the andrology laboratory

Andrology laboratories need to produce reliable results for appropriate diagnostic and health care decisions. Since semen analysis is highly complex and procedurally difficult to standardize, quality control (QC) is essential to detect and correct systematic errors and high variability of results. The large discrepancies between assessments of sperm concentration and morphology in different laboratories (Neuwinger et al., 1990; Matson, 1995; Cooper et al., 1999, 2002) underline the need for improved QC and standardization.

Whatever its size, each laboratory should implement a quality assurance (QA) programme, based on standardized methods and procedures, to ensure that results are both accurate and precise (De Jonge, 2000; Mortimer & Mortimer, 2005). In some countries, QA programmes are required by law, in others, by accreditation bodies or health insurance systems. In certain settings, the available resources may not permit full implementation of the procedures described here. Nevertheless, the fundamental parameters of sperm concentration, morphology and motility should always be monitored by internal quality control and, where possible, by external quality control.

There are several books describing quality control (e.g. Wheeler & Chambers, 1992; Wheeler, 1993) and some specializing in laboratory quality control that provide a more in-depth description of the QC process (e.g. Cembrowski & Carey, 1989; Carey & Lloyd, 1995; Westgard, 2002). QC activities performed within one laboratory are referred to as internal quality control (IQC) (see Section 7.6). External quality control (EQC) is the evaluation of results from several laboratories for the same samples (see Section 7.11).

7.2 The nature of errors in semen analysis

The management of QC procedures requires an understanding of the source and magnitude of measurement errors. Any measurement has a degree of error, the magnitude of which is described by a confidence interval with an upper and a lower limit. A precise measurement is one in which the limits lie close together; a result is accurate when it is close to the true value. There are two classes of error: random and systematic. Random errors, which affect precision, arise from chance differences in readings or sampling, and can be assessed from repeated measurements by the same observer and equipment. Systematic errors (sometimes referred to as bias) are more insidious, since they arise from factors that alter the result in one direction only, and thus cannot be detected from repeated measurements.

Even when the sample is well mixed, the random distribution of spermatozoa in semen, or in fixative or medium, accounts for much of the lack of precision of the results of semen analysis. The assessment of sperm concentration, motility, vitality and morphology involves counting a limited number of spermatozoa, which are presumed to be representative of the whole sample. The sampling variation created by selecting either a fixed volume (for estimating concentration) or a fixed number of spermatozoa (for classifying motility, morphology or vitality) is a random

error commonly referred to as the statistical or sampling error. Some terminology in this area is given in Box 7.1. Further errors may be introduced when the sample is mixed or aliquots are removed; these can be minimized by improving technique (see Section 7.13).

The aim of quality control in routine semen analysis is to monitor the extent of both random and systematic errors and reduce it where possible. All these errors need to be minimized for the results to be believable and of use to clinicians and researchers.

7.3 Minimizing statistical sampling error

While sampling error can be reduced by assessing greater numbers of spermatozoa (see Table 2.2 and Boxes 2.5 and 2.7), a balance must be struck between the gain in statistical precision, the actual time required to gain it, and the possible loss of accuracy in the technician's work due to fatigue. Using 95% confidence intervals for assessing the acceptability of replicates means that, for about 5% of samples, differences greater than 1.96 × standard error will occur as a result of chance variation alone, and the measurement will have been repeated unnecessarily. This additional work may be acceptable; alternatively, wider limits (2.6 × or 3 × standard error) could be chosen to reduce the frequency of this event (to approximately 1% and 0.2%, respectively).

Box 7.1 Terminology in quality assurance and quality control

accuracy	Closeness of the agreement of a test result with the true value.
assigned value	Estimate of true value, often derived from the mean of results from a number of laboratories (target value, consensus value, conventional true value).
bias	The deviation of a test result from the assigned value. Reproducible inaccuracies that are consistently in the same direction (systematic error).
binomial distribution	A theoretical distribution used to model events falling into two categories, e.g. motile/immotile, viable/non-viable.
Bland–Altman plot	A plot of the difference between a series of paired observations against their mean value.
common cause variation	A source of natural variation that affects all individual values of the process being studied.
95% confidence interval	An interval calculated from observed data that includes the true value in 95% of replicates (mean ± 1.96 × SE or $N \pm 1.96 \times \sqrt{N}$ for counts).
consensus value	*see* assigned value.
conventional true value	*see* assigned value.
control chart	A time-sequence chart showing a series of individual measurements, together with a central line and control limits.
control limits	The maximum allowable variation of a process due to common causes alone. Variation beyond a control limit is evidence that special causes may be affecting the process.
drift	Successive small changes in values leading to a change in accuracy with time.

external quality control	Quality tests performed by an external body that makes comparisons between different laboratories for several procedures. Useful for detecting systematic variation and assessing accuracy.
good laboratory practice (GLP)	A set of principles that provides a framework within which laboratory studies are planned, performed, monitored, recorded, reported and archived.
in control	A process is in control when all values are within expected control limits.
internal quality control	Quality tests measuring the variability in a procedure that exists within a laboratory. Such tests evaluate the precision of day-to-day operations. Useful for detecting random variation (assessing precision).
ISO	International Organization for Standardization. A body that sets international standards, including for laboratory quality.
manufactured QC samples	Commercially available samples, manufactured and analysed (assayed) according to manufacturing guidelines.
out of control	A process is out of control when a measured value exceeds expected control limits, or is within control limits but shows a significant trend in values. A process that is out of control must be evaluated.
PDCA	Plan, do, check, act (Shewhart cycle).
Poisson distribution	A theoretical distribution used to model counts.
precision	Closeness of agreement between replicate measurements. Commonly expressed as imprecision (drift; within-, between-, inter- /run, batch, assay, or laboratory variation). Measurements of precision are not affected by bias (*see also* sampling error).
precision error	*see* sampling error.
random error	*see* sampling error.
S chart	A control chart of standard deviations of measured values against time. It is used to monitor process uniformity and measurement precision.
sampling error	The error involved in counting a limited number of spermatozoa; it is inversely proportional to the square root of the number counted. The sampling error (%SE) is the standard error of a count ($\sqrt{N}$) expressed as a percentage of the count ($100 \times (\sqrt{N}/N)$). (random error, precision error, statistical sampling error).
Shewhart cycle	*see* PDCA.
special cause variation	A source of variation that is large, intermittent or unpredictable, affecting only some of the individual values of the process being studied (random variation).
standard operating procedures	Set of instructions for how processes and methods should be carried out.
statistical sampling error	*see* sampling error.
systematic error	*see* bias.
target value	*see* assigned value.
variation	The difference between individual results of a process. The cause of variation (error) can be common or special.
X_{bar} chart	A control chart showing means of measured values against time. It is used to monitor process variability and detect changes from the target values (assessing accuracy).
Youden plot	A graph of values from one sample plotted against another.

7.4 The quality assurance programme

The best way to achieve acceptable results is to develop and implement a continuous QA programme. A QA programme monitors and evaluates, on a regular basis, the quality and appropriateness of the data and services that the laboratory provides. Management, administration, statistical analysis, and preventive and corrective action form the core of the QA plan. Continuous monitoring not only detects and corrects problems, but also helps prevent them.

The QA programme should be described in a quality manual (QM) containing standard operating procedures (SOPs) and a detailed set of instructions for the different processes and methods used in the laboratory. Linked to these instructions are a number of forms and documents, such as referral notes, laboratory worksheet report forms, and information leaflets to clients and referring clinicians. The QM describes the organizational structure of the laboratory, listing the required skills (training) needed in different positions (job descriptions), as well as schedules for meetings between testing personnel and supervisors, and plans for continuous education, development and training of staff.

7.5 Laboratory procedures manual

The written SOPs should be strictly followed by all laboratory technicians. They are also useful for training and are an important reference for non-routine procedures and for troubleshooting processes that are not producing acceptable results.

These protocols include referral notes, patient information procedures, schedules of patient appointments, performance of assays, reporting of analytical results, training of new laboratory staff members, testing and monitoring of equipment, use of control charts and procedures to follow when values on these charts indicate a problem (out-of-control assays). SOPs should cover procedures for checking that all equipment is in proper operating condition, including routine checking of operation, a schedule and log of calibration, and documentation on the maintenance of scientific equipment, such as microscopes, centrifuges, pipettes, balances, freezers, refrigerators and emergency equipment (e.g. eye washes and showers). The basic method is to keep a log book for each piece of equipment, in which all adjustments and calibrations are recorded. These records are useful if a laboratory procedure starts producing out-of-control results.

7.6 Internal quality control

Internal quality control (IQC) monitors precision and indicates, through results outside the control limits, when the assay may be faulty. The QC procedure used depends on the assessment to be controlled, since different assessments are sensitive to different types of errors. Assessments that involve dilution, pipetting and reuse of chambers require regular testing, whereas an assessment of a fixed slide or videotape may be tested less often, as there are fewer steps where errors can occur.

A practical way to implement IQC is to include IQC materials in the laboratory's regular workload and to monitor the results for these materials using quality control charts. In this way, IQC becomes part of the laboratory routine and is conducted according to local or regional standards. It is important that QC samples are analysed as part of routine laboratory work and not treated in a special way, which could provide a more precise and accurate result than that for routine samples. The types of IQC material used to monitor within- and between-technician variation can be purchased or made in the laboratory; there are advantages and disadvantages of each approach.

7.6.1 Purchased QC samples

Commercially available IQC samples are provided with a mean and known extent of variation established for that product. The advantage of these is that both accuracy and precision can be evaluated. The variation in semen analysis results in the laboratory can be compared with the variation associated with samples from the approved source. With such samples, the laboratory should establish its own control chart for assessing precision and should use the manufacturer's recommended range for evaluating accuracy (Westgard, 2002). The disadvantages of purchased IQC samples are their cost and the fact that they are not universally available. A note should be made of how the target values given by the manufacturer were obtained (multiple assessments, computer-aided sperm analysis, consensus values, trimmed means, etc.).

7.6.2 Laboratory-made QC samples

The advantages of laboratory-produced IQC samples are the reduced costs and the fact that the samples can be generated specifically for the laboratory's particular needs. Many samples, covering a broad range of results, can be prepared and stored for long periods. Their disadvantage is that the target values are unknown. It is recommended, and sometimes required, that there be control samples for evaluating an average range of values (e.g. sperm concentration 50×10^6 per ml) as well as a critical range of values (e.g. sperm concentrations $<15 \times 10^6$ per ml).

7.6.3 Stored samples (purchased or laboratory-made)

Stored semen samples can be used in IQC programmes for assessing sperm concentration, sperm motility, sperm morphology and sperm vitality. These have the advantage that the target value is known (for purchased samples), or provided (by EQC programmes) or estimated from multiple assessments (for laboratory-produced material), so that systematic errors can be detected from repeated measurements.

7.6.3.1 Sperm concentration

Semen samples of varying sperm concentrations can be diluted and stored. Several specimens may be pooled to achieve a certain concentration or a larger volume of diluted suspension, but sperm agglutination may occur.

See Appendix 7, section A7.6, for instructions on preparing and storing non-agglutinated sperm suspensions for IQC of measurement of sperm concentration.

7.6.3.2 Sperm morphology and vitality

For morphology, slides of air-dried, fixed semen smears (see Section 2.13.2.1) or fixed and stained semen smears (see Section 2.14), and for vitality, eosin–nigrosin smears (see Section 2.6.1) can be used. Smears should be chosen from the laboratory's routine samples, with identifying codes masked. Samples should be prepared from semen of good, medium and poor quality. The slides can be reused; once they begin to deteriorate, new ones should be prepared. It is best to use a range of slides to eliminate the possibility of technicians becoming familiar with certain slides, which may result in biased analyses.

See Appendix 7, section A7.7, on how to prepare slides for QC of morphology assessment. If slides are prepared and stored properly, they remain stable for many months or even years. Different slide sets can be alternated or overlapped with each other during transition from one QC set to another.

7.6.3.3 Sperm motility

Video-recorded specimens on tape, CD or DVD, from the clinic, from EQC distributions, or specifically made, can be used for QC. Video-recordings should be of a magnification similar to that observed in the microscope when actual specimens are analysed. The use of a television camera and screen for all daily routine assessments, at the same magnification and contrast as the video-recordings, increases the validity of video-recordings for QC.

See Appendix 7, section A7.5, on how to make video recordings for QC of motility measurements.

7.6.4 Fresh QC samples (laboratory-made)

A simple method of IQC is for one or more technicians to make replicate measurements on separate aliquots of a semen sample. The replicate assessments should be performed in the same way as routine semen analyses. This form of QC can be applied to assessments of sperm concentration, sperm motility, sperm morphology and sperm vitality. The subjective nature of assessments of agglutination and aggregation, and the variability of the mixed antiglobulin reaction test (Bohring & Krause, 1999), together with the need for live gametes and positive controls, make QC for these assays difficult.

The IQC of measurement of sperm motility in fresh samples presents special problems, since motility may decline over time, and thus needs to be assessed first—and at about the same time—by all the technicians. Slide and coverslip preparations for motility are stable for only a few minutes, so fixed-depth chambers, which are stable for 30 minutes, can also be used. Use of a bridge microscope, or a microscope with a video camera linked to a screen, allows several technicians to assess the same field from the same preparation at the same time. An acetate grid can be placed over the monitor to mimic the ocular grid used during live motility analysis (see Appendix 7, section A7.5).

Laboratories using CASA systems should follow the manufacturers' procedures for conducting quality control. This often involves replaying stored images of moving spermatozoa that are marked as swimming at certain velocities.

7.7 Statistical procedures for analysing and reporting within- and among-technician systematic errors

The creation and interpretation of control charts are an integral part of quality assurance in the laboratory. Which QC systems are used depends on the nature of the problem and of the material available.

7.7.1 The X_{bar} chart

The X_{bar} chart is designed primarily to detect results that are very different from the target value, or an overall increase in variation. Systematic errors can be detected by sequential measurement of the same samples. Repeated measurements are made on a sample and the mean values plotted against time. Stored samples need to be used as the procedure depends on knowing the true or target value, which may be provided by the manufacturer (purchased samples), or an EQC programme, or estimated (from multiple assessments of the material).

Comment: The X_{bar} chart is less sensitive than the *S* chart in detecting whether technicians are producing highly variable results (see Section 7.7.2). To check variability, the range of values for each QC sample can be monitored on an *S* chart in a similar way to the X_{bar} chart, with warning and action limits set accordingly.

7.7.1.1 Calculating the control limits of the X_{bar} chart

A series of QC samples from the same IQC preparation is measured sequentially. After the first 10 samples have been analysed, the control limits are calculated for each technician. These depict the range for repeated measurements on a sample, for a specific procedure performed by the same analysts. The estimates of the mean and the standard deviation are recomputed after every 10 samples and the control limits updated using the new values for X_{bar} and S_{bar}, provided there have been no problems with QC. Before the QC samples run out, a new pool should be prepared and the first 10 samples of the new batch analysed together with the remaining samples of the old batch to establish the new control limits. The factors used to compute the control limits are given in Table 7.1 and worked examples are shown in Boxes 7.2 and 7.3.

Table 7.1 Factors for determining control limits for X_{bar} charts and S charts based on the average standard deviation (S_{bar})

		X_{bar} control limits		S_{bar} control limits			
No. of technicians (n)	SD estimate (c_n)	Warning limit (A_2)	Action limit (A_3)	Lower action limit ($s_{0.999}$)	Lower warning limit ($s_{0.975}$)	Upper warning limit ($s_{0.025}$)	Upper action limit ($s_{0.001}$)
2	1.253	1.772	2.659	0.002	0.039	2.809	4.124
3	1.128	1.303	1.954	0.036	0.180	2.167	2.966
4	1.085	1.085	1.628	0.098	0.291	1.916	2.527
5	1.064	0.952	1.427	0.160	0.370	1.776	2.286
6	1.051	0.858	1.287	0.215	0.428	1.684	2.129
7	1.042	0.788	1.182	0.263	0.473	1.618	2.017
8	1.036	0.733	1.099	0.303	0.509	1.567	1.932
9	1.032	0.688	1.032	0.338	0.539	1.527	1.864
10	1.028	0.650	0.975	0.368	0.563	1.495	1.809

Box 7.2 Determining the values for the warning and action control limits of an X_{bar} chart

The table below shows the sperm concentrations measured by four technicians on 10 QC samples from the same IQC preparation, together with the calculated mean and standard deviation for each sample.

Sample:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
	Sperm concentration (10^6 per ml)									
Technician A:	38	35	40	34	38	36	44	43	39	43
Technician B:	42	36	42	40	40	40	43	43	46	40
Technician C:	38	43	40	51	38	33	39	45	35	39
Technician D:	34	36	36	37	36	39	42	43	46	34
Mean	38.0	37.5	39.5	40.5	38.0	37.0	42.0	43.5	41.5	39.0
SD	3.27	3.70	2.52	7.42	1.63	3.16	2.16	1.00	5.45	3.74

For the 10 QC samples, the average of the means (X_{bar}) is:
$(38.0+37.5+...+39.0)/10 = 39.7$, and the average of the SDs (S_{bar}) is:
$(3.27+3.70+...+3.74)/10 = 3.40$.

The values of the coefficients $A_{2,n}$ and $A_{3,n}$ (see Table 7.1) for $n = 4$ are 1.085 and 1.628, respectively. Thus the warning control limits (two standard errors from the mean) are given by:

$X_{bar} \pm A_{2,n} \times S_{bar} = 39.7 \pm (1.085 \times 3.40) = 39.7 \pm 3.7$, or 36.0 and 43.3×10^6 per ml.

Similarly, the action control limits (three standard errors from the mean) are given by:

$X_{bar} \pm A_{3,n} \times S_{bar} = 39.7 \pm (1.628 \times 3.40) = 39.7 \pm 5.5$, or 34.2 and 45.2×10^6 per ml.

Box 7.3 Alternative method for calculating the X_{bar} control limits from the pooled standard deviation

The estimate of between-technician standard deviation can also be obtained by multiplying S_{bar} by c_n (= 1.085 for sample size 4 (Table 7.1)) to give 3.69. This is close to the directly computed value of 3.84 of the pooled standard deviation, $s = \sqrt{((s_1^2 + s_2^2 + \ldots + s_{10}^2)/10)}$, where s_i is the standard deviation of the ith QC sample. This result can be used to compute the warning and action control limits directly, at 2 and 3 standard errors ($s/\sqrt{n}$) either side of the mean. In this example, these warning limits are 35.8 and 43.5×10^6 per ml, and the action limits are 33.9 and 45.5×10^6 per ml, respectively—very close to those obtained using S_{bar}, $A_{2,n}$ and $A_{3,n}$.

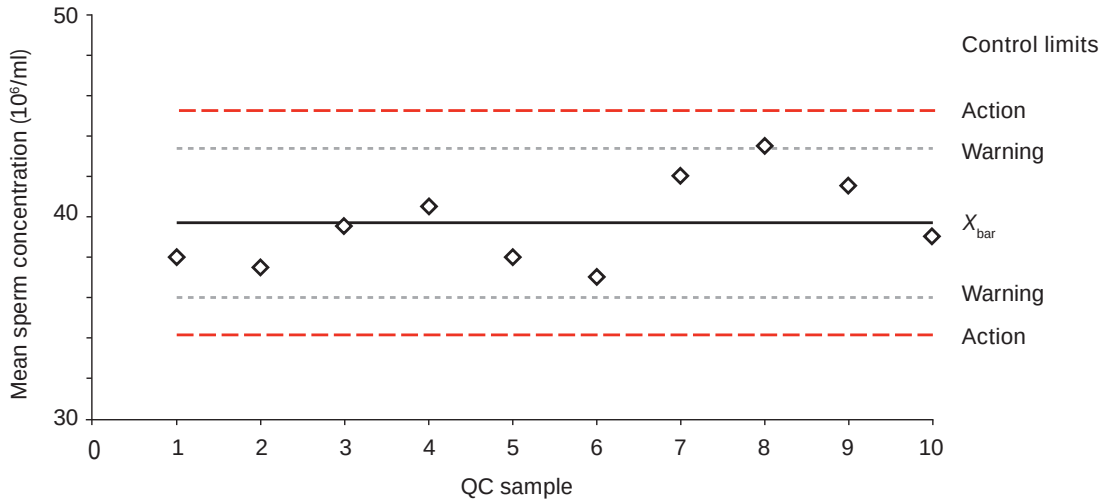
7.7.1.2 Plotting the X_{bar} chart

Each technician should analyse the IQC samples and contribute to the IQC control chart. Once an assay procedure is in place with acceptable variation, IQC samples should be analysed routinely and results compared with the established values. This is done by plotting the mean values measured for the IQC samples in each assay on the control chart and observing if they lie outside the variability (error) determined for the method in the laboratory. See Fig. 7.1 for an example.

X_{bar} charts can be constructed, and warning and action limits set, for the assessment of sperm motility, morphology and vitality, following the steps outlined for sperm concentration, with the difference that percentages are assessed (see Section 7.8).

Fig. 7.1 An X_{bar} chart for sperm concentration

The mean values for sequential measurements (◇) are plotted on a graph showing the previously measured target value (X_{bar}) and the warning and action limits.



7.7.2 The *S* chart

This chart detects whether technicians are producing highly variable results. Repeated measurements are done and the standard deviations plotted against time. Since the QC samples are all from the same stored pool, no differences between samples are expected, so any significant differences between technicians would suggest systematic bias in the assessment by one or more technicians.

7.7.2.1 Calculating the S chart control limits

Control limits are added to the *S* chart in the same way as for X_{bar} charts. However, since the distribution of the standard deviation is not symmetrical, the warning and action limits are chosen in such a way that the probability that a new observation falls outside the control limits is the same as for the X_{bar} chart if there are no changes in accuracy or precision. Thus, the warning and action limits will be crossed in 5% and 0.2%, respectively, of future samples as a result of random variation alone. These limits are determined from the χ^2 distribution, and the factors $s_{\alpha,n}$ used to multiply the average standard deviation S_{bar} are given in Table 7.1. A worked example is shown in Box 7.4. Results that fall below the lower limits on the *S* chart suggest unexpectedly small variation, which may indicate a genuine improvement in the level of agreement between technicians, or possible collusion.

Box 7.4 Determining the vaues for the warning and action control limits of an *S* chart

Using the results from Box 7.2, the average sample standard deviation S_{bar} is 3.40×10^6 per ml.

The values for $s_{\alpha,n}$ for $n = 4$ are read from Table 7.1 to give:

the lower action limit	$S_{bar} \times s_{0.999,4} = 3.40 \times 0.098 = 0.33 \times 10^6$ per ml,
the lower warning limit	$S_{bar} \times s_{0.975,4} = 3.40 \times 0.291 = 0.99 \times 10^6$ per ml,
the upper warning limit	$S_{bar} \times s_{0.025,4} = 3.40 \times 1.916 = 6.51 \times 10^6$ per ml, and
the upper action limit	$S_{bar} \times s_{0.001,4} = 3.40 \times 2.527 = 8.59 \times 10^6$ per ml.

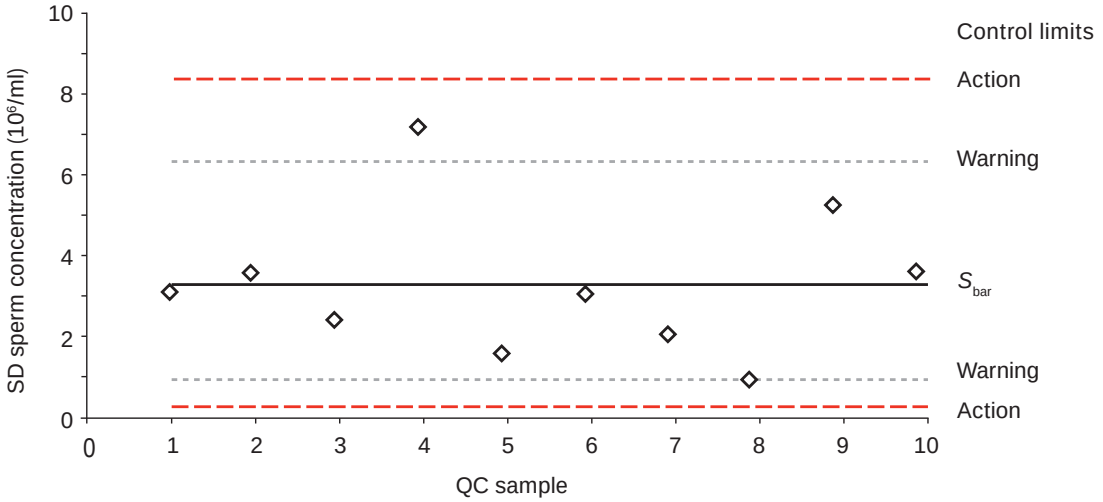
7.7.2.2 Plotting the S chart

Subsequent values for standard deviation are plotted on the control chart to determine whether they lie outside the variability (error) determined for the method in the laboratory. See Fig. 7.2 for an example.

S charts can be constructed, and warning and action limits set, for the assessment of sperm motility, morphology and vitality, following the steps outlined for sperm concentration, with the difference that percentages are assessed (see Section 7.8).

Fig. 7.2 An *S* chart for sperm concentration

The standard deviations for sequential measurements (◇) are plotted on a graph showing the previously measured mean value (S_{bar}) and the warning and action limits.



7.8 QC for percentages

When spermatozoa are classified into two or more classes (such as normal or abnormal morphology, progressive or non-progressive motility, alive or dead), the standard error of the estimated percentage within a class depends on the true, but unknown, percentage as well as the number of spermatozoa counted (*N*). The common approximate estimation of standard error of a proportion, *p,* is $\sqrt{(p(100–p)/N)}$ for values in the range 20% to 80%. Outside this range, a more appropriate method to use is the angular transformation (arc sin square root), $z = \sin^{-1}\sqrt{(p/100)}$, for which the standard deviation is $1/(2\sqrt{N})$ radians, i.e. dependent only on the number of spermatozoa counted and not the true percentage (see Kuster et al., 2004).

While the standard deviation of individual readings should be close to these values, the average standard deviation (S_{bar}) will exceed 2.5%, because of the additional variation between technicians. In this case the goal will be to reduce S_{bar}.

7.9 Assessing $\bar{X}_{bar}$ and *S* charts

The technicians and laboratory supervisor should review the control charts together. If the control values are not acceptable, a systematic evaluation of the entire procedure should be conducted to determine the possible sources of variation.

7.9.1 How to recognize out-of-control values

There are basic guidelines for monitoring quality control of procedures. The QC charts should be examined in the light of these guidelines, and action taken when indicated. There are various rules for declaring a method to be out of control, including the following:

- A single point lies outside the 3 SD control limits. This is the simplest rule, and appears to be universally adopted. It may indicate a sudden large shift in the process.
- Two out of three consecutive points lie outside the action control limits.
- Four out of five consecutive points lie outside the warning control limits.
- Two consecutive results lie above the upper, or below the lower, warning control limits.
- Two consecutive results lie one above the upper, and one below the lower, warning control limit.
- Eight consecutive points are on the same side of the centre line. This rule is attractive because it is simple to apply and is sensitive to gradual shifts or trends that the first rule might miss.

In practice, use of the first and last of these rules is generally accepted. If the QC sample is "rejected", the sensitivity of the alarm to the different types of error (random or systematic) should direct the investigation into possible causes (see Box 7.5). The laboratory supervisor should review the QC results regularly.

Box 7.5 Basic control rules for QC charts

Control rule	Error indicated
One result outside action limits	Random
Two out of three points outside the action control limits	Systematic
Four out of five points outside the warning control limits	Systematic
Two consecutive results, both above or both below the upper/lower warning limits	Systematic
Two consecutive results, one above and one below the upper/lower warning limit	Random
Eight consecutive results, all above or all below the mean	Systematic

7.9.2 Causes of out-of-control values

Signals from the QC procedure must be carefully assessed and any procedural errors identified. Possible errors include:

- inadequate mixing of sample (common with viscous and agglutinated samples);
- technician stress (e.g. erratic sampling or recording error);
- poor technique (e.g. careless pipetting or handling during slide or chamber preparation) (see Section 7.13);
- inadequate training (e.g. systematic differences in the identification of spermatozoa for counting, the classification of normal morphology, the assessment of pink and white sperm heads or coiled sperm tails for sperm vitality, and the detection of motile spermatozoa; biases from consistent calculation errors) (see Section 7.13);

- instrument variation (e.g. worn or uncalibrated automatic pipettes, which may reduce reproducibility during sampling and dilution; misaligned microscopes, which may reduce optical clarity and prevent proper scoring of vitality or morphology; inaccurate balances or measuring cylinders) (see Appendix 7, section A7.8);
- deterioration of the QC samples;
- change in equipment, particularly pipettes and counting chambers;
- change in procedures or laboratory environment.

7.9.3 Responses to out-of-control values

When results are outside control limits, the probable cause and the corrective action taken should be recorded. If the problem is not obvious, reanalyse the QC samples to check if the first result was unusual. If the QC result remains outside control limits, the cause must be found and corrected before further assays are performed.

To do this:

- Create a flowchart of the entire process, step by step. The SOP and Tables 7.2–7.5 can aid this process.
- From the flow chart, identify areas of potential variation, deduce possible causes and develop a plan to reduce the variation.
- Collect more data, make new control charts and review them to determine if the variability is acceptable for the procedure. This sequence of identifying a problem, developing and testing a hypothesis, and re-evaluating the process is known as the Shewhart or PDCA (plan, do, check, act) cycle.

7.10 Statistical procedures for analysing and reporting among-technician variability

QC procedures based on the assessment of fresh semen samples are similar to those for stored samples and allow the variability within and among technicians to be assessed. However, as the true value is not known, the X_{bar} chart cannot be used, and systematic error (technician bias) cannot be estimated. Here, the primary QC procedures are the *S* chart for assessing variability among technicians, and two-way analysis of variance (ANOVA) for assessing systematic differences among technicians after every five or 10 QC samples.

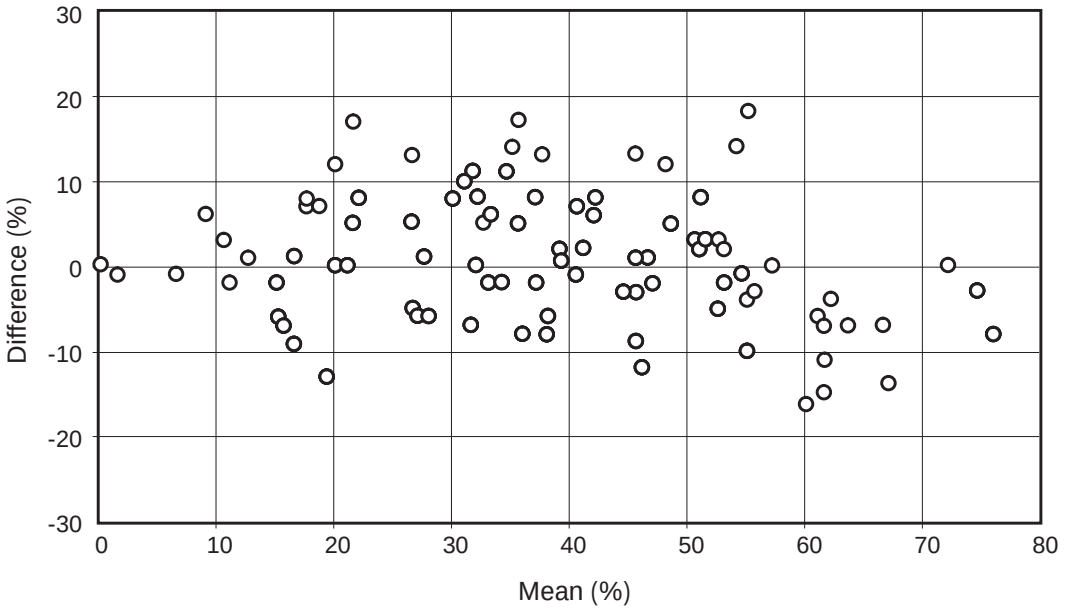
7.10.1 Comparing results from two or more technicians

Results from two or more technicians can be compared in several ways.

- *Plotting the difference between two estimates against their mean* (Bland & Altman, 1986). A comparison of estimates by two technicians of sperm concentration from the same sample should produce a pattern similar to that in Fig. 7.3, where estimates of sperm motility by a technician and a computer are compared.

Fig. 7.3 A Bland–Altman plot of manual and CASA estimates of percentage progressive sperm motility

The graph plots the difference between results with the two methods (manual – CASA) against the mean ((manual + CASA)/2).

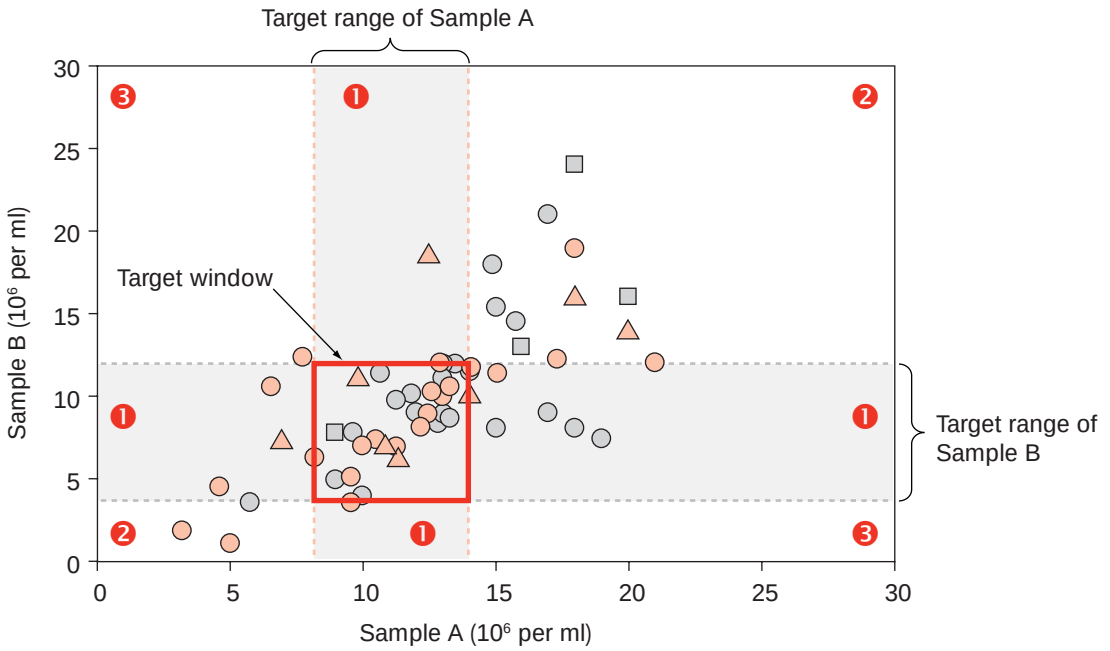


Data courtesy of HWG Baker.

- *Calculating the mean and SD of the differences (paired comparisons).* As the same sample is analysed by both technicians, the difference between means should be zero. Any significant difference from zero, as assessed by a paired *t*-test, reveals bias (systematic difference) between the two technicians.
- *Plotting results from two samples against each other (Youden plots).* A comparison of estimates of concentration by several technicians, each examining two separate specimens, should produce a pattern similar to that in Fig. 7.4. For each technician (for IQC) or each centre (for EQC), the values for the two specimens are plotted against each other. The dotted horizontal and vertical lines indicate the 95% confidence limits of results from experienced technicians (IQC) or reference laboratories (EQC). The area defined by the intersection of these lines is the target window into which the values should fall. This plot reveals random errors when the value for one sample is in the correct range but the value for the other sample is not (marked 1) and systematic errors when both sample estimates are too high (top right panel, marked 2) or too low (lower left panel, marked 2). Random errors most likely contribute to one sample being too low and the other too high (marked 3).

Fig. 7.4 A Youden plot of estimates of the concentration of spermatozoa

Results from analyses of two samples (A, B) by several technicians, plotted against each other. The results for each technician (or laboratory in EQC) can be shown by different symbols and colours. Results in panels marked ❷ are likely to be due to systematic errors, while those in panels marked ❶ and ❸ are likely to be due to random errors.



- *Two-way analysis of variance*. This technique is described in many statistical textbooks (e.g. Armitage et al., 2002) and is available in computer programs, together with statistical tests for the significance of differences between technicians. As with the paired comparison above, differences between all technicians' estimates should be zero. Thus, the differences from the average value are computed for every sample for each technician, and the mean and standard deviation of these differences are computed for each technician. Bias is indicated for technicians for whom the absolute value of the difference is more than 3 standard errors from the mean difference.

A formal statistical test for differences between technicians is based on the *F*-test from the two-way analysis of variance table, which can be obtained directly from most statistics computer programs. The error root mean square ($\hat{\sigma}$) is the square root of the residual, or error, mean square from the analysis of variance table. Mean differences greater than about 2.5 standard errors are unlikely to result from chance variation alone (<1.2%). Whether the differences between technicians are significant or not, it is necessary to review the technicians' means or mean differences to identify which are greater than expected. Not all computer packages pro-

vide the standard error of the differences between technicians, which may have to be computed separately. Substantial differences between technicians should prompt a review of all procedures to identify how consistency can be improved.

The worked example in Box 7.6 illustrates how to compute the standard error of the differences among technicians in sperm concentration directly, and assess whether these are greater than would be expected from chance variation alone. When performing computations directly from the observations, a sufficient number of decimal places must be kept to avoid rounding errors.

7.10.2 Monitoring monthly means

While the primary IQC procedures are based on assessment of differences among and within technicians, additional information may be obtained by monitoring trends in results of semen analysis.

The mean values of each variable for all the patients examined over a certain period (e.g. monthly) can be plotted on an X_{bar} chart, with warning and action limits 2 and 3 standard errors either side of the mean. The standard error can be estimated from the standard deviation of the original observations divided by the square root of the number of semen analyses in each interval, or directly from the observed distribution of the mean. The control limits should be determined using at least 6 months' observations, and should be revised regularly. There should be at least 20 results for each mean; a small laboratory may have to pool results from more than 1 month. Refinements to the method include monitoring monthly means of patients with normal values and the use of cumulative sum (CUSUM) charts for the rapid detection of any systematic departures from the mean (Barnett, 1979).

Deviations from the expected values may reflect different client characteristics (time-dependent changes in the men being analysed; a change in the number of repeat tests on the same men; changes in the pattern of referral of men with different types of infertility) or technical factors (changes in technicians, laboratory supplies, seasonal temperature variations, etc.).

7.11 External quality control and quality assurance

External quality control (EQC) is an integral part of the complete QC process (Cekan et al., 1995) that monitors assay results, while external quality assurance (EQA) monitors all laboratory procedures relating to collecting and reporting data to ensure that laboratory processes are under control. EQC allows a laboratory to compare its results with those of others. It permits different methods to be evaluated and compared on a scale not possible in a single laboratory.

EQC and IQC are complementary processes. EQC may reveal problems with accuracy that may not be apparent from IQC if control samples are not adequately masked or selected. EQC has the advantage that it allows a laboratory to monitor the accuracy and stability of its methods (Plaut & Westgard, 2002). However, as EQC samples are clearly of external origin, they are liable to be handled in a special way; this should be guarded against so that they are processed as far as possible in the same way as routine samples.

Box 7.6 Assessing systematic differences among technicians

The table below shows sperm concentrations estimated by three technicians on five QC samples.

Sperm concentration (10^6 per ml)

Sample	1	2	3	4	5
Technician A	108	45	100	50	92
Technician B	103	47	102	50	96
Technician C	104	46	89	41	88
Sample mean	105	46	97	47	92

The differences from the sample mean (d_{ij}) are computed by subtracting the semen sample mean from each observation:

Sample	1	2	3	4	5
Technician A	3.0	–1.0	3.0	3.0	0.0
Technician B	–2.0	1.0	5.0	3.0	4.0
Technician C	–1.0	0.0	–8.0	–6.0	–4.0

The mean, $m_j = \Sigma_i d_{ij}/n$, and standard deviation, $s_j = \sqrt{(\Sigma_i d_{ij}^2/(n-1))}$, of these differences are computed for each technician, where n is the number of semen samples.

	Mean (m_j)	SD (s_j)	Mean/standard error (m_j/se(m_j))
Technician A	1.600	1.949	1.836
Technician B	2.200	2.775	1.773
Technician C	–3.800	3.347	–2.539

For technician C, the mean difference from the sample mean is -3.8×10^6 per ml, or $5.7\ (-3.8 - (1.6+2.2)/2) \times 10^6$ per ml less than the average of the other two technicians. To assess whether the degree of underestimation is compatible with chance variation, the error root mean square, $\hat{\sigma} = \sqrt{(\Sigma_j s_j^2/(t-1))}$, where t is the number of technicians, is computed from the standard deviations of the technicians' differences. In this example, $\hat{\sigma} = 3.369 \times 10^6$ per ml. The standard error of each technician's mean difference is given by $\text{se}(m_j) = \hat{\sigma}\sqrt{((1-1/t)/n)}$, or 1.230×10^6 per ml. The absolute value of technician C's mean difference (3.8×10^6 per ml) is greater than 3 standard errors, and is therefore significantly different from the expected value of zero (assuming no systematic differences between the technicians).

A formal statistical test of differences between technicians is based on the F-test from the two-way analysis of variance for technicians and QC samples. The analysis of variance table, using the above sperm concentrations, is given below.

Source	Sum of squares	Degrees of freedom	Mean square	F-ratio	P-value
QC samples	9807.6	4	2451.90	216.03	<0.001
Technicians	109.2	2	54.60	4.81	0.042
Error	90.8	8	11.35		
Total	10007.6	14			

The error root mean square is $\sqrt{11.35} = 3.369 \times 10^6$ per ml, the same as that obtained above. As expected, the differences between QC samples are very large ($P < 0.001$) since they are taken from different fresh semen samples. The F-test for differences between technicians ($F = 4.81$ with 2 and 8 degrees of freedom, $P = 0.042$) is significant at the 0.05 level and suggests that these differences are greater than would be expected from random variation alone.

Box 7.7 Main features of IQC procedures

Procedure	Errors detected	QC material	No. of technicians
X_{bar} chart	bias, overall variability, accuracy	stored	individual, several
S chart	bias/precision	stored/fresh	several
Two-way ANOVA	bias/precision	stored/fresh	several
Bland–Altman	bias/precision	stored/fresh	two
Paired tests	bias/precision	stored/fresh	two
Youden plots	bias/precision	stored/fresh	several

EQC encompasses peer comparison and proficiency testing programmes in which specimens presumed to be identical are sent to all participating laboratories for analysis (Cembrowski & Carey, 1989). Laboratories submit their results to a central facility where the data are examined for outliers, and means and standard deviations are calculated to characterize the performance of the participating laboratories. A list of national EQC programmes for semen analysis is given in Appendix 8.

7.11.1 Assessment of EQC results

EQC schemes provide laboratories with information on both their results and those from other participating laboratories. It should be ascertained whether specified target values were obtained from accurate measurement, from multiple haemocytometer counts of sperm concentration, from computer-aided analysis of sperm motility, and if results obtained from a group of well-controlled reference laboratories or are trimmed means of all participating centres. Results are often presented graphically, such as in a bar chart. If the same EQC sample is used on several occasions, the bias and variability for the laboratory's results on this sample will also be reported.

When two samples are provided for analysis, a Youden plot is often constructed in which the values for each sample are plotted on the x and y axes (see Fig. 7.4). The extent to which centres differ in their assessment is clearly seen from the scatter and distribution of the plotted values. Additional data can be visualized, for example, by using different symbols or colours to indicate the use of different methods (counting chambers, stains or assessment criteria) or different centres.

When more than two samples are distributed, various aspects of bias (the difference from the designated value) may be given. These include:

- the bias index score (BIS): bias divided by a chosen coefficient of variation × 100, which can be positive or negative;
- the variance index score (VIS): this is similar to the BIS but is always positive;
- the mean running BIS or VIS scores (MRBIS, MRVIS), which help ascertain trends.

A low MRBIS and low MRVIS indicate that results are close to designated values; a low MRBIS but high MRVIS could indicate random error; and a high MRBIS and high MRVIS indicate systematic errors. Results reported as successful/unsuccessful or as ranks are useful for laboratory inspection and certification.

A simple way to monitor performance is to plot the laboratory's results (on the y-axis) against the target value (on the x-axis) for each parameter. This shows clearly how close to the line of identity the laboratory's values fall. Alternatively, differences from the target values can be shown on a Bland–Altman plot (see Fig. 7.3).

7.11.2 Responses to out-of-control results

The essential information derived from EQC programmes relates to the bias or accuracy of laboratories and laboratory methods. The desired outcome is for laboratories to maintain or improve the accuracy of their methods (Plaut & Westgard, 2002). Laboratories with results that are persistently higher or lower than the assigned value or mean of the EQC scheme need to reappraise their methods. A wide variation in EQC results is usually associated with wide variation in IQC results and indicates inconsistencies in the assessment procedures from sample to sample. Technical procedures should be carefully reassessed to ensure that they conform to the recommendations in this manual.

Appropriate actions include those discussed for IQC (see Section 7.9.3) with retraining and retesting. Tables 7.2–7.5 also indicate potential sources of variation in sperm analysis and proposed solutions. Exchange of scientific staff between laboratories is often helpful and the training of technicians in laboratories with good EQC results can be beneficial. A consultant from a laboratory with good EQC results will often be able to see where methods could be changed to improve reproducibility.

7.12 Frequency and priority of quality control

The QC samples should be analysed routinely. The frequency of analysis may be determined by national or local recommendations or mandated by laboratory licensing laws or accreditation agencies. Some regulations require that QC samples are analysed each day that patient sperm concentrations are assessed; otherwise between 1% and 5% of samples should be for IQC.

QC samples should be used:

- to monitor newly employed and existing staff;
- whenever new laboratory equipment, supplies, procedures, or batches of IQC samples are introduced.

Box 7.8 contains a general guide to scheduling of QC; in practice, the schedule will depend on the workload in the laboratory. Box 7.9 indicates the priority of the different QC protocols; some procedures may not be feasible for laboratories with limited funding.

Box 7.8 Time schedule for quality control

At all times	surveillance and correlation of results within samples
Weekly/monthly	analysis of replicate measurements by different technicians
Monthly/quarterly	analysis of mean results
Quarterly/6-monthly	participation in EQC
6-monthly/yearly	calibration of pipettes, counting chambers, other equipment

Box 7.9 Summary of QC tests

Parameter	Material	Target value	Accuracy, bias	Precision	Priority (1>2>3)
Concentration	IQC fresh	No		*S* chart, 2-way ANOVA	1
	IQC stored	Yes	X_{bar} chart	*S* chart	3
	EQC	Yes	X_{bar} chart	*S* chart	2
Morphology	IQC fresh	No		*S* chart, 2-way ANOVA	1
	IQC stored	Yes	X_{bar} chart	*S* chart	3
	EQC	Yes	X_{bar} chart	*S* chart	2
Motility	IQC fresh	No		*S* chart, 2-way ANOVA	1
	IQC stored	Yes	X_{bar} chart	*S* chart	3
	EQC	Yes	X_{bar} chart	*S* chart	2
Vitality	IQC fresh	No		*S* chart, 2-way ANOVA	1
	IQC stored	Yes	X_{bar} chart	*S* chart	3
	EQC	Yes	X_{bar} chart	*S* chart	2

7.13 Training

A similar approach to QC can be used when technicians are being trained, new assays introduced, or modifications to existing methods assessed. Technician training should include awareness of the approaches outlined below.

7.13.1 Practical hints when experiencing difficulty assessing sperm concentration

- Review the mixing and dilution procedures, chamber grids and calculations.
- Read the samples within 10–15 minutes of loading the chamber, after which evaporation has noticeable effects on the position of spermatozoa within the chamber.
- Two technicians should work together, using a bridge microscope or microscope equipped with a video camera and a TV screen, comparing dilution, loading and counting procedures. They should count the same loaded chamber, comparing values for rows or grids, to find the source of discrepancies.
- Use a bridge microscope in a counting and training session, or examine spermatozoa in the grid ocular, to decide whether individual spermatozoa are considered on a line and should be eligible for inclusion in the count.
- Review Table 7.2.

Table 7.2 Sources of variation (error) in assessing sperm concentration and proposed solutions

Procedure	Prevention	Control
Incomplete mixing of semen samples before making dilution	Training, SOP	Replicate dilutions
Dilution errors (e.g. assuming a 1:20 dilution is 1+20, when it is in fact 1+19)	Training, SOP	IQC
Pipetting device out of calibration (e.g. pipette is set to 100 µl but actually delivers 95 µl or 110 µl)	Equipment maintenance, SOP	Replicate dilutions, IQC, EQC
Using an inappropriate pipette (e.g. an air- rather than a positive-displacement pipette)	Training, SOP	Replicate dilutions, IQC, EQC
Using a low volume for dilution, which carries a high risk of unrepresentative sampling	Training, SOP	Replicate dilutions, IQC, EQC
Failure to wipe the residual semen from the outside of the pipette tip before dispensing it into the diluent	Training, SOP	IQC
Chamber not clean and dry	Training, SOP	Replicate assessments
Chamber incorrectly assembled or loaded (e.g. dirt particles on the pillars may alter chamber height)	Training, SOP	Replicate assessments
Excessive time lag between mixing semen and removing aliquot for dilution (spermatozoa in semen start to settle immediately)	Training, SOP	Replicate dilutions and assessments
Excessive time lag between vortexing the dilution and loading chamber (diluted spermatozoa start to settle immediately)	Training, SOP	Replicate dilutions and assessments
Microscope not properly cleaned or aligned. Incorrect magnification	Training, SOP, equipment maintenance	IQC and EQC
Not waiting long enough after loading chamber before analysis (insufficient time for sedimentation)	Training, SOP	Replicate assessments, IQC, EQC
Haemocytometer chamber not horizontal during sperm settling, or chamber not kept in a humidified environment during settling	Training, SOP	Replicate assessments, IQC, EQC
Misidentification of spermatozoa (e.g. counting debris as spermatozoa or missing hard-to-recognize spermatozoa)	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC
Assessing too few or too many rows on grid (i.e. incorrect calculations); stopping in the middle of a row	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC
Counting too few spermatozoa, leading to high sampling error	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC
Inconsistently scoring spermatozoa on the counting box lines (e.g. overestimating concentration if spermatozoa are scored on top, bottom, left and right borders)	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC
Malfunction of multikey counter	Equipment maintenance	IQC. EQC
Mathematical error in calculating, or correcting for dilution	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC
Use of capillary-filled chamber (unequal distribution of spermatozoa during filling)	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC

7.13.2 Practical hints when experiencing difficulty assessing sperm morphology

- Adhere to the guidelines in this manual: study the micrographs and the relevant commentary for each spermatozoon.
- Pay particular attention to spermatozoa with borderline morphology; these should be classified as abnormal.
- Conduct a scoring and training session using a bridge microscope or microscope equipped with a video camera and a TV screen.
- Review Table 7.3.

Table 7.3 Sources of variation (error) in assessing sperm morphology and proposed solutions

Procedure	Prevention	Control
Microscope not properly cleaned or aligned. Incorrect magnification	Training, SOP, equipment maintenance	IQC, EQC
Inadequate training before performing analysis	Training	IQC, EQC
Subjective techniques without clear guidelines	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC
Subtle influences of peers on classification systems (may cause changes during analysis)	Training	IQC (control charts)
Semen inadequately mixed when smear was prepared	Training, SOP	IQC
Poor smear preparation (i.e. too thick or too thin)	Training, SOP	IQC
Poor staining technique (i.e. light, dark, or too much background staining)	Training, SOP	IQC
Assessing spermatozoa on edge of slide	Training, SOP	IQC
Attempting to score spermatozoa that are not flat, or are overlapping other spermatozoa	Training, SOP	IQC
Not scoring all spermatozoa in area but selecting spermatozoa for assessment	Training, SOP	IQC
Fading of stain over time (for stored IQC samples)	Training, SOP	IQC (control chart)
Errors in calculating percentages if not counted in multiples of 100	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC
Malfunction of multikey counter	Equipment maintenance	IQC, EQC

7.13.3 Practical hints when experiencing difficulty assessing sperm motility

- Make the preparation immediately before assessing. Read only after any drifting has stopped to reduce bias in overall motility.
- Select the field randomly and do not deliberately select fields with high or low numbers of motile spermatozoa. One way to do this is to avoid looking through the oculars until a field has been selected.

- Do not wait for motile spermatozoa to enter the field before starting to count.
- Analyse quickly; analyse only a small portion of the grid at one time, depending on sperm concentration.
- Spend less time examining one area of the grid, to avoid counting spermatozoa that swim into the area during analysis.
- Count progressive, non-progressive and immotile spermatozoa in two stages. If there are problems with the technique, reverse the order of analysis.
- Review Table 7.4.

Table 7.4 Sources of variation (error) in assessing sperm motility and proposed solutions

Procedure	Prevention	Control
Improper mixing of specimen before aliquot is removed	Training, SOP	Replicate sampling and assessment, IQC
Waiting too long after slide is prepared before analysis (spermatozoa quickly lose vigour)	Training, SOP	Replicate sampling and assessment, IQC
Improper temperature of stage warmer (e.g. too high temperature will kill spermatozoa)	Training, SOP, equipment maintenance	IQC
Microscope not properly cleaned or aligned. Improper magnification	Training, SOP, equipment maintenance	IQC, EQC
Lack of eyepiece grid for guidance	Equipment	IQC (control chart)
Analysing around the edges of the coverslip (the spermatozoa die or become sluggish around the outer 5 mm of the coverslip)	Training, SOP	Replicate assessment, IQC
Making the assessment too slowly (other spermatozoa swim into the defined area during the assessment period)	Training, SOP	IQC
Malfunction of multikey counter	Equipment maintenance	IQC, EQC
Errors in calculating percentages if not counted in multiples of 100	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC
Subjective bias (i.e. consistently too high % motile or too low % motile)	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC
Preparative procedures that reduce motility (e.g. temperature change, vigorous mixing, contamination with toxins)	SOP	IQC
Non-random selection of fields for analysis. Delay in analysis (e.g. waiting until motile spermatozoa swim into the field or grid to begin analysis)	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC

7.13.4 Practical hints when experiencing difficulty assessing sperm vitality

- Pay particular attention to distinguishing between red (dead) and pink (alive) sperm heads (spermatozoa with faint pink head staining are assessed as alive). If the stain is limited to a part of the neck region, and the rest of the head area is unstained, this is considered a “leaky neck membrane”, but not a sign of cell death and total membrane disintegration.
- Consider using the eosin–nigrosin method (see Section 2.6.1).
- Review Table 7.5.

Table 7.5 Sources of variation (error) in assessing sperm vitality and proposed solutions

Procedure	Prevention	Control
Microscope not properly cleaned or aligned. Improper magnification	Training, SOP, equipment maintenance	IQC, EQC
Improper staining: some recipes give hypo-osmotic conditions that kill spermatozoa	Training, SOP	Comparison with motility
Waiting too long to stain	Training, SOP	Comparison with motility
Rehydration of dried smear, if not mounted directly, will allow stain to leak into all spermatozoa	Training, SOP	Comparison with motility
Overestimation of dead spermatozoa (e.g. perceiving as dead sperm heads with slight pink stain)	Training, SOP,	IQC, EQC
Assessing spermatozoa with pink staining restricted to the neck as dead	Training, SOP	IQC, EQC

References

REFERENCES

Abraham-Peskir JV et al. (2002). Response of midpiece vesicles on human sperm to osmotic stress. *Human Reproduction,* 17:375-382.

Abshagen K et al. (1998). Influence of sperm surface antibodies on spontaneous pregnancy rates. *Fertility and Sterility,* 70:355-356.

Agarwal A et al. (2004). Role of antioxidants in treatment of male infertility: an overview of the literature. *Reproductive Biomedicine Online,* 8:616-627.

Aitken RJ, Baker HW (1995). Seminal leukocytes: passengers, terrorists or good Samaritans? *Human Reproduction,* 10:1736-1739.

Aitken RJ, Clarkson JS (1987). Cellular basis of defective sperm function and its association with the genesis of reactive oxygen species by human spermatozoa. *Journal of Reproduction and Fertility,* 81:459-469.

Aitken RJ, Clarkson JS (1988). Significance of reactive oxygen species and antioxidants in defining the efficacy of sperm preparation techniques. *Journal of Andrology,* 9:367-376.

Aitken RJ, Elton RA (1986). Application of a Poisson-gamma model to study the influence of gamete concentration on sperm–oocyte fusion in the zona-free hamster egg penetration test. *Journal of Reproduction and Fertility,* 78:733-739.

Aitken RJ, Krausz CG (2001). Oxidative stress, DNA damage and the Y chromosome. *Reproduction*, 122:497-506.

Aitken RJ, West KM (1990). Analysis of the relationship between reactive oxygen species production and leucocyte infiltration in fractions of human semen separated on Percoll gradients. *International Journal of Andrology*, 13:433-451.

Aitken RJ et al. (1983). Methods for assessing the functional capacity of human spermatozoa; their role in the selection of patients for in-vitro fertilization. In: Beier H, Lindner H, eds, *Fertilization of the human egg in vitro: Biological basis and clinical application.* Berlin, Springer: 147-168.

Aitken RJ et al. (1992). Reactive oxygen species and human spermatozoa: analysis of the cellular mechanisms involved in luminol- and lucigenin-dependent chemiluminescence. *Journal of Cellular Physiology,* 151:466-477.

Aitken RJ et al. (1993). Analysis of the response of human spermatozoa to A23187 employing a novel technique for assessing the acrosome reaction. *Journal of Andrology*, 14:132-141.

Aitken RJ et al. (2003). Oxidative stress in the male germ line and its role in the aetiology of male infertility and genetic disease. *Reproductive Biomedicine Online,* 7:65-70.

Aitken RJ et al. (2004). Shedding light on chemiluminescence: the application of chemiluminescence in diagnostic andrology. *Journal of Andrology,* 25:455-465.

Alvarez C et al. (2003). Biological variation of seminal parameters in healthy subjects. *Human Reproduction*, 18:2082-2088.

Alvarez JG et al. (1987). Spontaneous lipid peroxidation and production of hydrogen peroxide and superoxide in human spermatozoa. Superoxide dismutase as major enzyme protectant against oxygen toxicity. *Journal of Andrology*, 8:338-348.

Andersen AG et al. (2000). High frequency of sub-optimal semen quality in an unselected population of young men. *Human Reproduction,* 15:366-372.

Armitage P et al. (2002). *Statistical methods in medical research*. Oxford, Blackwell Science.

Auger J, Eustache F (2000). Standardisation de la classification morphologique des spermatozoides humains selon la méthode de David modifieé. *Andrologia,* 10:358-373.

Auger J et al. (1995). Decline in semen quality among fertile men in Paris during the past 20 years. *New England Journal of Medicine,* 332:281-285.

Auger J et al. (2001). Sperm morphological defects related to environment, lifestyle and medical history of 1001 male partners of pregnant women from four European cities. *Human Reproduction,* 16:2710-2717.

Aziz N et al. (1996). The sperm deformity index: a reliable predictor of the outcome of oocyte fertilization in vitro. *Fertility and Sterility*, 66:1000-1008.

Aziz N et al. (2004). Novel association between sperm reactive oxygen species production, sperm morphological defects, and the sperm deformity index. *Fertility and Sterility,* 81:349-354.

Baker HW, Kovacs GT (1985). Spontaneous improvement in semen quality: regression towards the mean. *International Journal of Andrology,* 8:421-426.

Barnett RN (1979). *Clinical laboratory statistics,* 2nd ed. Boston, Little, Brown.

Barratt CLR et al. (1992). The poor prognostic value of low to moderate levels of sperm surface-bound antibodies. *Human Reproduction*, 7:95-98.

Barratt CLR et al. (1993). Prognostic significance of computerized motility analysis for in-vivo fertility. *Fertility and Sterility,* 60:520-525.

Bedford JM (1977). Sperm/egg interaction: the specificity of human spermatozoa. *Anatomical Record,* 188:477-487.

Behre HM et al. (2000). Diagnosis of male infertility and hypogonadism. In: Nieschlag E, Behre HM, eds. *Andrology, male reproductive health and dysfunction.* Berlin, Springer: 92.

Berman NG et al. (1996). Methodological issues in the analysis of human sperm concentration data. *Journal of Andrology,* 17:68-73.

Biggers JD et al. (1971). The culture of mouse embryos in vitro. In: Daniel JC, ed. *Methods in mammalian embryology.* San Francicso, WH Freeman: 86-116.

Björndahl L, Barratt CL (2005). Semen analysis: setting standards for the measurement of sperm numbers. *Journal of Andrology,* 26:11.

Björndahl L, Kvist U (2003). Sequence of ejaculation affects the spermatozoon as a carrier and its message. *Reproductive Biomedicine Online,* 7:440-448.

Björndahl L et al. (2003). Evaluation of the one-step eosin-nigrosin staining technique for human sperm vitality assessment. *Human Reproduction,* 18:813-816.

Björndahl L et al. (2004). Why the WHO recommendations for eosin–nigrosin staining techniques for human sperm vitality assessment must change. *Journal of Andrology,* 25:671-678.

Björndahl L et al. (2005). Contamination by seminal plasma factors during sperm selection. *Journal of Andrology,* 26:170-173.

Bland JM, Altman DG (1986). Statistical methods for assessing agreement between two methods of clinical measurement. *Lancet*, 1:307-310.

Bohring C, Krause W (1999). The intra- and inter-assay variation of the indirect mixed antiglobulin reaction test: is a quality control suitable? *Human Reproduction,* 14:1802-1805.

Bonde JP et al. (1998). Relation between semen quality and fertility: a population-based study of 430 first-pregnancy planners. *Lancet,* 352:1172-1177.

Boomsma CM et al. (2004). Semen preparation techniques for intrauterine insemination. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews,* CD004507.

Bourne H et al. (1995). Sperm preparation for intracytoplasmic injection: methods and relationship to fertilization results. *Reproduction, Fertility, Development,* 7:177-183.

Brazil C et al. (2004a). Standardized methods for semen evaluation in a multicenter research study. *Journal of Andrology,* 25:635-644.

Brazil C et al. (2004b). Quality control of laboratory methods for semen evaluation in a multicenter research study. *Journal of Andrology,* 25:645-656.

Bronson RA et al. (1982). Detection of sperm specific antibodies on the spermatozoa surface by immunobead binding. *Archives of Andrology*, 9:61.

Bronson RA et al. (1984). Sperm antibodies: their role in infertility. *Fertility and Sterility*, 42:171-183.

Bunge RGT, Sherman JK (1953). Fertilizing capacity of frozen human spermatozoa. *Nature,* 172:767-768.

Bunge RG et al. (1954). Clinical use of frozen semen: report of four cases. *Fertility and Sterility,* 5:520-529.

Burkman LJ et al. (1988). The hemizona assay (HZA): development of a diagnostic test for the binding of human spermatozoa to human hemizona pellucida to predict fertilization potential. *Fertility and Sterility*, 49:688-697.

Canale D et al. (1994). Inter- and intra-individual variability of sperm morphology after selection with three different techniques: layering, swimup from pellet and Percoll. *Journal of Endocrinological Investigation*, 17:729-732.

Carey RG, Lloyd RC (1995). *Measuring quality improvement in healthcare: a guide to statistical process control applications*. New York, Quality Resources.

Carlsen E et al. (2004). Effects of ejaculatory frequency and season on variations in semen quality. *Fertility and Sterility,* 82:358-366.

Carreras A et al. (1992). Sperm plasma membrane integrity measurement: a combined method. *Andrologia,* 24:335-340.

Castilla JA et al. (2006). Influence of analytical and biological variation on the clinical interpretation of seminal parameters. *Human Reproduction,* 21:847-851.

Cekan SZ et al. (1995). *Principles of external quality assessment: a laboratory manual*. Geneva, World Health Organization.

Cembrowski GS, Carey RN (1989). *Laboratory quality management*. Chicago, ASCP Press.

Chantler E, Abraham-Peskir JV (2004). Significance of midpiece vesicles and functional integrity of the membranes of human spermatozoa after osmotic stress. *Andrologia,* 36:87-93.

Chemes HE, Rawe YV (2003). Sperm pathology: a step beyond descriptive morphology. Origin, characterization and fertility potential of abnormal sperm phenotypes in infertile men. *Human Reproduction Update,* 9:405-428.

Chiu WW, Chamley LW (2004). Clinical associations and mechanisms of action of antisperm antibodies. *Fertility and Sterility*, 82:529-535.

Chohan KR et al. (2006). Comparison of chromatin assays for DNA fragmentation evaluation in human sperm. *Journal of Andrology*, 27:53-59.

Christensen P et al. (2005). Discrepancies in the determination of sperm concentration using Bürker-Türk, Thoma and Makler counting chambers. *Theriogenology*, 63:992-1003.

Clarke GN (1999). Sperm cryopreservation: is there a significant risk of cross-contamination? *Human Reproduction* 14:2941-2943.

Clarke GN et al. (1982). Immunoglobulin class of sperm-bound antibodies in semen. In: Bratanov K, ed. *Immunology of reproduction.* Sofia, Bulgarian Academy of Sciences Press: 482-485.

Clarke GN et al. (1985). Detection of sperm antibodies in semen using the Immunobead test: a survey of 813 consecutive patients. *American Journal of Reproductive Immunology and Microbiology,* 7:118-123.

Clarke GN et al. (1997). Artificial insemination and in-vitro fertilization using donor spermatozoa: a report on 15 years of experience. *Human Reproduction*, 12:722-726.

Clarke GN et al. (2003). Improved sperm cryopreservation using cold cryoprotectant. *Reproduction, Fertility, Development*, 15:377-381.

Clarke GN et al. (2006). Recovery of human sperm motility and ability to interact with the human zona pellucida after more than 28 years of storage in liquid nitrogen. *Fertility and Sterility,* 86:721-722.

Coetzee K et al. (1998). Predictive value of normal sperm morphology: a structured literature review. *Human Reproduction Update,* 4:73-82.

Coetzee K et al. (1999a). Repeatability and variance analysis on multiple computer-assisted (IVOS) sperm morphology readings. *Andrologia,* 31:163-168.

Coetzee K et al. (1999b). Assessment of interlaboratory and intralaboratory sperm morphology readings with the use of a Hamilton Thorne Research integrated visual optical system semen analyzer. *Fertility and Sterility,* 71:80-84.

Coetzee K et al. (1999c). Clinical value of using an automated sperm morphology analyzer (IVOS). *Fertility and Sterility,* 71:222-225.

Cooper TG (2005). Cytoplasmic droplets: the good, the bad or just confusing? *Human Reproduction,* 20:9-11.

Cooper TG, Yeung CH (1998). A flow cytometric technique using peanut agglutinin for evaluating acrosomal loss from human spermatozoa. *Journal of Andrology,* 19:542-550.

Cooper TG, Yeung CH (2006). Computer-aided evaluation of assessment of “grade a” spermatozoa by experienced technicians. *Fertility and Sterility,* 85:220-224.

Cooper TG et al. (1990a). The influence of inflammation of the human male genital tract on secretion of the seminal markers α-glucosidase, glycerophosphocholine, carnitine, fructose and citric acid. *International Journal of Andrology*, 13:329-335.

Cooper TG et al. (1990b). Improvement in the assessment of human epididymal function by the use of inhibitors in the assay of α-glucosidase in seminal plasma. *International Journal of Andrology*, 13:297-305.

Cooper TG et al. (1991). Variations in semen parameters from fathers. *Human Reproduction,* 6:859-866.

Cooper TG et al. (1993). Effects of multiple ejaculations after extended periods of sexual abstinence on total, motile and normal sperm numbers, as well as accessory gland secretions, from healthy normal and oligozoospermic men. *Human Reproduction,* 8:1251-1258.

Cooper TG et al. (1999). Experience with external quality control in spermatology. *Human Reproduction,* 14:765-769.

Cooper TG et al. (2002). Semen analysis and external quality control schemes for semen analysis need global standardization. *International Journal of Andrology,* 25:306-311.

Cooper TG et al. (2004). Cytoplasmic droplets are normal structures of human spermatozoa but are not well preserved by routine procedures for assessing sperm morphology. *Human Reproduction,* 19:2283-2288.

Cooper TG et al. (2005). Changes in osmolality during liquefaction of human semen. *International Journal of Andrology,* 28:58-60.

Cooper TG et al. (2006). Azoospermia: virtual reality or possible to quantify? *Journal of Andrology*, 27:483-490.

Cooper TG et al. (2007). Ejaculate volume is seriously underestimated when semen is pipetted or decanted into cylinders from the collection vessel. *Journal of Andrology,* 28:1-4.

Cooper TG et al. (2010). World Health Organization reference values for human semen characteristics. *Human Reproduction Update,* 16:231-245.

Corea M et al. (2005). The diagnosis of azoospermia depends on the force of centrifugation. *Fertility and Sterility,* 83:920-922.

Correa-Perez JR et al. (2004). Clinical management of men producing ejaculates characterized by high levels of dead sperm and altered seminal plasma factors consistent with epididymal necrospermia. *Fertility and Sterility,* 81:1148-1150.

Couture M et al. (1976). Improved staining method for differentiating immature germ cells from white blood cells in human seminal fluid. *Andrologia,* 8:61-66.

Cross NL (1995). Methods for evaluating the acrosomal status of human sperm. In: Fenichel P, Parinaud J, eds. *Human sperm acrosome reaction*. Paris, John Libbey Eurotext (Colloques INSERM): 277-285.

Cross NL et al. (1986). Two simple methods for detecting acrosome-reacted human sperm. *Gamete Research,* 15:213-226.

Dadoune JP et al. (1988). Correlation between defects in chromatin condensation of human spermatozoa stained by aniline blue and semen characteristics. *Andrologia,* 20:211-217.

Daudin M et al. (2000). Congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens: clinical characteristics, biological parameters, cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator gene mutations, and implications for genetic counseling. *Fertility and Sterility,* 74:1164-1174.

David G et al. (1975). Anomalies morphologiques du spermatozoide humain. I. Propositions pour un système de classification. *Journal de Gynécologie, Obstétrique et Biologie de la Réproduction,* 4(Suppl. 1):17-36.

David G et al. (1980). The success of A.I.D. and semen characteristics: study of 1489 cycles and 192 ejaculates. *International Journal of Andrology*, 3:613-619.

Davis RO, Katz DF (1992). Standardization and comparability of CASA instruments. *Journal of Andrology*, 13:81-86.

De Jonge C (2000). Commentary: forging a partnership between total quality management and the andrology laboratory. *Journal of Andrology,* 21:203-205.

De Jonge C et al. (2004). Influence of the abstinence period on human sperm quality. *Fertility and Sterility*, 82:57-65.

de la Taille A et al. (1998). Correlation of genitourinary abnormalities, spermiogram and *CFTR* genotype in patients with bilateral agenesis of the vas deferens. *Progress in Urology,* 8:370-376.

Devillard F et al. (2002). Polyploidy in large-headed sperm: FISH study of three cases. *Human Reproduction,* 17:1292-1298.

Donnelly ET et al. (1998). In-vitro fertilization and pregnancy rates: the influence of sperm motility and morphology on IVF outcome. *Fertility and Sterility,* 70:305-314.

Douglas-Hamilton DH et al. (2005a). Particle distribution in low-volume capillary-loaded chambers. *Journal of Andrology,* 26:107-114.

Douglas-Hamilton DH et al. (2005b). Capillary-loaded particle fluid dynamics: effect on estimation of sperm concentration. *Journal of Andrology,* 26:115-122.

Drobnis EZ et al. (1988). Hamster sperm penetration of the zona pellucida: kinematic analysis and mechanical implications. *Developmental Biology,* 130:311-323.

Eggert-Kruse W et al. (1989). Prognostic value of in-vitro sperm penetration into hormonally standardized human cervical mucus. *Fertility and Sterility*, 51:317-323.

Eggert-Kruse W et al. (1992). Differentiation of round cells in semen by means of monoclonal antibodies and relationship with male fertility. *Fertility and Sterility*, 58:1046-1055.

Eggert-Kruse W et al. (1993). The pH as an important determinant of sperm-mucus interaction. *Fertility and Sterility*, 59:617-628.

Eggert-Kruse W et al. (1996). Sperm morphology assessment using strict criteria and male fertility under in-vivo conditions of conception. *Human Reproduction,* 11:139-146.

Eliasson R (1971). Standards for investigation of human semen. *Andrologia,* 3:49-64.

Eliasson R (1975). Analysis of semen. In: Behrman SJ, Kistner RW, eds. *Progress in Infertility*, 2nd ed. New York, Little, Brown: 691-713.

Eliasson R (1981). Analysis of semen. In: Burger H, de Kretser D, eds. *The testis*. New York, Raven Press: 381-399.

Eliasson R (2003). Basic semen analysis. In: Matson P, ed. *Current topics in andrology*. Perth, Ladybrook Publishing: 35-89.

Eliasson R et al. (1970). Empfehlungen zur Nomenklatur in der Andrologie. *Andrologia*, 2:1257.

ESHRE (1998). Guidelines on the application of CASA technology in the analysis of spermatozoa. *Human Reproduction*, 13:142-145.

ESHRE/NAFA (2002). Manual on basic semen analysis (ESHRE Monographs #2). Oxford, Oxford University Press.

Evenson DP, Wixon R (2006). Clinical aspects of sperm DNA fragmentation detection and male infertility. *Theriogenology*, 65:979-991.

Ezeh UI, Moore HM (2001). Redefining azoospermia and its implications. *Fertility and Sterility,* 75:213-214.

Ezeh UI et al. (1998). Correlation of testicular pathology and sperm extraction in azoospermic men with ejaculated spermatids detected by immunofluorescent localization. *Human Reproduction,* 13:3061-3065.

Feldschuh J et al. (2005). Successful sperm storage for 28 years. *Fertility and Sterility,* 84:1017.

Fenichel P et al. (1989). Evaluation of the human sperm acrosome reaction using a monoclonal antibody, GB24, and fluorescence-activated cell sorter. *Journal of Reproduction and Fertility*, 87:699-706.

Fetic S et al. (2006). Relationship of cytoplasmic droplets to motility, migration in mucus, and volume regulation of human spermatozoa. *Journal of Andrology,* 27:294-301.

Franken DR et al. (1989). The hemizona assay (HZA): a predictor of human sperm fertilizing potential in in-vitro fertilization (IVF) treatment. *Journal of In Vitro Fertilization and Embryo Transfer*, 6:44-50.

Franken DR et al. (2000). Physiological induction of the acrosome reaction in human sperm: validation of a microassay using minimal volumes of solubilized, homologous zona pellucida. *Journal of Assisted Reproduction and Genetics,* 17:374-378.

Fredricsson B, Björk G (1977). Morphology of postcoital spermatozoa in the cervical secretion and its clinical significance. *Fertility and Sterility,* 28:841-845.

Gandini L et al. (2000). Study of apoptotic DNA fragmentation in human spermatozoa. *Human Reproduction,* 15:830-839.

Gao DY et al. (1995). Prevention of osmotic injury to human spermatozoa during addition and removal of glycerol. *Human Reproduction,* 10:1109-1122.

Garrett C, Baker HWG (1995). A new fully automated system for the morphometric analysis of human sperm heads. *Fertility and Sterility*, 63:1306-1317.

Garrett C et al. (1997). Selectivity of the human sperm–zona pellucida binding process to sperm head morphometry. *Fertility and Sterility,* 67:362-371.

Garrett C et al. (2003). Automated semen analysis: “zona pellucida preferred” sperm morphometry and straight-line velocity are related to pregnancy rate in subfertile couples. *Human Reproduction,* 18:1643-1649.

Gilling-Smith C et al. (2005). Laboratory safety during assisted reproduction in patients with blood-borne viruses. *Human Reproduction,* 20:1433-1438.

Gilling-Smith C et al. (2006). HIV and reproductive care—a review of current practice. *British Journal of Gynaecology*, 113:869-878.

Gomez E et al. (1996). Development of an image analysis system to monitor the retention of residual cytoplasm by human spermatozoa: correlation with biochemical markers of the cytoplasmic space, oxidative stress, and sperm function. *Journal of Andrology*, 17:276-287.

Gomez E et al. (1998). Evaluation of a spectrophotometric assay for the measurement of malondialdehyde and 4-hydroxyalkenals in human spermatozoa: relationships with semen quality and sperm function. *International Journal of Andrology*, 21:81-94.

Gould JE et al. (1994). Sperm-immunobead binding decreases with in-vitro incubation. *Fertility and Sterility*, 62:167-171.

Grimes DA, Lopez LM (2007). “Oligozoospermia,” “azoospermia,” and other semen-analysis terminology: the need for better science. *Fertility and Sterility*, 88:1491-1494.

Griveau JF, Le Lannou D (1997). Reactive oxygen species and human spermatozoa: physiology and pathology. *International Journal of Andrology*, 20:61-69.

Handelsman DJ et al. (1984). Testicular function in potential sperm donors: normal ranges and the effects of smoking and varicocele. *International Journal of Andrology,* 7:369-382.

Haugen TB, Grotmol T (1998). pH of human semen. *International Journal of Andrology,* 21:105-108.

Heite H-J, Wetterauer W (1979). Acid phosphatase in seminal fluid: method of estimation and diagnostic significance. *Andrologia*, 11:113-122.

Hellstrom WJG et al. (1989). A comparison of the usefulness of SpermMar and Immunobead tests for the detection of antisperm antibodies. *Fertility and Sterility*, 52:1027-1031.

Henkel R et al. (2004). Influence of deoxyribonucleic acid damage on fertilization and pregnancy. *Fertility and Sterility,* 81:965-972.

Henley N et al. (1994). Flow cytometric evaluation of the acrosome reaction of human spermatozoa: a new method using a photoactivated supravital stain. *International Journal of Andrology*, 17:78-84.

Holstein AF et al. (2003). Understanding spermatogenesis is a prerequisite for treatment. *Reproductive Biology and Endocrinology,* 1:107.

Homyk M et al. (1990). Differential diagnosis of immature germ cells in semen utilizing monoclonal antibody MHS-10 to the intra-acrosomal antigen SP-10. *Fertility and Sterility,* 53:323-330.

Hossain AM et al. (1998). Time course of hypo-osmotic swellings of human spermatozoa: evidence of ordered transition between swelling subtypes. *Human Reproduction,* 13:1578-1583.

Hotchkiss RS (1945). *Fertility in men*. London, William Heineman Medical Books.

Huggins C et al. (1942). Chemical composition of human semen and of the secretions of the prostate and seminal vesicles. *American Journal of Physiology,* 136:467-473.

IARC (1982). *Chemicals, industrial processes and industries associated with cancer in humans.* Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, Suppl. 4): 169-170.

Insler V et al. (1972). The cervical score. A simple semiquantitative method for monitoring of the menstrual cycle. *International Journal of Gynaecology and Obstetrics*, 10:223-228.

Irvine DS et al. (1994). A prospective clinical study of the relationship between the computer-assisted assessment of human semen quality and the achievement of pregnancy in vivo. *Human Reproduction*, 9:2324-2334.

Ivic A et al. (2002). Critical evaluation of methylcellulose as an alternative medium in sperm migration tests. *Human Reproduction*, 17:143-149.

Iwamoto T et al. (2006). Semen quality of 324 fertile Japanese men. *Human Reproduction*, 21:760-765.

Iwasaki A, Gagnon C (1992). Formation of reactive oxygen species in spermatozoa of infertile patients. *Fertility and Sterility*, 57:409-416.

Jaffe TM et al. (1998). Sperm pellet analysis: a technique to detect the presence of sperm in men considered to have azoospermia by routine semen analysis. *Journal of Urology,* 159:1548-1550.

Jeyendran RS et al. (1984). Development of an assay to assess the functional integrity of the human sperm membrane and its relationship to the other semen characteristics. *Journal of Reproduction and Fertility*, 70:219-228.

Johanisson E et al. (2000). Evaluation of “round cells” in semen analysis: a comparative study. *Human Reproduction Update,* 6:404-412.

Johnsen O, Eliasson R (1987). Evaluation of a commercially available kit for the colorimetric determination of zinc in human seminal plasma. *International Journal of Andrology,* 10:435-440.

Johnson DE et al. (1996). Glass wool column filtration versus mini-Percoll gradient for processing poor quality semen samples. *Fertility and Sterility*, 66:459-462.

Jones DM et al. (1986). Immobilization of sperm by condoms and their components. *Clinical Reproduction and Fertility*, 4:367-372.

Jones R et al. (1979). Peroxidative breakdown of phospholipids by human spermatozoa, spermicidal properties of fatty acid peroxides and protective action of seminal plasma. *Fertility and Sterility,* 31:531-537.

Jørgensen N et al. (2001). Regional differences in semen quality in Europe. *Human Reproduction,* 16:1012-1019.

Jouannet P et al. (1988). Male factors and the likelihood of pregnancy in infertile couples. I. Study of sperm characteristics. *International Journal of Andrology*, 11:379-394.

Kamischke A et al. (2004). Cryopreservation of sperm from adolescents and adults with malignancies. *Journal of Andrology,* 25:586-592.

Karvonen MJ, Malm M (1955). Colorimetric determination of fructose with indol. *Scandinavian Journal of Clinical Laboratory Investigation,* 7:305-307.

Katz DF et al. (1986). Morphometric analysis of spermatozoa in the assessment of human male fertility. *Journal of Andrology*, 7:203-210.

Keel BA (2006). Within- and between-subject variation in semen parameters in infertile men and normal semen donors. *Fertility and Sterility,* 85:128-134.

Keel BA, Webster BW (1993). Semen cryopreservation methodology and results. In: Barratt CLR, Cooke ID, eds. *Donor insemination.* Cambridge, Cambridge University Press: 71-96.

Kraemer M et al. (1998). Factors influencing human sperm kinematic measurements by the Celltrak computer-assisted sperm analysis system. *Human Reproduction,* 13:611-619.

Krause W (1995). Computer-assisted sperm analysis system: comparison with routine evaluation and prognostic value in male fertility and assisted reproduction. *Human Reproduction*, 10 (Suppl. 1): 60-66.

Krausz C et al. (1992). Development of a technique for monitoring the contamination of human semen samples with leucocytes. *Fertility and Sterility,* 57:1317-1325.

Kremer J (1965). A simple sperm penetration test. *International Journal of Fertility,* 10:209-215.

Kremer J, Jager S (1980). Characteristics of anti-spermatozoal antibodies responsible for the shaking phenomenon, with special regard to immunoglobulin class and antigen-reactive sites. *International Journal of Andrology*, 3:143-152.

Kruger TF et al. (1986). Sperm morphologic features as a prognostic factor in in-vitro fertilization. *Fertility and Sterility,* 46:1118-1123.

Kruger TF et al. (1987). A quick, reliable staining technique for human sperm morphology. *Archives of Andrology,* 18:275-277.

Kruger TF et al. (1991). Hemizona assay: use of fresh versus salt-stored human oocytes to evaluate sperm binding potential to the zona pellucida. *Journal of In Vitro Fertilization and Embryo Transfer*, 8:154-156.

Kruger TF et al. (1993). *The self teaching programme for strict sperm morphology*. Bellville, South Africa, MQ Medical.

Kuster CE et al. (2004). Determining sample size for the morphological assessment of sperm. *Theriogenology,* 61:691-703.

Lacquet FA et al. (1996). Slide preparation and staining procedures for reliable results using computerized morphology. *Archives of Andrology,* 36:133-138.

Larsen L et al. (2000). Computer-assisted semen analysis parameters as predictors for fertility of men from the general population. The Danish First Pregnancy Planner Study Team. *Human Reproduction,* 15:1562-1567.

Le Lannou D, Lansac J (1993). Artificial procreation with frozen donor semen: the French experience of CECOS. In: Barratt CLR, Cooke ID, eds. *Donor insemination*. Cambridge, Cambridge University Press: 152-169.

Le Lannou D et al. (1992). Effects of chamber depth on the motion pattern of human spermatozoa in semen or in capacitating medium. *Human Reproduction*, 7:1417-1421.

Lee JD et al. (1996). Analysis of chromosome constitution of human spermatozoa with normal and aberrant head morphologies after injection into mouse oocytes. *Human Reproduction,* 11:1942-1946.

Leibo SP et al. (2002). Cryopreservation of human spermatozoa. In: Vayena E et al., eds. *Current practices and controversies in assisted reproduction.* Geneva, World Health Organization: 152-165.

Lentner C (1981). *Geigy scientific tables. Vol. 1:Units of measurement, body fluids, composition of the body, nutrition*. Basle, Ciba-Geigy: 50.

Lindsay KS et al. (1995). Classification of azoospermic samples. *Lancet,* 345:1642.

Liu DY, Baker HWG (1988). The proportion of human sperm with poor morphology but normal intact acrosomes detected with *Pisum sativum* agglutinin correlates with fertilization in vitro. *Fertility and Sterility*, 50:288-293.

Liu DY, Baker HWG (1992a). Morphology of spermatozoa bound to the zona pellucida of human oocytes that failed to fertilize in vitro*. Journal of Reproduction and Fertility*, 94:71-84.

Liu DY, Baker HW (1992b). Tests of human sperm function and fertilization in vitro. *Fertility and Sterility,* 58:465-483.

Liu DY, Baker HWG (1994). Disordered acrosome reaction of spermatozoa bound to the zona pellucida: a newly discovered sperm defect causing infertility with reduced sperm–zona pellucida penetration and reduced fertilization in vitro. *Human Reproduction*, 9:1694-1700.

Liu DY, Baker HWG (1996). Relationship between the zonae pellucida (ZP) and ionophore A23187-induced acrosome reaction with the ability of sperm to penetrate the ZP in men with normal sperm-ZP binding. *Fertility and Sterility,* 66:312-315.

Liu DY, Baker HWG (2003). Disordered zona pellucida induced acrosome reaction and failure of in-vitro fertilization in patients with unexplained infertility. *Fertility and Sterility*, 79:74-80.

Liu DY, Baker HW (2004). High frequency of defective sperm–zona pellucida interaction in oligozoospermic infertile men. *Human Reproduction,* 19:228-233.

Liu DY et al. (1988). A human sperm–zona pellucida binding test using oocytes that failed to fertilize in vitro. *Fertility and Sterility*, 50:782-788.

Liu DY et al. (1989). A sperm–zona pellucida binding test and *in vitro* fertilization. *Fertility and Sterility*, 52:281-287.

Liu DY et al. (1990). Use of oocytes that failed to be fertilized in vitro to study human sperm–oocyte interactions: comparison of sperm–oolemma and sperm–zona pellucida binding, and relationship with results of IVF. *Reproduction, Fertility, Development*, 2:641-650.

Liu DY et al. (1991a). Relationship between sperm motility assessed with the Hamilton Thorn motility analyzer and fertilization rates in vitro. *Journal of Andrology,* 12:231-239.

Liu DY et al. (1991b). Horse and marmoset sperm bind to the zona pellucida of salt stored human oocytes. *Fertility and Sterility*, 56:764-767.

Liu DY et al. (2003). Low proportions of sperm can bind to the zona pellucida of human oocytes. *Human Reproduction*, 18:2382-2389.

Liu DY et al. (2004). Clinical application of sperm–oocyte interaction tests in in-vitro fertilization—embryo transfer and intracytoplasmic sperm injection programs. *Fertility and Sterility*, 82:1251-1263.

MacLeod J, Wang Y (1979). Male fertility potential in terms of semen quality: a review of the past, a study of the present. *Fertility and Sterility,* 31:103-116.

MacMillan RA, Baker HW (1987). Comparison of latex and polyacrylamide beads for detecting sperm antibodies. *Clinical Reproduction and Fertility,* 5:203-209.

Mahadevan M et al. (1981). Noninvasive method of semen collection for successful artificial insemination in a case of retrograde ejaculation. *Fertility and Sterility*, 36:243-247.

Mahmoud AM et al. (1997). The performance of 10 different methods for the estimation of sperm concentration. *Fertility and Sterility,* 68:340-345.

Martin RH et al. (2003). A comparison of the frequency of sperm chromosome abnormalities in men with mild, moderate, and severe oligozoospermia. *Biology of Reproduction,* 69:535-539.

Matson PL (1995). External quality assessment for semen analysis and sperm antibody detection: results of a pilot scheme. *Human Reproduction*, 10:620-625.

McKinney KA et al. (1996). Reactive oxygen species generation in human sperm: luminol and lucigenin chemiluminescence probe. *Archives of Andrology,* 36:119-125.

Meinertz H, Bronson R (1988). Detection of antisperm antibodies on the surface of motile spermatozoa. Comparison of the immunobead binding technique (IBT) and the mixed antiglobulin reaction (MAR). *American Journal of Reproductive Immunology and Microbiology*, 18:120-123.

Menkveld R, Kruger TF (1990). Basic semen analysis. In: Acosta AA et al., eds. *Human spermatozoa in assisted reproduction.* Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins: 68-84.

Menkveld R, Kruger TF (1996). Evaluation of sperm morphology by light microscopy. In: Acosta AA, Kruger TF, eds. *Human spermatozoa in assisted reproduction*, 2nd ed. London, Parthenon Publishing: 89-107.

Menkveld R et al. (1990). The evaluation of morphological characteristics of human spermatozoa according to stricter criteria. *Human Reproduction,* 5:586-592.

Menkveld R et al. (1991). Sperm selection capacity of the human zona pellucida. *Molecular Reproduction and Development*, 30:346-352.

Menkveld R et al. (1997). Effects of different staining and washing procedures on the results of human sperm morphology by manual and computerized methods. *Andrologia,* 29:1-7.

Menkveld R et al. (2001). Semen parameters, including WHO and strict criteria morphology, in a fertile and subfertile population: an effort towards standardization of in-vivo thresholds. *Human Reproduction,* 16:1165-1171.

Meschede D et al. (1993). Influence of three different preparation techniques on the results of human sperm morphology analysis. *International Journal of Andrology*, 16:362-369.

Meseguer M et al. (2006). Sperm cryopreservation in oncological patients: a 14-year follow-up study. *Fertility and Sterility,* 85:640-645.

Moghissi KS (1976). Post-coital test: physiological basis, technique and interpretation. *Fertility and Sterility*, 27:117-129.

Moghissi KS et al. (1964). Mechanism of sperm migration. *Fertility and Sterility,* 15:15-23.

Möllering H, Gruber W (1966). Determination of citrate with citrate lyase. *Analytical Biochemistry*, 17:369-376.

Morshedi M et al. (2003). Efficacy and pregnancy outcome of two methods of semen preparation for intrauterine insemination: a prospective randomized study. *Fertility and Sterility,* 79 (Suppl. 3): 1625-1632.

Mortimer D (1994a). *Practical laboratory andrology.* Oxford, Oxford University Press.

Mortimer D (1994b). Laboratory standards in routine clinical andrology. *Reproductive Medicine Review*, 3:97-111.

Mortimer D (2004). Current and future concepts and practices in human sperm cryobanking. *Reproductive Biomedicine Online,* 9:134-151.

Mortimer D, Menkveld R (2001). Sperm morphology assessment—historical perspectives and current opinions. *Journal of Andrology*, 22:192-205.

Mortimer D, Mortimer S (2005). *Quality and risk management in the IVF laboratory.* Cambridge, Cambridge University Press.

Mortimer D et al. (1995). Workshop report: clinical CASA—the quest for consensus. *Reproduction, Fertility and Development*, 7:951-959.

Nahoum CRD, Cardozo D (1980). Staining for volumetric count of leukocytes in semen and prostate-vesicular fluid. *Fertility and Sterility*, 34:68-69.

Neuwinger J et al. (1990). External quality control in the andrology laboratory: an experimental multicenter trial. *Fertility and Sterility*, 54:308-314.

Neuwinger J et al. (1991). Hyaluronic acid as a medium for human sperm migration tests. *Human Reproduction*, 6:396-400.

Ng FL et al. (1992). Comparison of Percoll, mini-Percoll and swim-up methods for sperm preparation from abnormal semen samples. *Human Reproduction*, 7:261-266.

Ng KK et al. (2004). Sperm output of older men. *Human Reproduction,* 19:1811-1815.

Oehninger S et al. (1993). The specificity of human spermatozoa/zona pellucida interaction under hemi-zona assay conditions. *Molecular Reproduction and Development,* 35:57-61.

Oei SG et al. (1995). When is the post-coital test normal? A critical appraisal. *Human Reproduction*, 10:1711-1714.

Overstreet JW et al. (1980). In-vitro capacitation of human spermatozoa after passage through a column of cervical mucus. *Fertility and Sterility,* 34:604-606.

Paquin R et al. (1984). Similar biochemical properties of human seminal plasma and epididymal α1,4-glucosidase. *Journal of Andrology,* 5:277-282.

Pelfrey RJ et al., (1982). Abnormalities of sperm morphology in cases of persistent infertility after vasectomy reversal. *Fertility and Sterility*, 38:112-114.

Pérez-Sánchez F et al. (1994). Improvement in quality of cryopreserved human spermatozoa by swim-up before freezing. *International Journal of Andrology,* 17:115-120.

Perloff WH, Steinberger E (1963). In-vitro penetration of cervical mucus by spermatozoa. *Fertility and Sterility,* 14:231-236.

Perloff WH et al. (1964). Conception with human spermatozoa frozen by nitrogen vapor technique. *Fertility and Sterility,* 15:501-504.

Plaut DA, Westgard JOW (2002). QC external quality assessment. In: Westgard JO, ed. *Basic QC practices: training in statistical quality control for healthcare laboratories*. Madison, WI, QC Publishing: 125-163.

Poland ML et al. (1985). Variation of semen measures within normal men. *Fertility and Sterility,* 44:396-400.

Polge C et al. (1949). Revival of spermatozoa after vitrification and dehydration at low temperatures. *Nature,* 164:626-627.

Pound N et al. (2002). Duration of sexual arousal predicts semen parameters for masturbatory ejaculates. *Physiology and Behavior,* 76:685-689.

Punab M et al. (2003). The limit of leucocytospermia from the microbiological viewpoint. *Andrologia,* 35:271-278.

Quinn P et al. (1985). Improved pregnancy rate in human in-vitro fertilization with the use of a medium based on the composition of human tubal fluid. *Fertility and Sterility,* 44:493-498.

Rajah SV et al. (1992). Comparison of mixed antiglobulin reaction and direct immunobead test for detection of sperm-bound antibodies in subfertile males. *Fertility and Sterility*, 57:1300-1303.

Rao B et al. (1989). Lipid peroxidation in human spermatozoa as related to midpiece abnormalities and motility. *Gamete Research*, 24:127-134.

Rhemrev J et al. (1989). Human sperm selection by glass wool filtration and two-layer discontinuous Percoll gradient centrifugation. *Fertility and Sterility*, 51:685-690.

Rose NR et al. (1976). Techniques for detection of iso- and auto-antibodies to human spermatozoa. *Clinical and Experimental Immunology,* 23:175-199.

Rossi AG, Aitken RJ (1997). Interactions between leukocytes and the male reproductive system. The unanswered questions. *Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology,* 424:245-252.

Said TM et al. (2004). Human sperm superoxide anion generation and correlation with semen quality in patients with male infertility. *Fertility and Sterility,* 82:871-877.

Sakkas D et al. (1998). Sperm nuclear DNA damage and altered chromatin structure: effect on fertilization and embryo development. *Human Reproduction*, 13(Suppl. 4):11-19.

Savasi V et al. (2007). Safety of sperm washing and ART outcome in 741 HIV-1-serodiscordant couples. *Human Reproduction,* 22:772-777.

Sawyer DE et al. (2003). Quantitative analysis of gene-specific DNA damage in human spermatozoa. *Mutation Research,* 529:21-34.

Scarselli G et al. (1987). Approach to immunological male infertility: a comparison between MAR test and direct immunobead test. *Acta Europea Fertilitatis*, 18:55-57.

Schmidt KL et al. (2004). Assisted reproduction in male cancer survivors: fertility treatment and outcome in 67 couples. *Human Reproduction,* 19:2806-2810.

Seaman EK et al. (1996). Accuracy of semen counting chambers as determined by the use of latex beads. *Fertility and Sterility,* 66:662-665.

Shah VP et al. (2000). Bioanalytical method validation—a revisit with a decade of progress. *Pharmacological Research,* 17:1551-1557.

Sharif K (2000). Reclassification of azoospermia: the time has come? *Human Reproduction,* 15:237-238.

Sharma RK et al. (2001). Relationship between seminal white blood cell counts and oxidative stress in men treated at an infertility clinic. *Journal of Andrology,* 22:575-583.

Sherman JK (1990). Cryopreservation of human semen. In: Keel BA, Webster BW, eds. *CRC handbook of the laboratory diagnosis and treatment of infertility.* Boca Raton, CRC Press: 229-259.

Shibahara H et al. (2004). Prediction of pregnancy by intrauterine insemination using CASA estimates and strict criteria in patients with male factor infertility. *International Journal of Andrology,* 27:63-68.

Slama R et al. (2002). Time to pregnancy and semen parameters: a cross-sectional study among fertile couples from four European cities. *Human Reproduction,* 17:503-515.

Smith R et al. (1996). Total antioxidant capacity of human seminal plasma. *Human Reproduction,* 11:1655-1660.

Sobrero AJ, MacLeod J (1962). The immediate postcoital test. *Fertility and Sterility,* 13:184-189.

Soler C et al. (2000). Objective evaluation of the morphology of human epididymal sperm heads. *International Journal of Andrology,* 23:77-84.

Tedder RS (1995). Hepatitis B transmission from contaminated cryopreservation tank. *Lancet,* 346:137-140.

Tomlinson M (2005). Managing risk associated with cryopreservation. *Human Reproduction,* 20:1751-1756.

Tomlinson MJ et al. (1993). Prospective study of leukocytes and leukocyte subpopulations in semen suggests they are not a cause of male infertility. *Fertility and Sterility,* 60:1069-1075.

Toner JP et al. (1995). Value of sperm morphology assessed by strict criteria for prediction of the outcome of artificial (intrauterine) insemination. *Andrologia,* 27:143-148.

Tyler JP et al. (1982a). Studies of human seminal parameters with frequent ejaculation. I. Clinical characteristics. *Clinical Reproduction and Fertility,* 1:273-285.

Tyler JP et al. (1982b). Studies of human seminal parameters with frequent ejaculation II. Spermatozoal vitality and storage. *Clinical Reproduction and Fertility,* 1:287-293.

Van der Merwe FH et al. (2005). The use of semen parameters to identify the subfertile male in the general population. *Gynecologic and Obstetric Investigation,* 59:86-91.

Van Waart J et al. (2001). Predictive value of normal sperm morphology in intrauterine insemination (IUI): a structured literature review. *Human Reproduction Update,* 7:495-500.

Verheyen G et al. (1993). Effect of freezing method, thawing temperature and post-thaw dilution/washing on motility (CASA) and morphology characteristics of high-quality human sperm. *Human Reproduction*, 8:1678-1684.

Virro MR et al. (2004). Sperm chromatin structure assay (SCSA) parameters are related to fertilization, blastocyst development, and ongoing pregnancy in in-vitro fertilization and intracytoplasmic sperm injection cycles. *Fertility and Sterility,* 81:1289-1295.

von der Kammer H et al. (1991). The evaluation of markers of prostatic function. *Urological Research*, 19:343-347.

von Eckardstein S et al. (2000). Seminal plasma characteristics as indicators of cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene mutations in men with obstructive azoospermia. *Fertility and Sterility,* 73:1226-1231.

Watson PF (1995). Recent developments and concepts in the cryopreservation of spermatozoa and the assessment of their post-thawing function. *Reproduction Fertility and Development,* 7:871-891.

Weiske WH (1994). Minimal invasive Vasektomie mittels Fulgurationstechnik. Erfahrungen bei 1000 Patienten in 12 Jahren. *Urologe*, B34:448-452.

Weiske WH et al. (2000). Clinical findings in congenital absence of the vasa deferentia. *Andrologia,* 32:13-18.

Westgard JO (2002). Foreword to the second edition. In: Westgard JO, ed. *Basic QC practices: training in statistical quality control for healthcare laboratories.* Madison, WI, QC Publishing.

Wheeler DJ (1993). *Understanding variation: the key to managing chaos*. Knoxville, TN, SPC Press.

Wheeler DJ, Chambers DS (1992). *Understanding statistical process control*, 2nd ed. Knoxville, TN, SPC Press.

WHO (1986). Consultation on the zona-free hamster oocyte penetration test and the diagnosis of male fertility. *International Journal of Andrology,* (Suppl. 6).

WHO (1987). (prepared by Comhaire F et al.) Towards more objectivity in diagnosis and management of male infertility. *International Journal of Andrology,* (Suppl. 7): 22-24.

WHO (1996). Task Force for the Regulation of Male Fertility. Contraceptive efficacy of testosterone-induced azoospermia and oligozoospermia in normal men. *Fertility and Sterility,* 65:821-829.

WHO (1999). *Laboratory manual for the examination of human semen and sperm–cervical mucus interaction*, 4th ed. Cambridge, Cambridge University Press.

WHO (2004). *Laboratory biosafety manual*, 3rd ed. Geneva, World Health Organization (http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2004/9241546506.pdf, last accessed 25 February 2010).

Wilton LJ et al. (1988). Human male infertility caused by degeneration and death of sperms in the epididymis. *Fertility and Sterility,* 49:1051-1058.

Wolf DP (1995). Semen cryopreservation. In: Keye WR et al., eds. *Infertility evaluation and treatment.* Philadelphia, WB Saunders: 686-695.

Wolff H (1995). The biologic significance of white blood cells in semen. *Fertility and Sterility,* 63:1143-1157.

Woods EJ et al. (2004). Fundamental cryobiology of reproductive cells and tissues. *Cryobiology,* 48:146-156.

Yanagimachi R et al. (1979). Retention of biologic characteristics of zona pellucida in highly concentrated salt solution: the use of salt stored eggs for assessing the fertilizing capacity of spermatozoa. *Fertility and Sterility*, 31:562-574.

Zavos PM, Goodpasture JC (1989). Clinical improvements of specific seminal deficiencies via intercourse with a seminal collection device versus masturbation. *Fertility and Sterility,* 51:190-193.

Zinaman MJ et al. (1996). Evaluation of computer-assisted semen analysis (CASA) with IDENT stain to determine sperm concentration. *Journal of Andrology*, 17:288-292.

Zinaman MJ et al. (2000). Semen quality and human fertility: a prospective study with healthy couples. *Journal of Andrology,* 21:145-153.

Zorn B et al. (2003). Seminal reactive oxygen species as predictors of fertilization, embryo quality and pregnancy rates after conventional in-vitro fertilization and intracytoplasmic sperm injection. *International Journal of Andrology,* 26:279-285.

Appendices

APPENDIX 1 Reference values and semen nomenclature

A1.1 Reference values

Measurements made on semen samples need to be compared with reference values to allow decisions to be made about patient management and thresholds for clinical trials or investigations. The reference values given here have been generated from the results of several prospective, cross-sectional studies of semen quality and fertility. They were obtained by direct, retrospective selection of fertile men, defined as men whose partner conceived within 12 months after stopping use of contraception (Cooper et al., 2010).

- Only complete semen samples—one per man (the first where several were given), obtained following 2–7 days of abstinence—were included in this analysis.
- Semen volume was measured using methods recommended by WHO at the time, namely, weighing or transferring to pipettes or graduated vessels. Total sperm number was calculated from concentrations measured by haemocytometer on fixed, diluted samples. Total motility (PR + NP), progressive motility (PR), non-progressive motility (NP) and immotile sperm (IM) were measured at room temperature or at 37 °C. Data on normal sperm morphology were taken only from laboratories that provided values not exceeding the anticipated maximum level for the strict categorization (Tygerberg) method (approximately 35% normal forms). Vitality was determined by exclusion of vital dye (eosin) from sperm head membranes.
- Statistical tradition is to take the 2.5th centile from a two-sided reference interval as the threshold below which values may be considered to come from a different population. However, a one-sided reference interval was considered to be more appropriate for semen parameters, since high values are unlikely to be detrimental to fertility. The 5th centile lower reference limits are given in Table A1.1, and the complete frequency distributions are given in Table A1.2.

Comment 1: The reference distributions in Table A1.2 provide a description of the semen characteristics of recent fathers, whose partner became pregnant within 12 months of stopping use of contraception.

Comment 2: Fathers constitute a select group of individuals and their semen parameters may be different from those of the general population of healthy men.

Comment 3: Semen characteristics are highly variable, both within and among men, and are not the sole determinants of a couple's fertility; the ranges therefore provide only a guide to a man's fertility status.

Comment 4: Semen parameters that lie within the 95% reference interval do not guarantee fertility.

Comment 5: Men whose semen characteristics fall below the lower limits given here are not necessarily infertile; their semen characteristics are below the reference range for recent fathers—as are, by definition, those of 5% of the fertile men who provided data used in the calculation of the reference range.

Comment 6: A man's semen characteristics need to be interpreted in conjunction with clinical information.

Comment 7: There may be regional differences in semen quality, or differences between laboratories; laboratories should consider preparing their own reference ranges, using the techniques described in this manual.

Comment 8: Time to pregnancy is also affected by the female partner's fertility status.

Table A1.1 Lower reference limits (5th centiles and their 95% confidence intervals) for semen characteristics

Parameter	Lower reference limit
Semen volume (ml)	1.5 (1.4–1.7)
Total sperm number (10^6 per ejaculate)	39 (33–46)
Sperm concentration (10^6 per ml)	15 (12–16)
Total motility (PR + NP, %)	40 (38–42)
Progressive motility (PR, %)	32 (31–34)
Vitality (live spermatozoa, %)	58 (55–63)
Sperm morphology (normal forms, %)	4 (3.0–4.0)
Other consensus threshold values	
pH	≥7.2
Peroxidase-positive leukocytes (10^6 per ml)	<1.0
MAR test (motile spermatozoa with bound particles, %)	<50
Immunobead test (motile spermatozoa with bound beads, %)	<50
Seminal zinc (μmol/ejaculate)	≥2.4
Seminal fructose (μmol/ejaculate)	≥13
Seminal neutral glucosidase (mU/ejaculate)	≥20

Table A1.2 Distribution of values for semen parameters from men whose partners became pregnant within 12 months of discontinuing contraceptive use

Parameter (units)	*N*	Centile								
		2.5	5	10	25	50	75	90	95	97.5
Semen volume (ml)	1941	1.2	1.5	2.0	2.7	3.7	4.8	6.0	6.8	7.6
Total sperm number (10^6 per ejaculate)	1859	23	39	69	142	255	422	647	802	928
Sperm concentration (10^6 per ml)	1859	9	15	22	41	73	116	169	213	259
Total motility (PR + NP, %)	1781	34	40	45	53	61	69	75	78	81
Progressive motility (PR, %)	1780	28	32	39	47	55	62	69	72	75
Non-progressive motility (NP, %)	1778	1	1	2	3	5	9	15	18	22
Immotile spermatozoa (IM, %)	1863	19	22	25	31	39	46	54	59	65
Vitality (%)	428	53	58	64	72	79	84	88	91	92
Normal forms (%)	1851	3	4	5.5	9	15	24.5	36	44	48

Source: Cooper et al., 2010.

A1.2 Nomenclature

This manual retains the nomenclature introduced to describe deviations from reference semen values, using words rather than numbers (see Table A1.3), although some have argued for the abandonment of such terminology (Grimes & Lopez, 2007). The nomenclature simply classifies the quality of the semen and does not suggest any biological cause (Eliasson et al., 1970). These terms are used to describe samples with values lying outside the reference range, and therefore possibly originating from a different population. Much of the semen nomenclature relates to a single parameter. However, normozoospermia refers to three sperm parameters—number, motility and morphology. Thus deviations from the reference range for each parameter can be described individually.

References

Cooper TG et al. (2010). World Health Organization reference values for human semen characteristics. *Human Reproduction Update,* 16:231-245.

Grimes DA, Lopez LM (2007). “Oligozoospermia”, “azoospermia”, and other semen-analysis terminology: the need for better science. *Fertility and Sterility*, 88:1491-1494.

Eliasson R et al. (1970). Empfehlungen zur Nomenklatur in der Andrologie. *Andrologia*, 2:1257.

Table A1.3 Nomenclature related to semen quality

aspermia	no semen (no or retrograde ejaculation)
asthenozoospermia	percentage of progressively motile (PR) spermatozoa below the lower reference limit
asthenoteratozoospermia	percentages of both progressively motile (PR) and morphologically normal spermatozoa below the lower reference limits
azoospermia	no spermatozoa in the ejaculate (given as the limit of quantification for the assessment method employed)
cryptozoospermia	spermatozoa absent from fresh preparations but observed in a centrifuged pellet
haemospermia (haematospermia)	presence of erythrocytes in the ejaculate
leukospermia (leukocytospermia, pyospermia)	presence of leukocytes in the ejaculate above the threshold value
necrozoospermia	low percentage of live, and high percentage of immotile, spermatozoa in the ejaculate
normozoospermia	total number (or concentration, depending on outcome reported)* of spermatozoa, and percentages of progressively motile (PR) and morphologically normal spermatozoa, equal to or above the lower reference limits
oligoasthenozoospermia	total number (or concentration, depending on outcome reported)* of spermatozoa, and percentage of progressively motile (PR) spermatozoa, below the lower reference limits
oligoasthenoteratozoospermia	total number (or concentration, depending on outcome reported)* of spermatozoa, and percentages of both progressively motile (PR) and morphologically normal spermatozoa, below the lower reference limits
oligoteratozoospermia	total number (or concentration, depending on outcome reported)* of spermatozoa, and percentage of morphologically normal spermatozoa, below the lower reference limits
oligozoospermia	total number (or concentration, depending on outcome reported)* of spermatozoa below the lower reference limit
teratozoospermia	percentage of morphologically normal spermatozoa below the lower reference limit

**Preference should always be given to total number, as this parameter takes precedence over concentration.*

Note: The suffix “spermia” refers to the ejaculate and “zoospermia” to the spermatozoa. Thus, the following terms should not be used: asthenospermia, asthenoteratospermia, cryptospermia, oligoasthenospermia, oligoteratospermia, oligospermia, teratospermia.

APPENDIX 2 Equipment and safety

A2.1 Basic supplies needed in an andrology laboratory

Below is a list of the supplies and equipment needed in an andrology laboratory to perform the basic tests described in this manual.

Consult the published scientific literature referenced in this manual or elsewhere if you require assistance in finding a source of any of the following supplies.

A2.1.1 The laboratory should have the following general equipment and supplies:

- balance;
- benches with impermeable work surfaces;
- containers:
  - for disposal of sharp objects;
  - for hazardous waste;
- copy of *Laboratory biosafety manual* (WHO, 2004);
- deep freezer;
- disinfectant or sodium hypochlorite, 0.1% (v/v) and 1% (v/v) in purified water;
- disinfectant soap or antiseptic skin cleanser;
- disposable gloves;
- eye-wash solution or eye-rinse;
- first-aid kit;
- fume cupboard for storage of, and for working with, toxic reagents, chemicals or dyes;
- refrigerator;
- shower.

A2.1.2 The following supplies and equipment are needed for semen analysis:

- capillary tubes and sealant (for mucus penetration assay);
- CASA machine (optional);
- centrifuges:
  - bench centrifuge capable of achieving 300–500*g* (for routine sperm handling and for urine), 1000*g* (for semen markers) and 2000*g* (for viscous samples);
  - higher-speed centrifuge reaching 3000*g* (for preparing suspected azoospermic samples) or microcentrifuge reaching 16 000*g* (for obtaining sperm-free seminal plasma) (see Box A2.1);
- cryoconservation equipment (optional);

- condoms: spermicide-free, non-toxic (optional);
- dilution vials;
- dissecting microscope (optional; for collecting hamster oocytes);
- filter paper, 90 g/m^2 (for filtering stains);
- fluorescence microscope and objectives (optional; for high-sensitivity sperm concentration measurements and acrosome reaction tests);
- haemocytometers: improved Neubauer or alternative, 100 μm deep, with thick coverslip (thickness number 4, 0.44 mm);
- incubator (37 °C), preferably with 5% (v/v) CO_2 (optional);
- laboratory film: self-sealing, mouldable;
- laboratory multi-key counter (six or nine keys);
- large-volume counting chamber (optional; for assessing low sperm concentrations);
- luminometer (optional; for ROS assay);
- microscope slides:
  - with ground glass or textured writing surface and coverslips (thickness number 1.5, 0.16–0.19 mm);
  - plain slides for pulling a drop of semen over another slide to make semen smears;
- pen/pencils:
  - for writing on frosted glass slides; a pencil with lead of softness HB (American rating number 2) is adequate;
  - a wax/grease pencil (delimiting pen—optional; for limiting the area of antibody solution on a slide);
  - permanent marker pen;
- pH (ISFET) electrode (optional; for viscous semen samples);
- pH paper (range 6–10);
- phase-contrast microscope (for estimation of sperm concentration, motility, morphology) with at least a 50-watt light source and the following accessories (see Appendix 3):
  - ×10, ×20 (or ×25), ×40 (or ×63) positive-phase objectives, ×100 oil-immersion objective;
  - ×40 negative-phase objective (optional; for eosin vitality test);
  - wide-field ×10 (or ×12.5) eyepiece (ocular);
  - eyepiece reticle (for judging area of field scanned for motility);
  - stage micrometer (for sperm morphology measurement);

  - England finder (glass slide with grid—optional; for QC assessment);
  - heated stage (optional; for measurement of sperm velocity);
- pipettes and pipette tips:
  - Pasteur pipettes with latex droppers, or plastic disposable transfer pipettes, or automatic pipettes for mixing semen;
  - air-displacement pipettes;
  - positive-displacement pipettes to measure 10–100 μl;
- record forms for results of semen and mucus analysis (see Appendix 6);
- sample mixers:
  - two-dimensional shaker or rotating wheel for mixing semen (optional);
  - vortex mixer for diluted semen;
- sealing tape for 96-well plates (optional; for fructose assay);
- semen collection container:
  - disposable wide-mouth containers with lids;
  - autoclavable glass collection cylinders;
- slide chambers, disposable (optional; for QC motility sample preparation);
- spectrophotometer (optional; for semen biochemistry assays);
- spot plate, porcelain or borosilicate glass (for eosin–nigrosin test);
- time generator (optional; for QC sample preparation);
- tissue paper: lint-free;
- warming plate: bench-top (optional; for prewarming slides for motility assessment).

A2.1.3 The following chemicals may be required:

- antibodies (CD45 for leukocytes);
- antifoaming agent (optional; for QC sample preparation);
- cellular peroxidase kit (optional);
- cryoprotective media (optional);
- density-gradient media (for sperm preparation);
- fructose assay kit (optional);
- glutaraldehyde (optional; for the HOP test);
- mineral oil (optional; for the HOP test);
- neutral α-glucosidase assay kit (optional);
- Papanicolaou stain;

- petroleum jelly (optional; for HOP test);
- rapid staining kit (optional; for sperm morphology);
- wax (melting point 48–66 °C) (optional; for HOP test);
- zinc assay kit (optional).

Box A2.1 Calculating centrifugal forces

The force to which spermatozoa are subjected during centrifugation (relative centrifugal force, RCF) depends on the speed of rotation (*N*, revolutions per minute, r.p.m.) and the distance from the centre of the rotor to the point at which the force is to be measured (usually the bottom of the centrifuge tube) (radius, *R*, cm). RCF is calculated from the formula: $1.118 \times 10^{-5} \times R \times N^2$. For example, with a rotor radius of 8.6 cm, centrifugation at 5000 r.p.m. will produce a force of 2404*g*; with a rotor radius of 13.5 cm, centrifugation at 3900 r.p.m. will produce 2296*g*. Fig. A2.1 is a nomogram for determining RCF from the rotor radius and the speed of rotation.

A2.2 Potential biohazards in an andrology laboratory

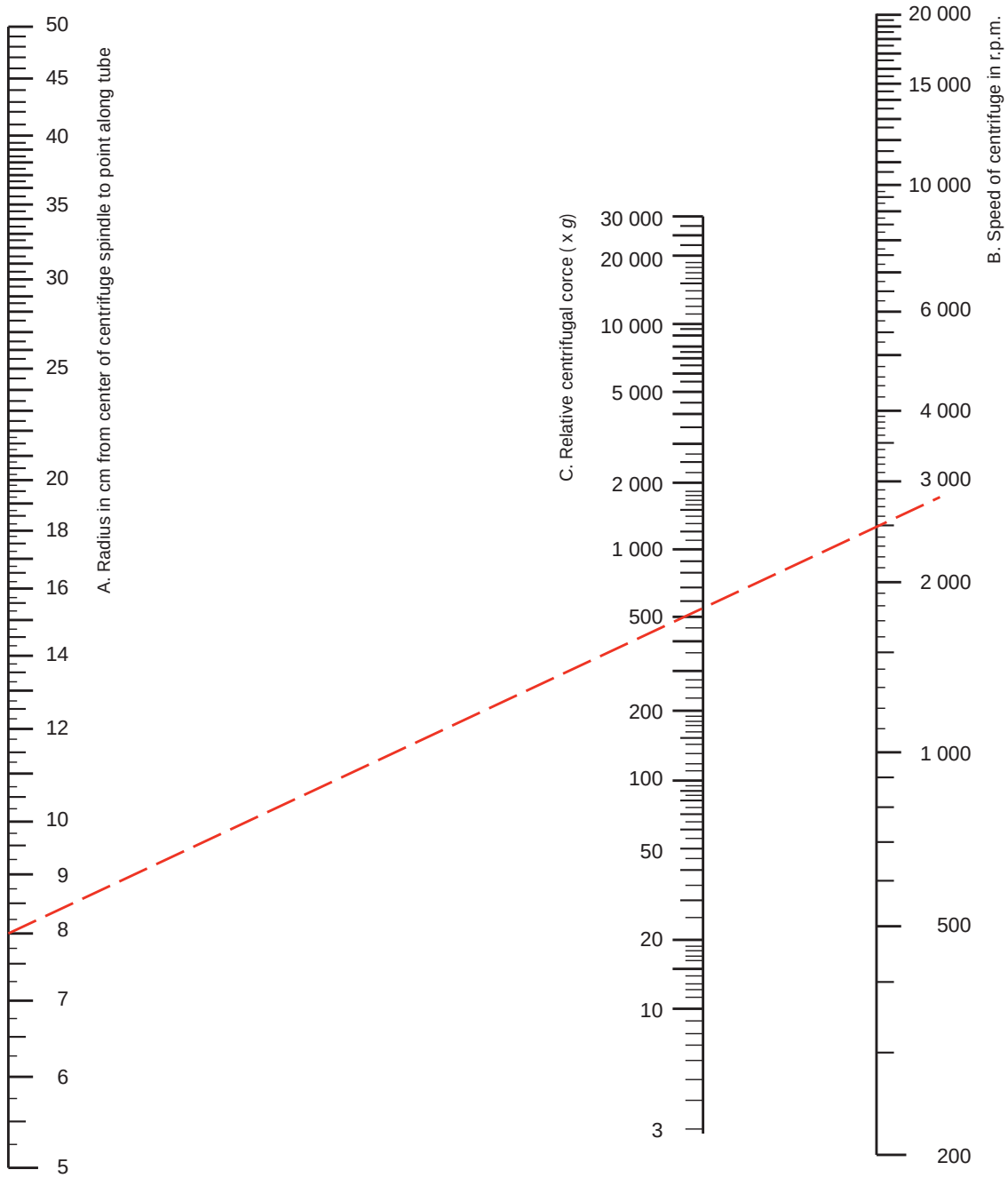
Human body fluids, such as semen, are potentially infectious and should be handled and disposed of with special care. For the andrology laboratory, the most important infectious microorganisms that may be found in semen are HIV and hepatitis B and C viruses (HBV and HCV). Laboratory personnel should treat all biological samples as potentially infectious and should use appropriate caution in handling them.

A2.3 Safety procedures for laboratory personnel

- All laboratory personnel who work with human samples should be immunized against hepatitis B.
- No-one should eat, drink, smoke, apply cosmetics or store food in the andrology laboratory.
- Pipetting by mouth should not be permitted. Mechanical pipetting devices should always be used for the manipulation of liquids.
- All laboratory staff should wear a laboratory coat or disposable gown in the laboratory and remove it upon leaving. Laboratory personnel should wear disposable gloves (rubber, latex or vinyl, with or without powder), especially when handling fresh or frozen semen or seminal plasma or other biological samples and any containers that have come into contact with them. Gloves must be removed and discarded when staff leave the laboratory or use the telephone or computer. They must not be reused.
- Personnel should wash their hands regularly, especially before leaving the laboratory, after handling specimens and after removing gowns and gloves.
- Staff should take precautions to prevent accidental wounds from sharp instruments that may be contaminated with semen, and avoid contact of semen with open skin, cuts, abrasions or lesions.

Fig. A2.1 Nomogram for determining relative centrifugal force (RCF) from rotor radius and rotation speed

A straight line joining the rotor radius (cm, *left axis*) and rotation speed (r.p.m., *right axis*) intersects the *middle axis* at the RCF. In the example, a radius of 8 cm with a rotation speed of 2500 r.p.m. gives an RCF of approximately 550*g*. (The calculated value is 559*g* (see Box A2.1)).



- Measures should be taken to prevent, and where necessary contain, spillages of semen or blood or urine samples.
- All sharp objects (needles, blades, etc.) should be placed in a marked container after use. This container should be sealed before it becomes full and disposed of in the same way as other dangerous laboratory items.
- All potentially hazardous items (gloves, semen containers) should be collected and disposed of appropriately.
- Face masks or surgical masks should be worn by all staff performing procedures that could potentially create aerosols or droplets, e.g. vortexing and centrifuging of open containers. The last drops of semen specimens should not be forcibly expelled from pipettes, because this can cause droplets or aerosols to form.
- Staff should wear protective safety goggles, insulated gloves and closed shoes when necessary, e.g. when using liquid nitrogen (see section A2.5).

A2.4 Safety procedures for laboratory equipment

Work surfaces and non-disposable vessels that have come into contact with semen or other biological samples should be sterilized or disinfected. The following procedures must be performed:

Daily, on completing the analyses:

- Wash the work space with disinfectant, e.g. sodium hypochlorite 0.1% (1 g/l) or similar disinfectant, wait at least 1 hour (or overnight), then rinse off disinfectant with water.
- Soak the counting chambers and coverslips in sodium hypochlorite 0.1% (1 g/l) or similar disinfectant overnight. Rinse off disinfectant with water.

After a spill:

- If the outside of a specimen container becomes contaminated, wash with disinfectant, e.g. sodium hypochlorite 0.1% (1 g/l) or similar disinfectant, then rinse with water.
- Immediately after any spills occur, wash the bench top with disinfectant e.g. sodium hypochlorite 1.0% (10 g/l) or similar disinfectant, wait at least 4 hours, then rinse off disinfectant with water.

When necessary, heat inactivation of HIV in semen collection vessels can be achieved by:

- Dry heat sterilization for at least 2 hours at 170 °C (340 °F). Cover with foil before heating and allow to cool before handling.
- Steam sterilization (autoclaving) for at least 20 minutes at 121 °C (250 °F) at 101 kPa (15 psi or 1 atmosphere) above atmospheric pressure.
- Continuous boiling for 20–30 minutes.

A2.5 Safety precautions when handling liquid nitrogen

- Liquid nitrogen is dangerous. Always handle it carefully, use only approved tanks and do not attempt to seal containers. Use tongs to withdraw objects immersed in liquid nitrogen.
- Protect eyes with a face shield or safety goggles. Protect hands with loose-fitting dry leather or insulated gloves. Protect feet with closed shoes.
- When liquid nitrogen is spilled on a surface it tends to cover it completely, and therefore cools a large area. Objects that are soft and pliable at room temperature usually become hard and brittle at the temperature of liquid nitrogen.
- The extremely low temperature can cause serious injury. A spill on the skin can produce an effect similar to a burn. The gas issuing from the liquid is extremely cold. Delicate tissues, such as those of the eyes, can be damaged by even a brief exposure to the gas, which may not affect the skin of the face or hands.
- Stand clear of boiling and splashing liquid nitrogen, and its issuing cold gas. Boiling and splashing always occur when a warm container is charged, or when objects are inserted into the liquid. Always perform these operations slowly to minimize boiling and splashing.
- Avoid touching uninsulated pipes. Never allow any unprotected part of the body to touch pipes or vessels containing liquid nitrogen. The extremely cold metal may stick fast and the flesh will be torn when attempts are made to detach it.
- Work in well-ventilated areas. A small amount of liquid nitrogen forms a large amount of gas (at room temperature it is nine times its liquid volume). If nitrogen gas evaporates from the liquid in a closed room, the percentage of oxygen in the air may become low and create a risk of asphyxiation. Oxygen detectors, which trigger an alarm when the oxygen level falls below 17% (v/v), are available and should be used where liquid nitrogen is stored.
- Use only tubes and straws especially made for freezing in liquid nitrogen. Care should always be taken because even these can explode as they become warm.

Reference

WHO (2004). *Laboratory biosafety manual*, 3rd ed. Geneva, World Health Organization (http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2004/9241546506.pdf, last accessed 25 February 2010).

APPENDIX 3 Microscopy

The best source of information for a particular microscope is the manufacturer's manual, which should include a diagram identifying all the parts. If such a manual is not available, it may be possible to obtain information on microscope set-up and use from an Internet search.

For the semen evaluations described in this manual, a phase-contrast microscope is recommended. The microscope, with at least a 50-watt light source, should preferably be binocular (have two eyepieces), with a phase condenser, and should be equipped with ×10, ×20 (or ×25) and ×40 (or ×63) phase objectives (for general assessment, motility, vitality, and counting of spermatozoa and non-sperm cells), and a brightfield ×100 oil-immersion objective (for assessment of morphology and vitality). A negative-phase lens may be needed for vitality measurements and some CASA equipment, and a fluorescence lens is required for fluorescence microscopy.

- The quality and price of objective lenses vary considerably (see Box A3.1). The more expensive objectives offer a better image, but lower-quality objectives may be adequate.
- Eyepiece reticles (reticules, graticules, eyepiece micrometers) are glass discs with scales of known dimensions, usually 5 mm or 10 mm, or grids of various forms, inscribed on them. Some oculars have permanently mounted reticles; others can be unscrewed to allow a reticle to be inserted. They are available in different diameters, and should match exactly the diameter of the ocular. They may be calibrated with a stage micrometer to determine sperm dimensions. They are also used to limit the area of the field assessed for sperm motility. The one shown in Fig. 2.4(a) and Fig. A7.4(a) is a 5 mm × 5 mm grid, which is a good size for motility assessment at both ×20 and ×40 magnification. Some technicians prefer this to a 10 mm × 10 mm grid for estimating concentration or appraising morphology.
- A stage micrometer is a modified microscope slide with a scale etched on its surface, usually 1 mm divided into 10-μm subdivisions. It can be used to calibrate the eyepiece micrometer or reticle grid, and to measure dimensions, e.g. for motility analyses (see Fig. A7.5).

The procedure described below will ensure the best possible image from the microscope. If the light pathway is properly aligned and adjusted, the image will be clear, crisp and unlikely to cause eye strain. The following procedures need to be performed when using a new microscope or whenever images are of poor quality.

A3.1 Loading the sample

- Place 10 μl of semen (or other volume, see Box 2.4) on a microscope slide, cover with a 22 mm × 22 mm coverslip (thickness number 1.5, 0.17 mm) (or other dimension, see Box 2.4) and place the slide on the stage. You can also use a stage micrometer instead of a semen slide, to adjust the microscope.
- Turn on the light and adjust it to the intensity that gives maximum contrast while being comfortable for your eyes.
- Select the ×10 positive-phase objective lens. Rotate the condenser wheel to correspond to the power of the chosen objective lens.

Note: If the microscope is trinocular (i.e. has a third ocular to which a camera can be attached for photography or video-recording), there will be a light-deflection knob, which is generally located to the right of the eyepieces. This knob is likely to have three settings: one to allow all the light to go to the eyepieces, one to allow all light to go the camera, and a third that deflects half of the light to the eyepieces and half to the camera.

Box A3.1 The objective lens

Each microscope lens has information on it, such as:

UPlanFl	PlanApo	Plan Neofluor	Plan	S Fluor
20×/0.80 imm corr	40×/0.75 Ph2	100×/1.35 oil iris	100×/1.25 oil Ph3	20×/0.75
160/0.17	∞/0.17	∞/–	∞/0.17 WD 1.0	

Explanations of the various markings are given below.

Plan: a planar lens, permitting a flat field of view, in which everything is in focus.

Apo: an apochromatic lens that is highly corrected for chromatic aberration.

F, Fl, FL, Neofluor, Fluo, Fluotar, UV, S-Fluor: a lens that will transmit UV light and is used for fluorescence microscopy.

100×, ×63, 40×, etc.: the magnification of the lens.

0.30, 0.50, 0.80, 1.30, 1.40, etc.: the numerical aperture (NA) of the lens. This is an indication of the light-gathering ability of the lens. Together with the wavelength of the light used (λ, lambda), the NA determines the resolution (the smallest distance between two objects that can be distinguished as separate). NA = $\eta \times \sin \alpha$, where η (eta) is the refractive index of the immersion medium and α (alpha) is the angle between the edge of the cone of illumination and the vertical. As the maximum value of $\sin \alpha$ is 1.00, the maximum NA is theoretically equal to η, but in practice the maximum value is 1.4. Choose the highest NA for best resolution.

Ph, Ph1, Ph2, Ph3, NP, N: indicates a lens with a phase ring in it. Ph indicates positive-phase rings and NP or N negative-phase. Ph1, Ph2 and Ph3 lenses each require a different phase annulus in the condenser. Positive-phase-contrast optics permit intracellular structures to be seen (used for wet preparations and motility), while negative-phase-contrast optics produce white images against a dark background (used for wet preparation vitality or CASA).

Imm, immersion, oil, W: indicates a lens designed to work with a fluid—often oil, water (W) or glycerol—between the object and the lens to provide a sharper image. (If not indicated, the lens is "dry" and should not be used with a liquid.)

Iris: indicates a lens with an iris controlled by a knurled ring.

Corr: indicates a lens with a knurled correction collar that allows the use of immersion media of different refractive indices.

160, ∞: the tube length or distance between the eyepiece and the objective. This is usually 160 mm but in modern lenses can be infinity (∞).

0.17, –: the thickness of the coverslip required for the objective. Coverslip number 1.5 (thickness 0.16–0.19 mm) is useful for most purposes. Haemocytometers need coverslips number 4 (thickness 0.44 mm). "–" means that the thickness of the coverslip is not important or that immersion fluid can be added directly to the slide.

WD: working distance; the distance from the front lens element of the objective to the closest surface of the coverslip when the specimen is in sharp focus. The WD generally decreases as the magnification and NA increase, giving rise to lenses with working distances that are normal (NWD, up to 5 mm), long (LWD, 5.25–9.75 mm), extra-long (ELWD, 10–14 mm) and super-long (SLWD, 15–30 mm). Some microscopes may require an LWD lens for use with an improved Neubauer chamber.

Refractive index: the extent of phase retardation of light as it passes through a medium. The refractive index (RI, η, eta) of a vacuum is 1.0000, of air is approximately 1.0 (1.0008), of water is 1.33, of glycerol is 1.47 and of most immersion oils is 1.515. Mounting media after drying have similar refractive indices (1.488–1.55) to that of glass (1.50–1.58).

A3.2 Adjusting the oculars

- Adjust the space between the oculars (eyepieces) to your own eyes by pulling the oculars apart or pushing them together.

A3.3 Focusing the image

- Rotate the coarse focus adjustment to bring the stage as close to the ×20 or ×40 objective as possible. To avoid breaking the objective lens and the slide, look at the objective and stage from the front or side, not through the eyepieces. Use the coarse focus to adjust the height of the stage so that the slide is almost in contact with the objective. Note which way the coarse focus has to be turned to lower the stage away from the objective.
- Looking through both eyepieces, slowly turn the coarse focus adjustment to move the stage away from the objective gradually, until the specimen is in approximate focus. Use the fine-adjustment knob to achieve the best focus.

Note: If focus is hard to find, try focusing on the ground-glass ends of a slide to get close to the correct focal plane.

A3.4 Focusing the oculars

- With some microscopes, the two oculars can be focused independently. With others, one ocular is fixed and the other can be focused.
- Adjustable oculars are usually marked with a "+ / 0 / –" scale. Adjust the ocular to "0" before beginning this process.
- If one ocular is fixed, look through the fixed ocular only (close or cover your other eye).
- Focus the specimen image using the fine-focus adjustment. It is helpful to focus on a non-moving object, e.g. a dead spermatozoon, dust particle or stage micrometer grid.
- Focus the adjustable ocular by looking through it and closing or covering the eye over the fixed ocular. Rotate the knurled ring at the base of the eyepiece to "+" or "–" until the focus is appropriate for your eye.

A3.5 Focusing the light condenser

- Close down the field diaphragm (over the source of light at the base of the microscope).
- Raise or lower the condenser using the small knobs on the left or right of the condenser unit until the edges of the diaphragm are in the sharpest focus possible, and the circle of light is small and clear. This position will generally be achieved when the condenser is in the top-most position. The edge of the light image may change from blue to red as the condenser is focused (chromatic aberration), and the edges of the condenser will remain slightly blurred. The light may or may not be centred.

Note: If the field aperture has no iris diaphragm, focus on a sharp object (e.g. a pencil point) placed on the light source.

A3.6 Centring the condenser

- Centre the field diaphragm with the condenser centring knobs. These are generally two (usually knurled) knobs coming out diagonally from the front or side underneath the condenser.
- Once the light image is centred, open the field diaphragm so that the light just fills the field of view. Do not open the field diaphragm beyond that point.
- Close the condenser aperture until the glare disappears.

Note: Directly behind the right-hand condenser centring screw, there may be small screws that lock the condenser in place. Be careful not to turn them when centring the condenser, as loosening them will allow the entire condenser to be removed from the microscope.

A3.7 Adjusting the phase rings

- This is done with the use of a centring telescope, available from the microscope manufacturer.
- Bring into view the appropriate phase annulus in the condenser for the objective being used.
- Remove one eyepiece and replace it with the centring telescope. Focus the ring of the centring telescope by holding the base of it with one hand and rotating the top portion with the other hand while looking through it. Turn it until the two rings are in sharp focus: one ring is dark (phase annulus) and one light (light annulus).
- Align these rings so that they are concentric by turning the phase-adjustment knobs located on the phase condenser. These knobs are usually located towards the back of the condenser.
- Replace the centring telescope with the microscope ocular.

A3.8 Fluorescence microscopy

Fluorescence microscopy is used to detect the nuclei of spermatozoa in the sensitive counting procedure using Hoechst 33342 dye (see Section 2.11.2) and the acrosome reaction using FITC-labelled lectin (see Section 4.4.1). The excitation spectral maxima of Hoechst 33342 dye and FITC are 346 nm and 494 nm, respectively, and the corresponding emission maxima are 460 nm and 520 nm. A fluorescence lens is required (see Box A3.1). Each model of microscope will have, as optional equipment for purchase, the requisite set of dichroic mirrors and barrier filters needed to examine these dyes.

APPENDIX 4 Stock solutions

For all solutions, a supply of purified water (distilled, double-distilled or deionized) is required.

A4.1 Biggers, Whitten and Whittingham

BWW stock solution (Biggers et al., 1971)

1. To 1000 ml of purified water add 5.54 g of sodium chloride (NaCl), 0.356 g of potassium chloride (KCl), 0.294 g of magnesium sulfate heptahydrate ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$), 0.250 g of calcium chloride dihydrate ($CaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$) and 0.162 g of potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4).
2. Adjust the pH to 7.4 with 1 mol/l sodium hydroxide (NaOH).
3. Add 1.0 ml (0.04%, 0.4 g/l) phenol red per litre.

Note: This solution can be stored for several weeks at 4 °C.

BWW working solution.

On the day of use:

1. Supplement 100 ml of stock solution with 210 mg of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$), 100 mg of D-glucose, 0.37 ml of 60% (v/v) sodium lactate syrup, 3 mg of sodium pyruvate, 350 mg of fraction V bovine serum albumin, 10 000 units of penicillin and 10 mg of streptomycin sulfate.
2. Warm to 37 °C before use in an atmosphere of 5% (v/v) CO_2, 95% (v/v) air.

Note 1: For incubation in air: add 20 mmol/l Hepes (Na salt: 5.21 g/l) and reduce $NaHCO_3$ to 0.366 g/l.

Note 2: For density gradients (see Section 5.5.1): prepare a 10× concentrated stock solution by using 10 times the specified weights of the compounds, except for the phenol red. After preparing the gradient, supplement 100 ml as above.

A4.2 Dulbecco's phosphate-buffered saline

1. Dulbecco's glucose–PBS: to 750 ml of purified water add 0.2 g of potassium chloride (KCl), 0.2 g of potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4), 0.1 g of magnesium chloride hexahydrate ($MgCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$), 8.0 g of sodium chloride (NaCl), 2.16 g of disodium hydrogen phosphate heptahydrate ($Na_2HPO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$) and 1.00 g of D-glucose.
2. Dissolve 0.132 g of calcium chloride dihydrate ($CaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$) in 10 ml of purified water and add slowly to the above solution with stirring.
3. Adjust the pH to 7.4 with 1 mol/l sodium hydroxide (NaOH).
4. Make up to 1000 ml with purified water.

Note 1: To prevent precipitation, add $CaCl_2$ separately, slowly and with stirring.

Note 2: If required, add 0.3 g of bovine serum albumin (BSA) (essential fatty acid free) per 100 ml before use.

A4.3 Earle's medium

1. To 750 ml of purified water add 6.8 g of sodium chloride (NaCl), 2.2 g of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$), 0.14 g of sodium dihydrogen phosphate monohydrate ($NaH_2PO_4 \cdot H_2O$), 0.4 g of potassium chloride (KCl), 0.20 g of magnesium sulfate heptahydrate ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$) and 1.0 g of D-glucose.
2. Dissolve 0.20 g of anhydrous calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$) slowly in the above solution with stirring.
3. Adjust the pH to 7.4 with 1 mol/l hydrochloric acid (HCl) or 1 mol/l sodium hydroxide (NaOH).
4. Make up to 1000 ml with purified water.

Note 1: For incubation in air: add 20 mmol/l Hepes (Na salt: 5.21 g/l) and reduce $NaHCO_3$ to 0.366 g/l.

Note 2: For density gradients (see Section 5.5.1): prepare a 10× concentrated stock solution by using 10 times the specified weights of the compounds, except for the bicarbonate. After preparing the gradient, supplement 100 ml with 0.22 g of $NaHCO_3$.

A4.4 Ham's F-10 medium

1. To 750 ml of purified water add 7.4 g of sodium chloride (NaCl), 1.2 g of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$), 0.285 g of potassium chloride (KCl), 0.154 g of sodium monosodium phosphate (Na_2HPO_4), 0.153 g of magnesium sulfate heptahydrate ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$), 0.083 g of potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4), 0.044 g of calcium chloride dihydrate ($CaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$) and 1.1 g of D-glucose.
2. Adjust the pH to 7.4 with 1 mol/l sodium hydroxide (NaOH).
3. Make up to 1000 ml with purified water.

Note 1: For incubation in air: add 20 mmol/l Hepes (Na salt: 5.21 g/l) and reduce $NaHCO_3$ to 0.366 g/l.

Note 2: For density gradients (see Section 5.5.1): prepare a 10× concentrated stock solution by increasing the weights of the compounds 10-fold, except for the bicarbonate. After preparing the gradient, supplement 100 ml with 0.12 g $NaHCO_3$.

A4.5 Hanks' balanced salt solution

1. To 750 ml of purified water add 8.0 g of sodium chloride (NaCl), 0.4 g of potassium chloride (KCl), 0.35 g of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$), 0.185 g of calcium chloride dihydrate ($CaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$), 0.1 g of magnesium chloride hexahydrate ($MgCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$), 0.1 g of magnesium sulfate heptahydrate ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$), 0.06 g of potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4), 0.048 g of sodium dihydrogen phosphate (NaH_2PO_4) and 1.0 g of D-glucose.
2. Adjust the pH to 7.4 with 1 mol/l sodium hydroxide (NaOH).
3. Make up to 1000 ml with purified water.

A4.6 Human tubal fluid

Original formulation (Quinn et al., 1985):

1. To 750 ml of purified water add 5.931 g of sodium chloride (NaCl), 0.35 g of potassium chloride (KCl), 0.05 g of magnesium sulfate heptahydrate ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$), 0.05 g of potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4), 2.1 g of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$), 0.5 g of D-glucose, 0.036 g of sodium pyruvate, 0.3 g of calcium chloride dihydrate ($CaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$) and 4.0 g of sodium DL-lactate (60% (v/v) syrup).
2. To 1 ml of the above medium add 10 µg phenol red, 100 U penicillin and 50 µg streptomycin sulfate.
3. Adjust the pH to 7.4 with 1 mol/l hydrochloric acid (HCl).
4. Make up to 1000 ml with purified water.

Note 1: For incubation in air: add 20 mmol/l Hepes (Na salt: 5.21 g/l) and reduce $NaHCO_3$ to 0.366 g/l.

Note 2: For density gradients (see Section 5.5.1): prepare a 10× concentrated stock solution by using 10 times the specified weights of the compounds, except for the bicarbonate, pyruvate and lactate. After preparing the gradient, supplement 100 ml with 0.21 g of $NaHCO_3$, 0.0036 g of sodium pyruvate and 0.4 g of sodium lactate.

A4.7 Krebs–Ringer medium

Krebs–Ringer medium (KRM) without phenol red:

1. To 750 ml of purified water add 6.9 g of sodium chloride (NaCl), 2.1 g of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$), 0.35 g of potassium chloride (KCl), 0.32 g of calcium chloride dihydrate ($CaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$), 0.18 g of sodium dihydrogen phosphate dihydrate ($NaH_2PO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$), 0.1 g of magnesium chloride hexahydrate ($MgCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$) and 0.9 g of D-glucose.
2. Adjust the pH to 7.4 with 1 mol/l sodium hydroxide (NaOH).
3. Make up to 1000 ml with purified water.

A4.8 Tris-buffered saline

1. To 750 ml of purified water add 6.055 g of Tris base and 8.52 g of sodium chloride (NaCl).
2. Adjust the pH to 8.2 with 1 mol/l hydrochloric acid (HCl).
3. Make up to 1000 ml with purified water.

Note: A 10× concentrated stock solution can be made by using 10 times the specified weights of the compounds. For use, dilute 10-fold with purified water and adjust the pH with 1 mol/l HCl.

A4.9 Tyrode's solution

1. To 750 ml of purified water add 0.2 g of anhydrous calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$), 0.2 g of potassium chloride (KCl), 0.05 g of disodium hydrogen phosphate (Na_2HPO_4), 0.2 g of magnesium chloride hexahydrate ($MgCl_2{\cdot}6H_2O$), 8.0 g of sodium chloride (NaCl), 1.0 g of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) and 1.0 g of D-glucose.
2. Adjust the pH to 7.4 with 1 mol/l hydrochloric acid (HCl) or 1 mol/l sodium hydroxide (NaOH).
3. Make up to 1000 ml with purified water.
4. If required, add 0.3 g of BSA (essential fatty acid free) per 100 ml before use.

A4.10 Papanicolaou stain

Commercially available stains are usually satisfactory, but the stain can be prepared in the laboratory.

Note: Check the acidity of the purified water before preparing the different grades of ethanol. The pH should be 7.0.

EA-36 (equivalent to EA-50)

Constituents

1. Eosin Y (colour index 45380)	10 g
2. Bismarck brown Y (colour index 21000)	10 g
3. Light-green SF, yellowish (colour index 42095)	10 g
4. Purified water	300 ml
5. Ethanol 95% (v/v)	2000 ml
6. Phosphotungstic acid	4 g
7. Saturated aqueous lithium carbonate (>1.3 g /100 ml)	0.5 ml

Stock solutions

Prepare separate 10% (100 g/l) solutions of each of the stains as follows:

1. Dissolve 10 g of eosin Y in 100 ml of purified water.
2. Dissolve 10 g of Bismarck brown Y in 100 ml of purified water.
3. Dissolve 10 g of light-green SF in 100 ml of purified water.

Preparation

1. To prepare 2 litres of stain, mix 50 ml of eosin Y stock solution with 10 ml of the Bismarck brown Y stock solution and add 12.5 ml of light-green SF stock solution.
2. Make up to 2000 ml with 95% (v/v) ethanol.
3. Add 4 g of phosphotungstic acid.
4. Add 0.5 ml of saturated lithium carbonate solution.
5. Mix well and store at room temperature in dark-brown tightly capped bottles.

Note 1: The solution is stable for 2–3 months.

Note 2: Pass through a 0.45-μm filter before use.

Orange G6

Constituents

1.	Orange G crystals (colour index 16230)	10 g
2.	Purified water	100 ml
3.	95% (v/v) ethanol	1000 ml
4.	Phosphotungstic acid	0.15 g

Stock solution number 1 (orange G6, 10% (100 g/l) solution)

1. Dissolve 10 g of Orange G crystals in 100 ml of purified water.
2. Shake well. Allow to stand in a dark-brown or aluminium-foil-covered stoppered bottle at room temperature for 1 week before using.

Stock solution number 2 (orange G6, 0.5% solution)

1. To 50 ml of stock solution number 1 add 950 ml of 95% (v/v) ethanol.
2. Add 0.15 g of phosphotungstic acid.
3. Mix well. Store in dark-brown or aluminium-foil-covered stoppered bottles at room temperature.

Note 1: Filter before use.

Note 2: The solution is stable for 2–3 months.

Harris's haematoxylin without acetic acid

Constituents

1. Haematoxylin (dark crystals; colour index 75290)
2. Ethanol 95% (v/v)
3. Aluminium ammonium sulfate dodecahydrate ($AlNH_4(SO_4)_2{\cdot}12H_2O$)
4. Mercuric oxide (HgO)

Preparation

1. Dissolve 160 g of aluminium ammonium sulfate dodecahydrate in 1600 ml of purified water by heating.
2. Dissolve 8 g of haematoxylin crystals in 80 ml of 95% (v/v) ethanol.
3. Add the haematoxylin solution to the aluminium ammonium sulfate solution.
4. Heat the mixture to 95 °C.
5. Remove the mixture from the heat and slowly add 6 g of mercuric oxide while stirring.

Note: The solution will be dark purple in colour.

6. Immediately plunge the container into a cold waterbath.
7. When the solution is cold, filter.
8. Store in dark-brown or aluminium-foil-covered bottles at room temperature.
9. Allow to stand for 48 hours before using.
10. Dilute the required amount with an equal amount of purified water.
11. Filter again.

Scott's tap water substitute solution

Note: Scott's solution is used only when the ordinary tap water is insufficient to return blue color to the nucleus; it should be changed frequently, e.g. after rinsing 20 to 25 slides.

Constituents

1. Sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) 3.5 g
2. Magnesium sulphate heptahydrate ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$) 20.0 g
3. Several crystals of thymol (if required as preservative)
4. Purified water 1000 ml

Acid ethanol solution

Constituents

1. Ethanol 99.5% (v/v) 300 ml
2. Concentrated hydrochloric acid (HCl) 2.0 ml
3. Purified water 100 ml

References

Biggers JD et al. (1971). The culture of mouse embryos in vitro. In: Daniel JC, ed. *Methods in mammalian embryology.* San Francisco, WH Freeman: 86-116.

Quinn P et al. (1985). Improved pregnancy rate in human in-vitro fertilization with the use of a medium based on the composition of human tubal fluid. *Fertility and Sterility,* 44:493-498.

APPENDIX 5 Cervical mucus

A5.1 Introduction

Spermatozoa within cervical mucus are suspended in a fluid medium. The interaction of spermatozoa with the secretions of the female reproductive tract is of critical importance for their survival and functioning. There is at present no practical method of evaluating the effects of human uterine and tubal fluids on spermatozoa. However, cervical mucus is readily available for sampling and study.

The epithelium of the human cervix comprises different types of secretory cells, and the nature and abundance of secretory granules vary in different parts of the cervix. Secretions from these cells contribute to the cervical mucus. Ovarian hormones regulate the secretion of cervical mucus: 17β-estradiol stimulates the production of copious amounts of watery mucus and progesterone inhibits the secretory activity of the epithelial cells. The amount of cervical mucus secreted shows cyclical variations. In women of reproductive age with a normal menstrual cycle, the daily mucus production varies from 500 µl at mid-cycle to less than 100 µl at other times. Small amounts of endometrial, tubal and possibly follicular fluids may also contribute to the cervical mucus pool. In addition, leukocytes and cellular debris from the uterine and cervical epithelia are present.

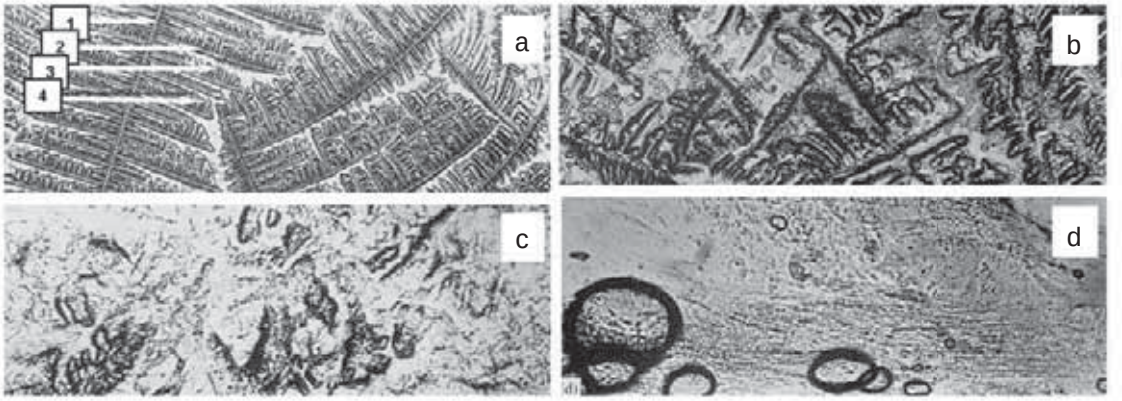
Cervical mucus is a heterogeneous secretion containing over 90% water. It exhibits a number of rheological properties:

- *Viscosity (consistency)* is influenced by the molecular arrangement and by the protein and ionic concentrations of the cervical mucus. Mucus varies during the cycle from highly viscous (often cellular) just before menstruation to watery at mid-cycle just before ovulation. By the time ovulation is completed, the viscosity of the mucus has already begun to increase again.
- *Spinnbarkeit* is the term used to describe the fibrosity, the “threadability”, or the elasticity characteristics of cervical mucus.
- *Fern*ing refers to the degree and pattern of crystallization observed when cervical mucus is dried on a glass surface (see Fig. A5.1).

Cervical mucus is a hydrogel comprising a high-viscosity component and a low-viscosity component made up of electrolytes, organic compounds and soluble proteins. The high-viscosity component is a macromolecular network of mucin, which influences the rheological properties of the mucus. Cervical mucin is a fibrillar system consisting of subunits made of a peptide core and oligosaccharide side-chains. Cyclical alteration in the constituents of cervical mucus influences the ability of spermatozoa to penetrate and survive. Spermatozoa can penetrate human cervical mucus from approximately the ninth day of a normal 28-day cycle; penetrability increases gradually to reach a peak just before ovulation. Sperm penetration then begins to diminish before large changes in mucus properties are apparent. Individual variations in timing and degree of sperm penetrability are common. Motile spermatozoa may be guided by strands of cervical mucus to the cervical crypts, where they may be retained and released slowly into the uterus and Fallopian tubes.

Fig. A5.1 Examples of fern formation in cervical mucus air-dried on a glass slide

(a) Ferning: 1, primary stem; 2, secondary stem; 3, tertiary stem; 4, quaternary stem (score 3); (b) mainly primary and secondary stems (score 2) but some tertiary stems also present; (c) atypical fern crystallization (score 1); (d) no crystallization (score 0). The round structures are air bubbles. See section A5.3.3 for explanation of scoring.



Comment: It is important to evaluate sperm–cervical mucus interaction as part of any complete investigation of infertility. A finding of abnormal sperm–cervical mucus interaction may be an indication for artificial insemination or other forms of assisted reproduction.

A5.2 Collection and preservation of cervical mucus

A5.2.1 Collection procedure

Expose the cervix with a speculum and gently wipe the external os with a cotton swab to remove the external pool of vaginal contaminants. Remove the exocervical mucus with the swab or with forceps. Collect cervical mucus from the endocervical canal by aspiration with a mucus syringe, tuberculin syringe (without needle), pipette or polyethylene tube. The manner in which suction pressure is applied to the collection device should be standardized. Advance the tip of the device approximately 1 cm into the cervical canal before applying suction. Then maintain suction as the device is withdrawn. Just before the device is completely withdrawn from the external cervical os, release the suction pressure. It is then advisable to clamp the catheter to protect against accumulation of air bubbles or vaginal material in the collected mucus when the device is removed from the cervical canal. Whenever possible, the quality of the mucus should be evaluated immediately on collection. If this is not possible, the mucus should be preserved (see Section A5.2.2) until it can be tested.

When cervical mucus is to be collected other than at mid-cycle, its production can be increased by the administration of 20–80 μg of ethinyl estradiol each day for 7–10 days before collection. This procedure will produce a more hydrated, and therefore less viscous, mucus secretion (Eggert-Kruse et al., 1989). While this approach may be useful in assessing sperm–mucus interaction in vitro, it will not necessarily reflect the in-vivo situation for the couple when hormones are not administered.

A5.2.2 Storage and preservation

Mucus can be preserved either in the original collection device or in small test-tubes sealed with a stopper or with self-sealing laboratory film to avoid dehydration. Care should be taken to minimize the air space in the storage container. The samples should be preserved in a refrigerator at 4 °C for up to 5 days. If possible, mucus specimens should be used within 2 days of collection; the interval between collection and use should always be noted. Rheological and sperm penetration tests should not be performed on mucus specimens that have been frozen and thawed.

A5.3 Evaluation of cervical mucus

Evaluation of the properties of cervical mucus includes assessment of spinnbarkeit, ferning (crystallization), viscosity and pH. Appendix 6 contains a sample form for scoring and recording these cervical mucus properties according to the system devised by Moghissi (1976), based on an original proposal by Insler et al. (1972). The score is derived from the volume of cervical mucus collected (see Section A5.3.1) and the four variables (see Sections A5.3.2 to A5.3.5) describing its characteristics and appearance. The pH of the mucus is not included in the total cervical mucus score, but should be measured as an important determinant of sperm–mucus interaction (Eggert-Kruse et al., 1993). The maximum score is 15. A score greater than 10 is usually indicative of good cervical mucus favouring sperm penetration; a score of less than 10 may mean that the cervical mucus is unfavourable to sperm penetration.

A5.3.1 Volume

The viscosity of mucus makes accurate measurement of volume difficult. It can be estimated from the length of the mucus within catheter tubing of known diameter (see Box A5.1).

Box A5.1 Determining the volume of mucus collected

The volume of a mucus preparation (V, μl = mm^3) is obtained by multiplying the cross-sectional area of the tubing (A, mm^2) by the length (L, mm) containing mucus: $V = A \times L$. The cross-sectional area $A = \pi r^2$, where π is approximately 3.142 and r is the radius of the tubing. Thus a 10 cm (100 mm) length of mucus in 2 mm diameter tubing ($A = 3.142 \times 1 \times 1 = 3.142$ mm^2) has a volume of $A \times L = 3.142 \times 100 = 314$ mm^3 = 314 μl or 0.31 ml.

Volume is scored as follows:

0 = 0 ml

1 = 0.01–0.10 ml or approximately 0.1 ml

2 = 0.11–0.29 ml or approximtely 0.2 ml

3 = >0.3 ml or approximately 0.3 ml or more

A5.3.2 Viscosity (consistency)

The viscosity of cervical mucus is the most important factor influencing sperm penetration. There is little resistance to sperm migration through the cervical mucus in mid-cycle, but viscous mucus—such as that observed during the luteal phase—forms a more formidable barrier.

Viscosity is scored as follows:

0 = thick, highly viscous, premenstrual mucus

1 = mucus of intermediate viscosity

2 = mildly viscous mucus

3 = watery, minimally viscous, mid-cycle (preovulatory) mucus

A5.3.3 Ferning

Ferning (see Fig. A5.1) is scored by examination of cervical mucus that has been air-dried on glass microscope slides. Such preparations reveal various patterns of crystallization, which may have a fern-like appearance. Depending on the composition of the mucus, the “ferns” may have only a primary stem, or the stem may branch once, twice or three times to produce secondary, tertiary and quaternary stems. Several fields around the preparation should be observed, and the score expressed as the highest degree of ferning that is typical of the specimen.

Fern types can be very variable, depending on, for example, the thickness of the preparation and the number of cells present. A preparation may display more than one stage of ferning: sometimes all stages can be found in one preparation.

Ferning is scored as follows:

0 = no crystallization

1 = atypical fern formation

2 = primary and secondary stem ferning

3 = tertiary and quaternary stem ferning

A5.3.4 Spinnbarkeit

Place a drop of cervical mucus on a microscope slide and touch it with a coverslip or a second slide held crosswise; then gently lift the coverslip or second slide. Estimate the length of the cervical mucus thread stretched between the two surfaces.

Spinnbarkeit is scored as follows:

0 = <1 cm
1 = 1–4 cm
2 = 5–8 cm
3 = 9 cm or more

A5.3.5 Cellularity

It is recommended that all cell counts be expressed in cells per μl. An estimate of the number of leukocytes and other cells in the cervical mucus is traditionally based on the number counted per high-power microscope field (HPF) (see Box A5.2).

Box A5.2 Volume observed per high-power field in a 100-μm-deep mucus preparation

The volume of mucus observed in each microscope field depends on the area of the field (πr^2, where π is approximately 3.142 and r is the radius of the microscopic field) and the depth of the chamber (here 100 μm). The diameter of the microscope field can be measured with a stage micrometer or can be estimated by dividing the diameter of the aperture of the ocular lens by the magnification of the objective lens.

With a ×40 objective and a ×10 ocular of aperture 20 mm, the microscope field has a diameter of approximately 500 μm (20 mm / 40). In this case, r = 250 μm, r^2 = 62 500 μm^2, πr^2 = 196 375 μm^2 and the volume is 19 637 500 μm^3 or about 20 nl.

Thus, a count of 10 cells per HPF is approximately equivalent to 10 cells per 20 nl, or 500 cells per μl. As the number of cells counted is low, the sampling error is high; a replicate count of 10 has a sampling error of 22% (see Table 2.2), so the value could lie anywhere between 280 and 720 cells per μl.

The rank scores for cells are:

0 = >20 cells per HPF or >1000 cells per μl
1 = 11–20 cells per HPF or 501–1000 cells per μl
2 = 1–10 cells per HPF or 1–500 cells per μl
3 = 0 cells

A5.3.6 pH

The pH of cervical mucus from the endocervical canal should be measured with pH paper, range 6.0–10.0, in situ or immediately following collection. If the pH is measured in situ, care should be taken to avoid touching the exocervical mucus, which always has a pH lower (more acidic) than that of mucus in the endocervical canal. Care should also be taken to avoid contamination with secretions of the vagina, which have a low pH.

Spermatozoa are susceptible to changes in pH of the cervical mucus. Acid mucus immobilizes spermatozoa, whereas alkaline mucus may enhance motility. Exces-

sive alkalinity of the cervical mucus (pH greater than 8.5), however, may adversely affect the viability of spermatozoa. The optimum pH value for sperm migration and survival in the cervical mucus is between 7.0 and 8.5, which is the normal pH range of mid-cycle cervical mucus. Although a pH value between 6.0 and 7.0 may be compatible with sperm penetration, motility is often impaired below pH 6.5 and sperm–cervical mucus interaction tests are often not performed if the pH of mucus is below 7.0.

In some cases cervical mucus may be substantially more acidic. This can be due to abnormal secretions, the presence of a bacterial infection, or contamination with vaginal fluid.

References

Eggert-Kruse W et al. (1989). Prognostic value of in-vitro sperm penetration into hormonally standardized human cervical mucus. *Fertility and Sterility*, 51:317–323.

Eggert-Kruse W et al. (1993). The pH as an important determinant of sperm–mucus interaction. *Fertility and Sterility*, 59:617–628.

Insler V et al. (1972). The cervical score. A simple semiquantitative method for monitoring of the menstrual cycle. *International Journal of Gynaecology and Obstetrics*, 10:223–228.

Moghissi KS (1976) Postcoital test: physiological basis, technique and interpretation. *Fertility and Sterility*, 27:117–129.

APPENDIX 6 Record forms for semen and cervical mucus analyses

A6.1 Template for a semen analysis recording form

This sample record form overpage is offered as a model. It allows recording of observations made during semen analysis, using the methods described in this manual. It may be adapted to include derived variables, which are combinations of results from the primary data (e.g. total number of peroxidase-positive cells per ejaculate). When used for research purposes, data from the sample record form can be entered directly into a computer database, and any derived variables can be computed electronically.

The sample record form has multiple columns for recording the results of semen analyses performed at different times. This is a convenient way of presenting serial semen sample results. It may be useful to add extra space in certain parts of the form to allow the recording of additional comments and observations. Reference limits and consensus threshold values (see Appendix 1, Table 1.1 and comments), are given in square brackets, where available.

Name:			
Code:			
Date (day/month/year)			
Collection (1, at laboratory; 2, at home)			
Collection time (hour : minute)			
Sample delivered (hour : minute)			
Analysis begun (hour : minute)			
Patient			
Abstinence time (days)			
Medication			
Difficulties in collection			
Semen			
Treatment (e.g. bromelain)			
Complete sample? (1, complete; 2, incomplete)			
Appearance (1, normal; 2, abnormal)			
Viscosity (1, normal; 2, abnormal)			
Liquefaction (1, normal; 2, abnormal) (minutes)			
Agglutination (1–4, A–E)			
pH [≥7.2]			
Volume (ml) [≥1.5]			
Spermatozoa			
Total number (10^6 per ejaculate) [≥39]			
Concentration (10^6 per ml) [≥15]			
Error (%) if fewer than 400 cells counted			
Vitality (% alive) [≥58]			
Total motile PR + NP (%) [≥40]			
Progressive PR (%) [≥32]			
Non-progressive NP (%)			
Immotile IM (%)			
Normal forms (%) [≥4]			
Abnormal heads (%)			
Abnormal midpieces (%)			
Abnormal principal pieces (%)			
Excess residual cytoplasm (%)			
Direct MAR-test IgG (%) (3 or 10 minute) [<50]			
Direct MAR-test IgA (%) (3 or 10 minute) [<50]			
Direct IB-test IgG (% with beads) [<50]			
Direct IB-test IgA (% with beads) [<50]			
Non-sperm cells			
Peroxidase-positive cells, concentration (10^6 per ml) [<1.0]			
Accessory gland function			
Zinc (µmol per ejaculate) [≥2.4]			
Fructose (µmol per ejaculate) [≥13]			
α-Glucosidase (neutral) (mU/ejaculate) [≥20]			
Technician:			

A6.2 Template for a cervical mucus recording form

Name:
Code:
Date of first day of last menstrual period (day/month/year):

Daily cervical mucus score				
Date (day/month/year)				
Day of cycle				
Volume (0, 1, 2, 3)				
Viscosity (0, 1, 2, 3)				
Ferning (0, 1, 2, 3)				
Spinnbarkeit (0, 1, 2, 3)				
Cellularity (0, 1, 2, 3)				
Total score (max. 15)				
pH				

Postcoital test						
Date (day/month/year)						
Time after coitus (hours)						
	Vaginal pool	Endocervical pool	Vaginal pool	Endocervical pool	Vaginal pool	Endocervical pool
Sperm concentration (spermatozoa per µl)						
Sperm motility						
PR (%)						
NP (%)						
IM (%)						
Technician:						

APPENDIX 7 Sampling errors and quality control

A7.1 Errors in measurement of sperm concentration

A7.1.1 Errors in assessing counts

To measure sperm concentration, the number of spermatozoa in a fixed volume of diluted semen is assessed in a counting chamber. However, a single estimate is of limited value without some indication of its precision. This is provided by the confidence interval, which has a specific probability (the confidence coefficient or coverage possibility) of containing the true value. The most commonly used probability is 0.95. The interval is then called the 95% confidence interval, and the ends of this interval are the 95% confidence limits (Armitage et al., 2002).

If spermatozoa are randomly distributed throughout the chamber, the number in a given volume follows the Poisson distribution, with variance equal to the number counted. The standard error (SE) of a count (N) is its square root ($\sqrt{N}$), the sampling error (%SE) is $100 \times (\sqrt{N}/N)$ and the 95% confidence interval (CI) is approximately $N \pm 1.96 \times \text{SE}$ (or $N \pm$ approximately $2 \times \text{SE}$).

Note: These values are only approximate, as the confidence limits are not always symmetrical about the estimate. The exact 95% confidence interval, based on the properties of the Poisson distribution, is 361.76–441.21 for a count of 400, 81.36–121.66 for a count of 100, 4.80–18.39 for a count of 10, 0.025–5.572 for a count of 1, and 0.0–3.7 for a count of 0.

A7.1.2 Agreement between replicate counts

Replicate counts on two separate dilutions of each semen sample are recommended, to account for possible uneven distribution of spermatozoa despite thorough mixing (see Section 2.4.1). Assessing the same chamber twice, or assessing both sides of one chamber filled from a single dilution, is not true replication, as this will not allow errors of preparation, mixing or dilution to be detected.

The difference between independent counts is expected to be zero, with standard error equal to the square root of the sum of the two counts. Thus $z = (N1 - N2)/\sqrt{(N1 + N2)}$ should be <1.96 by chance alone; if it is, the values are accepted. If z is >1.96, new replicate dilutions are made. Fig. A7.1 gives the acceptable rounded values for $N1 - N2$.

For example, for a mean count of 200 spermatozoa (sum 400), the difference between the replicate counts could be as large as 39, so the two counts could be 180.5 (200–19.5) and 219.5 (200 + 19.5) by chance alone.

Table A7.1 summarizes the data shown in Fig. A7.1 and can be used to assess the agreement between replicate counts (see Sections 2.8.3 and 2.11).

For routine sperm counting, it is recommended that at least 200 spermatozoa are counted in each replicate, so that a total of about 400 cells are counted; the sampling error is then less than 5% (see Table 2.2). With very low sperm numbers, higher sampling errors may be unavoidable (see Sections 2.11.1 and 2.11.2), in which case the sampling error (%SE) for the number of spermatozoa counted (see Table 2.2) should be reported.

Fig. A7.1 Acceptable differences between two replicate counts as a function of the total number of spermatozoa assessed

The line shows the maximum difference between replicate counts that is expected to occur by chance alone.

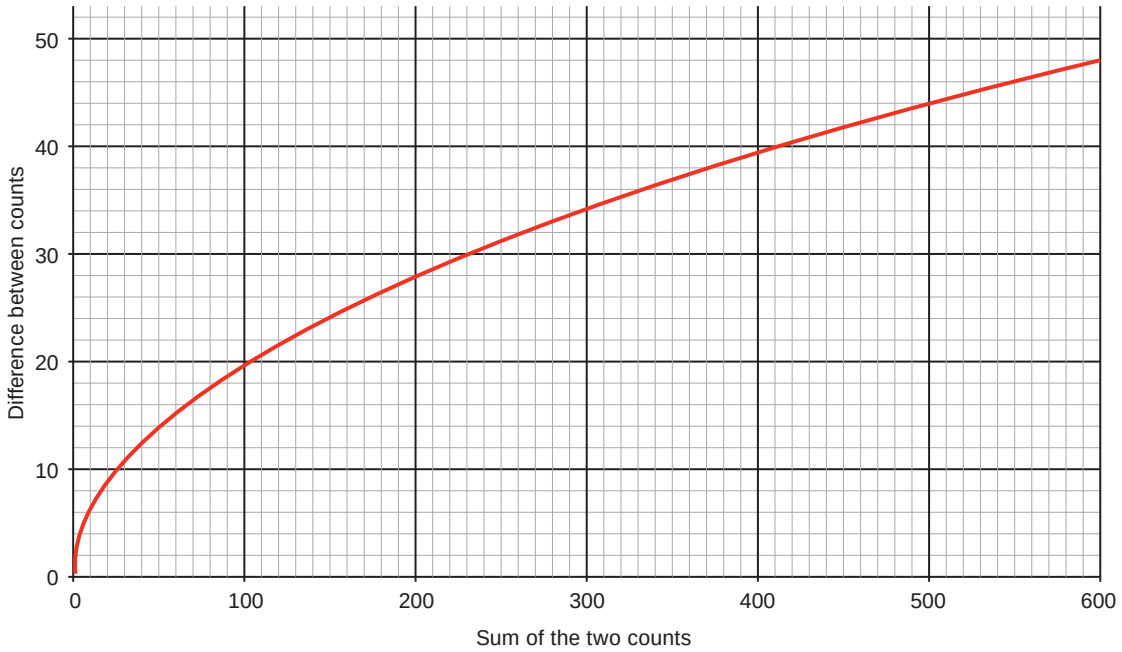


Table A7.1 Acceptable differences between two replicate counts for a given sum

Sum	Difference*
35–40	12
41–47	13
48–54	14
55–62	15
63–70	16
71–79	17
80–89	18
90–98	19
99–109	20
110–120	21
121–131	22
132–143	23

Sum	Difference*
144–156	24
157–169	25
170–182	26
183–196	27
197–211	28
212–226	29
227–242	30
243–258	31
259–274	32
275–292	33
293–309	34
310–328	35

Sum	Difference*
329–346	36
347–366	37
367–385	38
386–406	39
407–426	40
427–448	41
449–470	42
471–492	43
493–515	44
516–538	45
539–562	46
563–587	47

**Based on rounded 95% confidence interval.*

A7.2 The importance of understanding sampling errors

This manual places great emphasis on counting a sufficient number of spermatozoa and getting replicate estimates to agree within certain limits. This is necessary because these procedures increase the certainty that the concentrations or total counts generated are close to the true (but unknown) values. If too few spermatozoa are counted, the concentration calculated will be imprecise. If it is not possible to count a total of at least 400 spermatozoa, this should be stated on the report form and the error involved noted (see Table 2.2).

Precision is best achieved by counting in deep chambers, with large grid areas that contain large numbers of spermatozoa, rather than in shallow chambers with small grids containing few spermatozoa. To facilitate counting, the semen should be diluted sufficiently in fixative so that there is little overlap of non-motile cells. The example below illustrates the difference between chambers in achieving an accurate measurement for a semen sample with a low concentration of sperm.

For a low-volume chamber with a 1 mm × 1 mm grid filled with undiluted spermatozoa:

- If the true sperm concentration is 1×10^6 per ml there are 1000 spermatozoa per μl or 1 spermatozoon per nl.
- In a 10-μm-deep chamber with a 1 mm × 1 mm grid on the floor, there will be 10 spermatozoa in the entire 10 nl grid.
- The error associated with counting only 10 spermatozoa is 32% and the 95% confidence interval $10 \pm 1.96 \times \sqrt{N}$ (= 10 ± 6.2) (see Table 2.2).
- This large confidence interval means that the true count could be between 4 spermatozoa (10 – 6) and 16 spermatozoa (10 + 6) in the total 10-nl volume.
- Thus, the estimate of the concentration is between 400 000 and 1 600 000 spermatozoa per ml of semen.
- In practice, this means that the best estimate for a 50-μl volume is that it contains between 20 000 and 80 000 spermatozoa.
- If two replicate preparations had been examined, the corresponding values for the 20 spermatozoa observed would be, from the 22% error, a confidence interval of 20 ± 8.8, actual numbers of 11 (20 – 9) or 29 (20 + 9) in the total 20 nl volume, an estimate of the true value ranging from 550 000 spermatozoa/ml to 1 450 000 spermatozoa/ml semen and between 27 500 and 72 500 spermatozoa per 50-μl aliquot.

For a large-volume chamber with nine 1 mm × 1 mm grids filled with 1 + 1 (1:2) diluted semen:

- If the true sperm concentration is 1×10^6 per ml and a dilution of 1 + 1 (1:2) is made (see Section 2.8), there will be 500 000 spermatozoa per ml, 500 spermatozoa per μl or 0.5 spermatozoa per nl.
- In a 100-μm-deep chamber with several 1 mm × 1 mm grids on the floor (100 nl per grid) there will be 200 spermatozoa in four grids (400 nl), 400 in the two replicates (800 nl).

- The error associated with counting 400 spermatozoa is 5% and the 95% confidence interval $400 \pm 1.96 \times \sqrt{N}$ (= 400 ± 39) (see Table 2.2).
- This confidence interval means that the true count could be between 360 spermatozoa (400–40) and 440 spermatozoa (400 + 40) in the total volume of 800 nl of 1 + 1 (1:2) diluted semen.
- Thus, the estimate of the concentration is between 900 000 and 1 100 000 spermatozoa per ml of undiluted semen.
- In practice, this means that a 50-µl volume contains between 45 000 and 55 000 spermatozoa.

A7.3 Errors in measurement of percentages

A7.3.1 Errors in assessing percentages

When spermatozoa are classified into two classes (such as normal or abnormal morphology, motile or immotile, alive or dead, acrosome-reacted or not, fused with zona-free hamster eggs or not), the percentages follow the binomial distribution. For this distribution, the standard error of the estimated percentage (p) within a class depends on the true, but unknown, percentage, as well as on the number of spermatozoa counted (N). The standard error is $\sqrt{(p(100-p)/N)}$, and an approximate confidence interval can be constructed from the normal distribution. This is a good approximation for values in the range 20–80%.

- If 100 spermatozoa are counted, and the percentage with normal morphology is 20%, the standard error of the estimated percentage of normal spermatozoa is $\sqrt{(20(100-20)/100)} = \sqrt{((20 \times 80)/100)} = \sqrt{(1600/100)} = 4\%$. The 95% confidence limit is $\pm 1.96 \times 4\%$ or ± 7.8%, and the corresponding confidence interval 12.2–27.8%.
- If 200 spermatozoa are counted, the standard error is $\sqrt{(20(100-20)/200)} = \sqrt{((20 \times 80)/200)} = \sqrt{(1600/200)} = 2.8\%$. The 95% confidence limit is $\pm 1.96 \times 2.8\%$ or ± 5.5%, and the corresponding confidence interval 14.5–25.5%.
- If 400 spermatozoa are counted, the standard error is $\sqrt{(20(100-20)/400)} = \sqrt{((20 \times 80)/400)} = \sqrt{(1600/400)} = 2.0\%$. The 95% confidence limit is $\pm 1.96 \times 2\%$ or ± 3.9% and the corresponding confidence interval 16.1–23.9%.

Outside the range 20–80%, it is more appropriate to use the angular transformation (arc sin square root) $z = \sin^{-1}\sqrt{(p/100)}$. This has the property that the standard deviation of z is $1/(2\sqrt{N})$ and thus depends only on the number of spermatozoa counted and not the true (but unknown) percentage. An alternative is to compute exact binomial confidence limits using one of several widely available statistical software packages.

A7.3.2 Agreement between replicate percentages

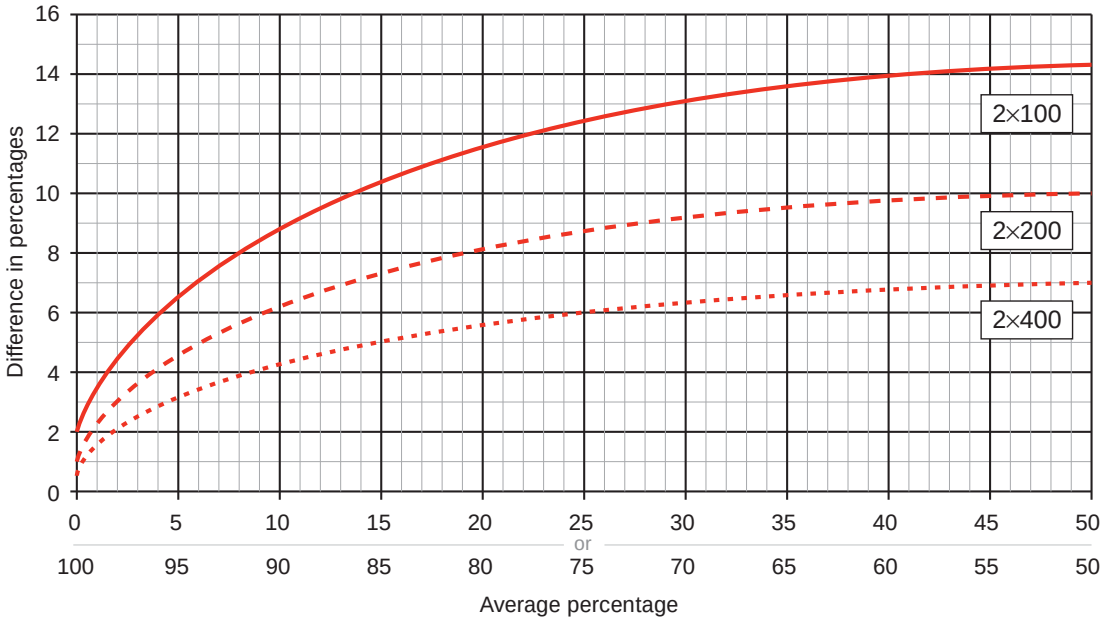
It is recommended that replicate assessments of percentages (p_1 and p_2) are made on N spermatozoa in each sample and compared. The limit of expected dif-

ference d (where $d = |p_1 - p_2|$) is $1.96(\sqrt{(2\bar{p}(100-\bar{p})/N})$ where $\bar{p} = (p_1+p_2)/2$. The difference between independent assessments is expected to be zero, with standard error dependent on the estimated percentage and the total number of spermatozoa counted.

The large statistical errors associated with counting fewer than 200 spermatozoa per replicate are apparent in Fig. A7.2, which shows the exact 95% confidence intervals for agreement between percentages for replicate counts of 100, 200 and 400 spermatozoa (i.e. total sperm numbers of 200, 400 and 800). It also shows that the error is symmetrical around 50%, with a maximum at 50% and minima at 0% and 100%.

Fig. A7.2 The acceptable differences between two replicate assessments of percentage as a function of the true percentage and the total number of spermatozoa assessed

The lines show the differences that are expected to occur by chance alone (95% confidence limits) for replicate estimated percentages from 100 (total 200: top, solid line), 200 (total 400: middle, dotted line) and 400 (total 800: lower, dashed line) spermatozoa.



The acceptable differences between replicates can be read from this graph. For a total of 200 spermatozoa (100 per replicate) and a true percentage of 5% (or 95%), the upper 95% confidence limit for the difference is 6.6%. On average, 19 of 20 repeated assessments of the same sample will be between 2.42% and 9.00%; one in 20 will give a result outside these limits by chance alone. For a total of 800 spermatozoa (400 per replicate: dashed line) and a true percentage of 5% (or 95%), the upper 95% confidence limit for the difference is 3.1%, and the 95% confidence limits are 3.1% and 7.6%. Similarly, if a total of 400 spermatozoa is counted (200 per replicate; dotted line), for a true value of 20% (or 80%) the upper 95% confidence limit is 8.1%, with limits 16.2% and 24.3%.

Tables A7.2, A7.3 and A7.4 present data on the acceptable differences between replicates (those occurring by chance alone) for a range of percentages estimated from different numbers of total sperm counted. These may be more useful than the graph (Fig. A7.2) for assessing the agreement between replicate percentages of spermatozoa that are morphologically normal, motile, viable or acrosome-reacted.

Table A7.2 Acceptable differences between two percentages for a given average, determined from replicate counts of 100 spermatozoa (total 200 counted)

Average (%)	Difference*
0	2
1	3
2	4
3	5
4	6
5–6	7
7–9	8
10–12	9
13–15	10
16-19	11
20–25	12
26–33	13
34–66	14

Average (%)	Difference*
67–74	13
75–80	12
81–84	11
85–87	10
88–90	9
91–93	8
94–95	7
96	6
97	5
98	4
99	3
100	2

**Based on rounded 95% confidence interval.*

Table A7.3 Acceptable differences between two percentages for a given average, determined from replicate counts of 200 spermatozoa (total 400 counted)

Average (%)	Difference*
0	1
1	2
2	3
3–4	4
5–7	5
8–11	6
12–16	7
17–23	8
24–34	9
35–65	10

Average (%)	Difference*
66–76	9
77–83	8
84–88	7
89–92	6
93–95	5
96–97	4
98	3
99	2
100	1

**Based on rounded 95% confidence interval.*

Table A7.4 Acceptable differences between two percentages for a given average, determined from replicate counts of 400 spermatozoa (total 800 counted)

Average (%)	Difference*
0	0
1–3	2
4–6	3
7–11	4
12–18	5
19–30	6
31–69	7

Average (%)	Difference*
70–81	6
82–88	5
89–93	4
94–96	3
97–99	2
100	0

**Based on rounded 95% confidence interval.*

A7.4 Production of semen samples for quality control

Quality control specimens should ideally be representative of the range of semen samples processed in the laboratory. If only a small number of QC samples are to be analysed, they should be those most relevant to the main activity in the laboratory. For example, in the laboratory of an infertility service, clinically significant ranges (concentration 15×10^6 to 50×10^6 per ml, progressive motility 30–50%, and normal morphology below 5%) could be chosen.

- Aliquots of pooled semen samples can be stored frozen, or at 4 °C with a preservative, and analysed at intervals for sperm concentration.
- Spermatozoa may not survive cryopreservation sufficiently well to be a useful source of internal and external QC materials for motility and sperm antibody tests.
- Video tapes, CDs and DVDs can also be used for sperm motility.
- Photographs, video tapes, CDs and DVDs can be used for sperm morphology.
- Video-recordings are particularly useful for training in motility and morphology assessment, but their use should complement, not replace, replicate assessments of semen specimens.
- Stained semen slides can be used for morphology quality control. Fixed smears can also be stored and used to monitor staining. Stained slides may deteriorate with time, depending on the quality of the fixing or staining procedure. However, slides stained using the Papanicolaou procedure described in this manual, and stored in the dark at room temperature, should last for months or even years.
- Sperm antibody-positive serum may be used for QC of indirect immunobead tests, but is not recommended for use in direct immunobead tests.

A7.5 Preparation of a video-recording for internal quality control of analysis of sperm motility

This protocol describes how to prepare a video-recording to be used for quality control of manual motility assessment procedures.

- Record at least five and up to 10 fields to mimic the multiple fields assessed for motility analysis during semen evaluation and to allow at least 400 spermatozoa to be assessed.
- The video-recording should contain images from several different semen samples, covering the range of motilities typically seen during routine semen evaluation.
- The videotape can simply have five fields of a few different semen specimens; in other cases, a more complex recording may be needed, for example for standardization between laboratories or in a multicentre study. In this case, more semen samples might be used, and the samples could be repeated randomly throughout the videotape. Repeated samples allow intra-technician precision to be estimated.

A7.5.1 Additional equipment

In addition to the routine equipment for estimating motility, the preparation of recordings for quality control requires:

- a video-recorder or computer with a CD-RW or DVD-RW drive;
- a marking device for coding the video-recording, such as a slide with numbers etched on its surface (an England finder) or time generator.

A7.5.2 Procedure

- If several semen samples are available, the entire video-recording can be prepared at one session; otherwise, samples can be recorded as they become available.
- If motility is typically assessed at room temperature, the recordings should be done at room temperature. Likewise, if motility is typically assessed at 37 °C, then the recordings should be made at the same temperature.

Note: If recording is to be done at 37 °C, the stage warmer should be turned on and allowed to reach a stable temperature at least 10 minutes before use.

- Prepare a recording of sufficient fields to ensure that 400 spermatozoa are recorded from several different semen samples.
- For specimens with low semen concentration, more than 10 fields may be necessary to give adequate numbers of spermatozoa for scoring. Video-recording of 10 fields will take several minutes.
- The video-recording can be done when either a slide with coverslip or a fixed 20-μm-deep chamber is used for the analysis.

Note 1: When disposable counting chamber slides are used, motility will be stable for a longer period of time than when slides and coverslips are used. This will allow 10 (or more) fields to be recorded from the same preparation.

Note 2: When slides and coverslips are used, it may be necessary to use several during the video-recording to avoid a noticeable decline in motility over time.

- Identify several semen samples with a range of motility values.
- Each specimen should have a unique code on the video-recording. The coding can vary from simply marking each specimen, to marking each field of each specimen. For example, the first specimen marker could be at the beginning of the first field, with no other coding until the second specimen appears. Alternatively, the coding could include markings of each individual field, i.e. the first field of the first specimen would be marked 01-01, the second field of the first specimen would be marked 01-02, etc. This more elaborate marking system helps the technicians track where they are during analysis.

Note 1: It is useful to have short blank sections on the video-recording between fields or between specimens. This allows the technician to recognize the beginning of the new segment.

Note 2: The easiest way to get a blank segment when recording is to cover the light source.

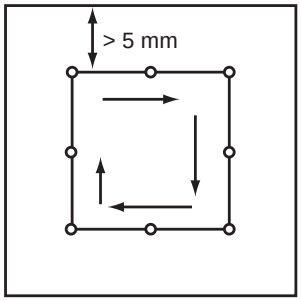
Note 3: This can also be done before pausing the video-recorder; the “pause” should always be used rather than the “stop” button, as the “stop” button may cause noise or static on the videotape.

- Record an image of a stage micrometer for 10 seconds at the magnification that will be used for recording the samples. The magnification should provide an image on the monitor similar to that used for visual microscopic analysis. The stage micrometer image gives a permanent record of the magnification, which permits calibration of the screen-overlapping acetate grid for use during analysis of the videotape or calibration of a CASA instrument.
- Record the coding image for the first specimen for 5–7 seconds. At the end of this time, block the light source for 3 seconds to give a blank image to serve as a marker; then pause the recording.
- Identify the first semen specimen to be used for recording. Place 10 μl of well-mixed semen on a glass slide and cover with a 22 mm × 22 mm coverslip, or load a fixed slide chamber with 7 μl of well-mixed semen. Allow the sample to settle for a few seconds (at 37 °C if required) until drifting has stopped. Record 10 (or more) fields, following the pattern shown in Fig. A7.3. For CASA QC, the sperm concentration should not exceed 50×10^6 per ml; more concentrated samples may have to be diluted in homologous seminal plasma (see Section 3.5.2).

- Choose the first field near the upper left section of the coverslip or chamber, at least 5 mm from the edge. Record the field for 15 seconds, keeping the microscope and the stage as still as possible. After 15 seconds, record a 3-second blank and pause the recording. If individual fields are being coded, change the code number and record an image containing only the code number for 5–7 seconds.
- Following the pattern shown in Fig. A7.3, locate a second motile field on the slide or chamber, and record this field for 15 seconds. Again, record a 3-second blank at the end of the 15 seconds. Pause the recording and, if desired, change the code number to indicate the third field. Continue recording in this way until a total of at least 400 spermatozoa (10 fields or more, depending on the concentration) have been captured. After recording the final field and a 3-second blank, stop the recording.
- Prepare a second sample. Record the coding image for specimen two for 5–7 seconds, followed by a 3-second blank.
- Record the second sample according to the steps above, recording 10 or more fields for 15 seconds each, with a blank in between each field and a blank at the end of the final field.
- Repeat this process until the desired number of specimens have been video-recorded.

Fig. A7.3 Aid to assessing sperm motility

Systematic scanning of fields for video-recording of sperm motility at least 5 mm from the edges of the coverslip.

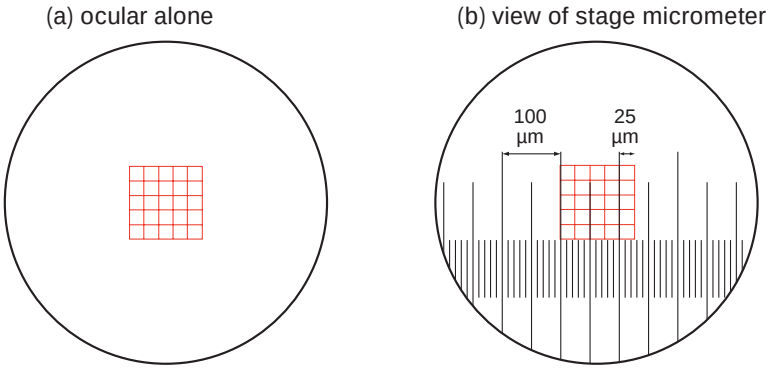


Note: If a more complex IQC motility video-recording, containing randomly repeated specimens, is desired, either a second recorder or a computer equipped with specialized video-editing software is required. In this case, each specimen should be video-recorded separately, with only the fields marked. The specimen number should not be recorded, as this will change as the specimen is repeated on the recording. If a computer equipped with video-editing software is available, images from each specimen can be digitized and combined as desired on a DVD.

A7.5.3 Analysis of the video-recording

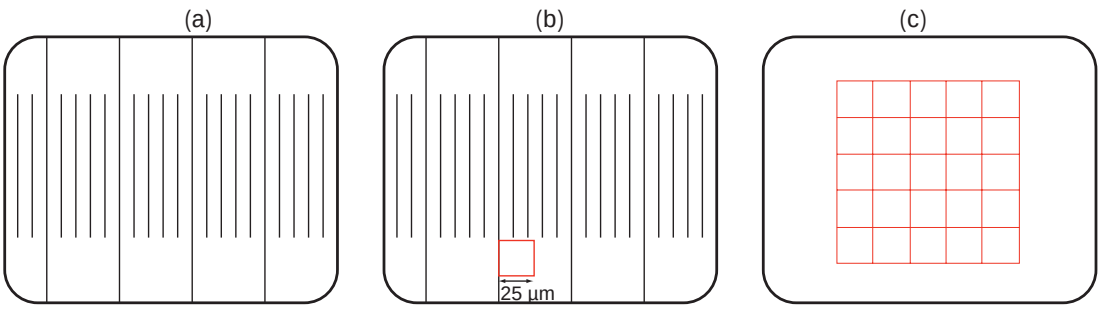
- Draw an acetate grid overlay and place it over the video monitor to be used during analysis of the video-recording, as detailed below. This will mimic the grid used in the eyepiece during microscopic analysis (see Fig. A7.4a).

Fig. A7.4 View through an ocular with reticle (red grid)



- Place the stage micrometer on the microscope stage at the magnification used for motility analysis. Looking through the ocular with reticle (see Fig. A7.4), measure the size of the grid sections using the stage micrometer. In this example the reticle grid is 125 µm × 125 µm and each square is 25 µm × 25 µm (Fig. A7.4b). Make a note of these measurements.
- Play the recording through the video monitor and pause at the image of the micrometer (Fig. A7.5a).
- Tape an acetate sheet over the screen and draw a square the size of one square in the eyepiece reticle grid, as measured above (see Fig. A7.5b).
- Complete the image of the entire eyepiece reticle grid (25 squares) (Fig. A7.5c).
- To analyse the video-recording, secure the acetate grid overlay over the video monitor. The analysis should be done on a standardized section of the grid overlay, e.g. the top two rows or the middle three rows.
- Score replicate assessments of 200 spermatozoa for each recorded segment.

Fig. A7.5 View of the videotaped image of the stage micrometer on the monitor and the drawn overlay; see text for explanation



A7.6 Preparation of diluted semen for internal quality control of determination of sperm concentration

A7.6.1 General considerations

- Some steps of the procedure for determining sperm concentration in semen can be monitored using diluted, preserved semen samples prepared in the laboratory.
- The IQC samples should be representative of the range of concentrations normally seen in the laboratory during routine semen evaluation.
- Dilute the semen in a preservative, and place aliquots in storage vials. These can be refrigerated and used later for counting.
- Take care when preparing the suspensions to mix the specimen thoroughly, to ensure that vials prepared from the same specimen contain identical concentrations of spermatozoa. In this way, differences in counts on the IQC samples can be attributed to problems in the counting procedure.
- Dilute the preserved IQC samples again before assessing the concentration using a haemocytometer. Use the final dilution that is used in the laboratory during routine counting. This ensures that the concentration of background debris and other non-sperm cells will be similar to that seen during routine evaluation. For example, if the semen is initially diluted with an equal volume of preservative, an additional 1 + 9 (1:10) dilution would yield a final dilution of 1:20.
- When a preserved sample with low sperm concentration is desired, it is better to start with a low concentration semen specimen rather than making a large dilution of a more concentrated specimen. This will ensure that the background is similar to that observed during routine semen analysis.
- Swim-up sperm preparations lack the debris, loose heads and cell fragment contamination seen during routine semen evaluation, and are best used only for monitoring the counting of similarly selected sperm suspensions.
- The number of sperm suspensions for IQC prepared at one time will depend on the number of technicians and the frequency of counting.
- Preserved diluted semen kept under refrigeration should be stable for at least 4 months.

A7.6.2 Reagents

Any of three preservatives may be used:

- Formalin: 10% (v/v) formaldehyde. To 27 ml of purified water add 10 ml of 37% (v/v) formaldehyde.
- Azide (Jørgensen et al., 2001): 3 mol/l sodium azide (NaN_3). Dissolve 19.5 g of NaN_3 in 100 ml of purified water.
- Agglutination-preventing solution (APSIS) (Brazil et al., 2004). To 100 ml of purified water add 1.0 g bovine serum albumin (BSA), 2.0 g of polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP), 0.90 g of sodium chloride (NaCl), 0.1 ml of detergent Triton X-100,

0.004 ml of silicone antifoaming agent and 0.10 g of sodium azide. Mix thoroughly and pass through a 0.45-μm filter to eliminate debris. Store at 4 °C.

Note: The bactericide sodium azide can be omitted from APSIS to make the solution non-toxic. However, such solutions should be discarded if contaminated.

A7.6.3 Additional supplies

In addition to the routine equipment for estimating sperm concentration, the preparation of QC samples requires:

- cryovials or other small tubes with tight-fitting lids for storage;
- permanent markers for labelling tubes.

A7.6.4 Procedure

1. Identify semen samples of the approximate desired concentration. The volume of preserved semen required will vary according to the needs of the laboratory; either use the entire volume of semen available or prepare 4 ml of diluted sperm suspension for each concentration.
2. As soon as possible after collecting the semen, dilute it with preservative. If APSIS is used for dilution and preservation, the longer the time before dilution, the greater the chance of crystal formation following dilution. These crystals can interfere with loading the chamber and counting sperm.
3. Transfer the volume of semen required to a 15-ml centrifuge tube. For each ml of semen, add either 100 μl of 10% (v/v) formalin, 10 μl of 3 mol/l azide, or 1 ml of APSIS.
4. Label all vials to be used for storage of the samples with identifying information and the date of preparation. Lids or tops should be removed and the vials placed in a rack to permit quick and easy filling.
5. Make sure that the diluted, preserved semen is thoroughly mixed throughout the allocation process, to ensure that all vials contain similar sperm concentrations. Even minor delays after mixing can allow the spermatozoa to begin to settle, altering the concentration in the aliquots. One way to ensure constant mixing is to place the centrifuge tube of diluted semen in a rack, and then mix the semen continuously with one hand using a plastic transfer pipette, while removing the aliquots using a pipette in the other hand.
6. Depending on the needs of the laboratory, each vial should contain 0.5–1.0 ml. Storing the samples in 0.5-ml aliquots allows several counts to be made from each vial.
7. Once the preserved sperm suspension has been distributed to all the vials, they should be tightly capped. Depending on the type of vial used, the lid can be sealed with a strip of self-sealing laboratory film. This is not necessary if cryovials are used.
8. Repeat the entire process for the remaining semen samples.
9. Store the vials at 4 °C.

Note: The concentration of the IQC solutions should be determined after the dilutions have been prepared, and should not be assumed from the original semen concentration. Once the preserved sperm suspensions have been prepared, a vial can be removed as needed and assessed (see Sections 2.7 and 2.8). The results can be charted using the procedure described in Section 7.7. All counts should be done using the counting method typically used in the laboratory. The section below describes the procedure using the haemocytometer.

A7.6.5 Using the stored IQC samples

- The preserved solutions must be further diluted before counting; the dilution will depend on the preservative used.
- The initial dilution of semen with formalin and azide is minimal, so does not need be taken into account. Semen preserved in APSIS is initially diluted two-fold (i.e. 1 + 1 (1:2)) and this must be taken into account in the final calculation of concentration.
- For suspensions diluted in APSIS from semen with an original concentration above 25×10^6 per ml, counting is best accomplished using a further 1 + 9 (1:10) dilution. This can be obtained by adding 50 µl of preserved sperm suspension to 450 µl of purified water. This yields a final semen dilution of 1:20. Do not use APSIS as diluent, because this will interfere with the sperm settling on the haemocytometer grid.
- For the following steps, all pipettes should be preset to the appropriate volume and preloaded with a clean tip for quick removal of the aliquot immediately after mixing.
- A dilution vial should be prepared with the appropriate volume of water (i.e. 450 µl if making a 1:10 dilution as suggested above). The contents of the semen storage vial should be well mixed on a vortex mixer for approximately 30 seconds at maximum speed. A 50-µl aliquot should then be transferred to the dilution vial containing water. The dilution vial should then be vortexed for 20 seconds at maximum speed. The haemocytometer should be loaded with 10 µl of suspension, and the spermatozoa counted as described in Sections 2.8.2 and 2.8.3.
- If the original semen sample used to prepare the preserved semen had a low concentration of spermatozoa, the dilution for counting will need to be adjusted accordingly. For example, if the original semen concentration was in the range of $4–25 \times 10^6$ per ml, to create a final dilution of 1:5 as in the laboratory, the appropriate additional dilution of APSIS-preserved semen would be 2:5 (2 + 3: since the semen has already been diluted 1 + 1 (1:2) with APSIS). This can be achieved by diluting 50 µl of the preserved semen with 75 µl of purified water.
- Preserved sperm suspensions stored in the refrigerator should be stable for at least 4 months, at which time new solutions should be prepared. It is desirable to have a period of overlap, during which the old and new preparations are both run, to monitor the transition period.

A7.7 Preparation of slides for internal quality control of assessment of sperm morphology

A7.7.1 General considerations

- Smears can be prepared in the laboratory for use in internal quality control of morphology staining and analysis.
- Multiple smears can be prepared from each of several different semen samples, representing the range of morphology scored in the laboratory.
- The smears can be fixed and stored for later use in monitoring the staining and analysis procedures.
- Stained smears can be used individually or in replicate for QC of the morphology analysis procedure.
- Use of replicates allows intra-technician precision to be determined. These QC slides are also useful when comparing results from different technicians within a laboratory, or when comparing analyses between laboratories.
- Papanicolaou-stained and mounted smears, stored in the dark at room temperature, should be stable for many months or even years.
- The semen must be mixed thoroughly throughout the entire process of smear preparation, to ensure that all the smears prepared from a particular semen sample are identical. Any major variation detected during analysis can be presumed to be a result of the process being monitored (i.e. the morphology analysis procedure) and not caused by inadequate mixing of the semen during slide preparation.

A7.7.2 Procedure

1. Transfer the semen from the specimen container into a 15-ml centrifuge tube. This will allow easier and more thorough mixing during the slide preparation process.
2. Clean both surfaces of frosted glass slides by rubbing vigorously with lint-free paper tissues.
3. Label the frosted slides with identifying information (e.g. identification number and date) using an HB (number 2) lead pencil. Pencil markings are stable through fixation and Papanicolaou staining of slides; ink markings from pens and some permanent markers are not.
4. Attach a clean tip to the pipette and set the volume to 10 µl (or the volume routinely used in the laboratory for preparation of morphology smears).
5. The semen must be thoroughly mixed during the entire process, to ensure that all smears are as similar as possible. After mixing, even minor delays before removing the aliquot can allow the sperm to begin to settle, altering the population of spermatozoa delivered to the slide.
6. Mix the sample well in the centrifuge tube by aspirating it 10 times into a wide-bore (approximately 1.5 mm diameter) pipette equilibrated to the temperature of

the sample. This process should be vigorous enough to mix the semen, yet not so vigorous that it creates bubbles.

7. Immediately after mixing, without allowing time for the spermatozoa to settle out of suspension, place 10 µl of semen on the clear end of one of the cleaned slides. It is important not to let the drop of semen remain on the slide for more than a couple of seconds before smearing.

8. Smear the aliquot of semen over the surface of the slide using the feathering technique (see Section 2.13.2). In this procedure, the edge of a second slide is used to drag the drop of semen along the surface of the slide. Be sure to use the slide to "pull" the semen across the slide: do not use the slide to "push" the semen from behind. Care must be taken not to make the smears too thick, or there will be overlapping or clumped spermatozoa and more background stain. The separation of the spermatozoa on the slide depends on the volume of semen and the sperm concentration, the angle of the dragging slide (the smaller the angle, the thinner the smear) (Hotchkiss, 1945) and the speed of smearing (the more rapid the movement, the thicker the smear) (Eliasson, 1971).

9. Repeat steps 6–8 for the remaining slides, making only one slide after each mixing to ensure the spermatozoa do not settle before the aliquot is removed. If there is a pause of more than a couple of seconds after mixing, the semen should be remixed before the aliquot is removed.

10. Once the technique is established and the preparation is going smoothly, it may be possible to make two or three slides after each mixing. The aliquots should all be removed immediately after mixing, and the two or three smears made as quickly as possible, within a few seconds.

A7.8 Calibration of equipment

- Pipettes, counting chambers and other equipment should be calibrated at 6-monthly or yearly intervals.

A7.8.1 Balances

- Balances should be checked regularly with internal calibrators, and by external calibration at the time of regular laboratory maintenance service.
- Calibrate balances by weighing external standard weights (e.g. 1, 2, 5 and 10 g to cover the range of semen weights).
- Repeat measurements 10 times and calculate the mean, SD and coefficient of variation (CV) (= 100 × SD/mean).
- Check the accuracy (that the stipulated weight falls within 2 SD of the measured mean).

A7.8.2 Pipettes

- Calibrate pipettes by aspirating purified water up to the graduation mark and dispensing into tared weighing boats.
- Calculate the anticipated volume from the weight of water pipetted assuming a density of 1 g/ml.

Note: The density of water decreases with temperature (Lentner, 1981). It is 0.9982 g/ml at 20 °C, 0.9956 g/ml at 30 °C and 0.9922 g/ml at 40 °C. For purposes of calibration, however, an assumed value of 1.0 g/ml is adequate.

- Repeat measurements 10 times and calculate the mean, SD and CV (= 100 × SD/mean).
- Check the accuracy (that the stipulated volume falls within 2 SD of the measured mean).

A7.8.3 Depths of chambers

- Measure the depth of counting chambers using the Vernier scale on the fine focus of a microscope. Focus first on the chamber grid and then on an ink mark on the underside of the coverslip. Measure the number of graduation marks between the two points.
- Repeat the measurement 10 times and calculate the mean, SD and CV (= 100 × SD/mean).
- Check the accuracy (that the stipulated depth falls within 2 SD of the measured mean).

A7.8.4 Incubators

- The temperature of incubators and warm stages should be checked with thermometers that are, in turn, regularly calibrated.
- CO_2 gas mixtures should be checked daily with the incubator readout, or by other gas analyser systems, weekly to monthly, and by gas sampling at the time of servicing.

A7.8.5 pH paper

- This should be checked against known pH standards.

A7.8.6 Other equipment

- Other laboratory equipment and reagents, such as pH meters, should also be checked against standards at 3- to 6-month intervals.

References

Armitage P et al. (2002). *Statistical methods in medical research*. Oxford, Blackwell Science.

Brazil C et al. (2004). Quality control of laboratory methods for semen evaluation in a multicenter research study. *Journal of Andrology,* 25:645-656.

Eliasson R (1971). Standards for investigation of human semen. *Andrologia,* 3:49-64.

Hotchkiss RS (1945). *Fertility in man*. London, William Heineman Medical Books.

Jørgensen N et al. (2001). Regional differences in semen quality in Europe. *Human Reproduction,* 16:1012-1019.

Lentner C (1981). *Geigy scientific tables. Vol. 1: Units of measurement, body fluids, composition of the body, nutrition*. Basel, Ciba-Geigy.

APPENDIX 8 National external quality control programmes for semen analysis

Australia: Fertility Society of Australia, External Quality Assurance Schemes for Reproductive Medicine, PO Box 1101, West Leederville, Western Australia 6901, Australia

Denmark: Dansk Institut for Ekstern Kvalitetssikring for Laboratorieri, Sundhedssektoren, DEKS 54MI, Herler Universitets sygehns, Herler Ringvej 75, 2730 Herlor, Denmark

Germany: QuaDeGA, Centrum für Reproduktionsmedizin und Andrologie der Universitätsklinikum, Domagkstrasse 11, D-48129 Münster, Germany

Italy: Valutazione Esterna di Qualità, Gruppo Controllo Qualità Analitico Azienda Ospedaliero-Universitaria di Bologna, Policlinico Sant'Orsola-Malpighi, Bologna, Italy

Scandinavia: NAFA (Nordic Association for Andrology), Andrology Unit, Reproductive Medicine Centre, Karolinska Hospital, PO Box 140, SE-171 76 Stockholm, Sweden

Spain: Centro de Estudio e Investigación de la Fertilidad (CEIFER), Granada, Spain

United Kingdom: UKNEQAS Schemes for Andrology, Department of Reproductive Medicine, St Mary's Hospital, Manchester M13 0JH, United Kingdom

United States of America: American Association of Bioanalysts Proficiency Testing Service, 205 West Levee, Brownsville, Texas 78520-5596, USA

This manual is offered as a resource for scientists, technicians and managers undertaking semen analysis in clinical and research laboratories. The fifth edition provides updated, evidence-based, detailed protocols for routine, optional and research assays, with the goal of improving the quality and standardization of semen analysis and enhancing the comparability of results from different laboratories.

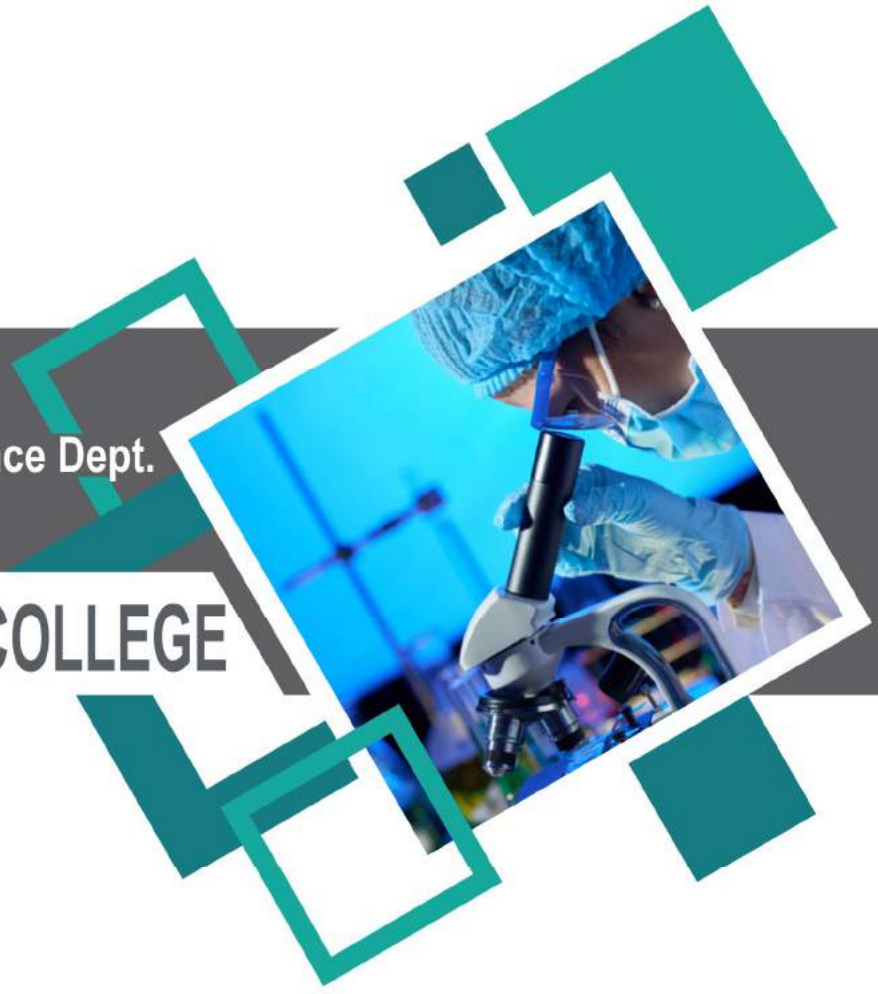
Features of the new edition

- An easy-to-use format that includes detailed information on each procedure;
- Additional material to explain methodology and aid in the interpretation of results;
- Numerous detailed micrographs showing examples of various sperm abnormalities;
- Sections on sperm preparation and cryopreservation;
- Evidence-based reference ranges and reference limits for various semen characteristics.

ISBN 978 92 4 154778 9

BACHELOR OF MEDICAL LABORATORY TECHNOLOGY LAB MANUAL

5th Semester



Prepared By

Paramedical & Allied Science Dept.

BMLT

MIDNAPORE CITY COLLEGE

BMLT
5th Semester
Paper-XIV (Clinical Microbiology)
Unit- 28 (Practical)
Full Marks: 50

Experiment 1. Sterilization techniques and cleaning of glassware.

Procedures of sterilisation

Sterilisation refers to the anti-microbial process during which all microorganisms are killed or eliminated in or on a substance by applying different processes. Microbes react in their own way to the antimicrobial effects of various physical treatments or chemical compounds, and the effectiveness of treatments depends on many other factors as well (e.g. population density, condition of microorganisms, concentration of the active agent, environmental factors). Sterilisation procedures involve the use of heat, radiation or chemicals, or "physical removal" of microbes. The type of sterilisation should always be chosen as required, by taking into consideration the quality of materials and tools used and the possible adverse effects of sterilisation on them.

Sterilisation by heat

The use of dry heat is based on the removal of the water content of microbes and subsequent oxidation. Open flame can be used for sterilisation if the object is not directly exposed to flame damage. Different laboratory devices (e.g. scalpel, knife, inoculating loop or needle) can be sterilised quickly and safely by crossing over open flame or by ignition.

Dry heat sterilisation is performed in a hot air steriliser. It is an electric box with adjustable temperature like an incubator. In order to achieve uniform chamber temperature, hot air is circulated. Sterilisation with dry heat is limited to devices made of metal, glass or porcelain, and other thermo-stabile-materials, like glycerol, soft paraffin, oils and fats. In the dry heat sterilisation system they have to withstand the temperature needed to kill the spore forming bacteria (at 160°C for 45 minutes; at 180°C for 25 minutes; at 200°C for 10 minutes). The heat conductivity of water is several times higher than that of the air, therefore heat sterilises more quickly and effectively in the presence of hot water or steam than dry heat. Boiling is the simplest and oldest way of using moist heat. The temperature of boiling water does not exceed 100°C at normal atmospheric pressure. Heat resistant, endospore-forming bacteria can survive the 10-30-minute heat treatment of boiling, so no sterilizing effect can be expected from boiling.

Pasteurisation is a widespread method – named after Louis Pasteur – to reduce the number of microorganisms found in different heat sensitive liquids. Milk can be pasteurised by heating to 65°C for 30 minutes or to 85°C for 5 minutes. During ultra-pasteurisation milk is heat-treated at 135-150°C for 2 minutes in a heat exchanger. The temperature and time used for pasteurisation are suitable to control the presence of some pathogenic bacteria, however endospores and cells of heat resistant bacteria e.g. Mycobacterium species, can survive.

Tyndallisation (intermittent sterilisation) is an old and lengthy method of heat sterilisation named after John Tyndall. During this method, a medium or solution is heated to a temperature over 90°C for 30 minutes for four successive days, and the substances are placed in an incubator at 37°C or stored at room temperature in the intermittent periods. Vegetative forms are destroyed during the heat treatments.

Endospores which can germinate during the incubation period are destroyed during the consecutive heat treatments. This way, after the fourth day of heat treatment, no living cells remain in the substance.

EXERCISE 1: OPERATION OF THE AUTOCLAVE

The use of saturated steam under high pressure is the most effective method to kill microorganisms. In the laboratories, a sealed heating device called autoclave is used for this purpose. From the inside of the carefully temperature-controlled autoclave, the air is expelled by the less dense steam and sterilisation takes place in a closed chamber at 121°C and overpressure. The household pressure cooker works on a similar principle but with lower temperature. Autoclaves are widely used in microbiological practise mainly for sterilisation of culture media, glassware and heat-resistant plastic products before their use, and also for contaminated materials prior to disposal as municipal solid waste. To achieve sterilisation, generally 15 minutes of heat treatment at 121°C under 1.1 kg/cm^2 pressures has to be applied. Most microbes are unable to tolerate this environment for more than 10 minutes. However, the time used for sterilisation depends on the size and content of the load.

Object of study, test organisms: culture medium in a flask

Materials and equipment: Distilled water, Heat-proof gloves, Autoclave

Procedure:

1. Open the lid of the autoclave and check that there is sufficient amount of distilled or deionised water in it. If necessary, refill.
2. Place the correctly packaged materials (e.g. laboratory equipment, culture medium in a flask) into the chamber of the autoclave. Stick a piece of autoclave indicator tape onto the surface of materials!
3. Close the lid of the autoclave.
4. Make sure that the bleeder valve is open.
5. Turn on the heating of the autoclave (the indicator lamp is lit).
6. If an intense (a thick, milky white) steam outflow can be detected through the outlet tube of the bleeder valve (100°C on the built-in thermometer), wait for 4-5 minutes and close the bleeder valve (venting).
7. With the help of a built-in thermometer and manometer, check the temperature and pressure increase inside the chamber of the autoclave.
8. The sterilisation time (15 minutes or more) begins only when the temperature equalization (to 121°C) in the chamber has occurred. It is important that the operator stays with the device and controls the process of sterilisation from the time it is turned on until the end of the sterilisation period.
9. Turn off the power switch of the autoclave when the sterilisation cycle/period has ended.
10. Allow the device to cool down to at least 60-70°C.
11. For decompression, slowly open the bleeder valve. Thereafter, carefully open the lid of the autoclave and remove the sterilised materials, using heat-proof gloves. Check the colour of sterilisation indicator controls.

Sterilisation by radiation

Other forms of energy [e.g. ultraviolet (UV) and ionizing radiation] are also used for sterilisation especially for heat-sensitive materials. The full spectrum of UV radiation can damage microbes but only a small part is responsible for the so-called germicidal effect. Very strong "germicidal" effect can be achieved around 265 nm, because maximum UV absorption of DNA occurs at this wavelength. The main cause of cell death is the formation of pyrimidine dimers in nucleic acids. Bacteria are able to repair their nucleic acid after damage using different mechanisms; however, beyond a certain level of damage, the capacity of the enzyme system is not enough and the accumulation of mutations causes death. UV (germicidal) lamps are widely used in hospitals and laboratories (e.g. in biological safety cabinets) for decontamination of air and any exposed surfaces. The disadvantage of the use of UV radiation is that it does not penetrate through glass, dirt films, water, and other substances.

Among the high-energy ionizing radiation, γ-rays from radioactive nuclides ^{60}Co are generally used for sterilisation of disposable needles, syringes, bandages, medicines and certain food (e.g. spices). The advantage of gamma radiation is its deep penetration through the packaging. Its disadvantage is the scattering in all directions, which requires special circumstances for application.

Filter sterilisation

The most commonly used mechanical method of sterilisation is filtration. During filtration, liquids or gases are pressed through a filter, which (depending on its pore size) retains or adsorbs (e.g. asbestos filter pads) microbes, thereby the filtrate becomes sterile. The pore diameter of filters should be chosen carefully so that bacteria and other cellular components cannot penetrate.

Earlier Seitz-type asbestos or different glass filters were commonly used for the filtration of microorganisms. The modern membrane filters are usually composed of high tensile-strength polymers(cellulose acetate, cellulose nitrate or polysulfone, etc.). Their operation is based partly on the adsorption of microbes, partly on a mechanical sieve effect. The pure sieve-based filters can be beneficial because they do not change the composition of the filtered solution. To remove bacteria, membrane filters with pore size of 0.22 μm are the best choice.

Membrane filters are biologically neutral; do not hamper life activities of microorganisms remaining on the filter and do not inhibit their enzyme functions. Furthermore, nutrients can diffuse through the membranes, so bacteria can be cultured on a variety of media also by placing the filters onto their surface.

Sterilisation by chemicals

A wide range of chemicals is suitable to inhibit or kill microbes. Some of the antimicrobial agents only inhibit the growth of microorganisms (e.g. bacteriostatic, fungistatic, and virostatic compounds) while others kill them (e.g. bacteriocidal, fungicidal, and virocidal agents). The -static or -cidal effect of a substance depends on the applied concentration and exposure time in addition to its quality. Only –cidal effect substances are used for chemical sterilisation. These substances have the following requirements: they should have a broad-spectrum effect, they should not be toxic to higher organisms, they should not enter detrimental reactions to the materials being treated with, they should not be biodegradable, they should be environmentally friendly, easy to apply and economical.

The materials used in chemical sterilisation are liquids or gases. Liquid agents are used especially for surface sterilisation. Among sterilising gases, those working at low temperature function by exposing the materials to be sterilised to high concentrations of very reactive gases (e.g. ethylene oxide, beta-propiolactone or formaldehyde). Due to their alkylating effect, these compounds cause the death of

microbes by damaging their proteins and nucleic acids. The chemical agents used for sterilisation must be chemically compatible with the substances to be sterilised, therefore they have a great importance in sterilisation of pharmaceutical and thermoplastic materials. The chemicals used by the gas sterilisers are harmful to humans as well. Therefore, the application of gas sterilisers requires compliance with the precautions by the users.

Procedures of disinfection

Any process aimed at destroying or removing the infectious capability of pathogenic microbes that generally occur on inanimate objects, is called disinfection. The chemicals used for disinfection can be classified according to their chemical structure and their mode of action.

Among the alcohols, ethanol and isopropanol are widely used as disinfectants. 50-70% aqueous solution has excellent antiseptic properties. The action mechanism of alcohols depends on the applied concentration. Due to the solubility of lipids in 50-95% ethanol solutions, biological membranes are disintegrated. Alcohols pass through the cell membrane with altered permeability, denature the proteins inside the cell and have a dehydration effect as well. Absolute alcohol (100% ethanol) provides the best dehydration effect but does not coagulate the intracellular proteins. 70% dilution of alcohols is the most effective way to kill the vegetative forms of bacteria and fungi, but less effective against spores and lipid-enveloped viruses.

Phenol called carbolic acid was first used as a disinfectant by Lister. Phenol denatures proteins, and irreversibly inactivates the membrane-bound oxidases and dehydrogenases. Due to the unfavourable physical, chemical and toxicological properties, phenol is no longer used. However, substituted (alkylated, halogenated) derivatives are often used in combination with surfactants or alcohols (e.g. cresol, hexachlorophene, chlorhexidine).

The halogens (F, Cl, I, Br) and their derivatives are very effective disinfectants and antiseptic agents; mainly their non-ionic forms have antimicrobial activity. Chlorine gas is used almost exclusively for the disinfection of drinking water or other waters. In addition, different compounds (e.g. chloride of lime, chloramine-B, sodium dichloroisocyanurate) are among the most widely used disinfectant agents. Sodium hypochlorite (“household bleach” is a mixture of 8% NaClO and 1% NaOH) is one of the oldest high-bleaching and deodorizing disinfectant. The basis of the effect of chlorine and its derivatives is that during decomposition in aqueous solution, a strong oxidant, nascent (atomic state) oxygen ('O'), is released. Nascent oxygen is very reactive and suitable to destroy bacteria, fungi and their spores as well as viruses.

Iodine is also a widely used disinfectant and antiseptic agent. There are two known preparations: tincture of iodine (alcoholic potassium iodide solution containing 5% iodine) and iodophors (aqueous solutions of iodine complexes with different natural detergents). It is applied in alcoholic solution to disinfect skin or in aquatic solution for washing prior surgery.

Aldehydes, such as formaldehyde and glutaraldehyde, are broad-spectrum disinfectants. They are used for decontamination of equipment and devices. Formalin is the 34-38% aqueous solution of formaldehyde gas. Its effect is based on the alkylation of proteins.

Heavy metals such as mercury, arsenic, silver, gold, copper, zinc and lead, and a variety of their compounds are highly efficient disinfectants but they are too damaging to living tissues to apply. They can be used as disinfectants at very low concentrations. Inside the cell, they bind to the sulfhydryl

groups of proteins. Primarily, organic and inorganic salts of silver and mercury-containing products are commercially available, which have bactericidal, fungicidal and virocidal effect.

Detergents or surfactants are amphiphilic organic molecules which have a hydrophilic "head" and a long hydrophobic “tail”. Detergents can be non-ionic, anionic or cationic according to the charge of the carbon chain. Nonionic surfactants have no significant biocidal effect and anionic detergents are only of limited use because of their poor efficiency. The latter group includes soaps, which are long-chain carboxylic acids (fatty acids) of sodium or potassium salts. They are not disinfectants on their own, but are efficient cleaning agents due to their lipid-solubilising effect. Cationic detergents, such as quaternary ammonium salts, are the best disinfectants.

Cleaning of glassware

Glassware for use in microbiological laboratory work should be not merely clean, but *chemically* clean. Test tubes, Petri dishes, flasks, etc., are the receptacles used in the microbiological laboratory for containing the different nutrient substances upon which microorganisms are to subsist. Very frequently free alkali may be present on new glassware in sufficient quantity to prevent microbial growths in the nutrients contained therein. Prescott and Winslow in testing out different glassware say that, "The more soluble glassware yielded sufficient alkali to the medium to inhibit four-fifths of the bacteria present in certain cases."

Glassware which *looks* clean may have been used previously and should be given a thorough cleaning to rid it of possible traces of mercuric chloride, or other chemical having germicidal properties.

Follow directions carefully and clean all new and apparently clean glassware in the order given.

Cleaning New or Apparently Clean Glassware. All new glassware should first be treated with chromic acid cleaning solution (*see appendix for all formulæ*) before proceeding with the directions for cleaning glassware.

Return used cleaning solution to the glass receptacle provided for the purpose. Do not throw it away. This solution may be used until oxidized, i.e., until dark green in color.

Heat will facilitate the action of the cleaning solution.

Small amounts of organic matter adhering to glassware are oxidized by this solution, but will not disappear until removed by a suitable brush and cleaning powder.*

New Petri dishes and test tubes may conveniently be

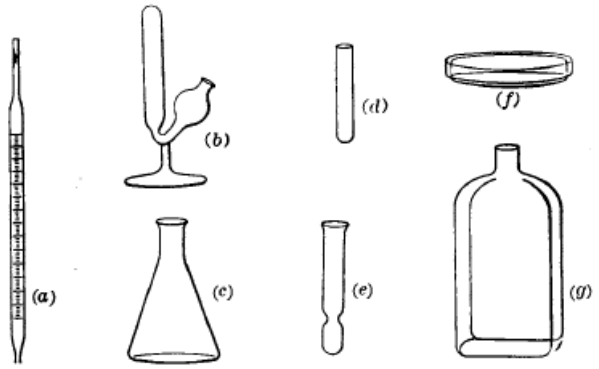


FIG. 1.—(*a*) Pipette, (*b*) Smith's Fermentation Tube, (*c*) Erlenmeyer Flask, (*d*) Test Tube, (*e*) Roux Tube, (*f*) Petri Dish, (*g*) Roux Flask.

placed in a large glass jar, covered with cleaning solution and allowed to stand over night. Heavy glass jars will not stand heating in steam. New flasks may be partially filled with cleaning solution and placed in steam for fifteen minutes.

Test Tubes. New test tubes should be filled with cleaning solution, placed in a wire basket and heated for at least fifteen minutes in the steam. After removing test tubes from the cleaning solution:

1. Wash them in water with a test-tube brush, using cleaning powder if necessary.
2. Rinse with tap water till clean and free from cleaning powder.
3. Rinse with distilled water.
4. Drain.
5. Test tubes and other glassware, flasks, pipettes, etc., may be rinsed with alcohol to facilitate drying, then drained.

Flasks. After treating flasks with cleaning solution:

1. Wash them as clean as possible with tap water and a flask brush; use cleaning powder if necessary. (When using cleaning powder, empty all water out of the flask, wet the flask brush with tap water, dip it in the cleaning powder and then rub the soiled portions vigorously.)
2. Rinse with tap water till clear and free from cleaning powder.
3. Rinse with distilled water.
4. Drain.

Petri Dishes. After removing Petri dishes from the cleaning solution:

1. Wash them in water, using cleaning powder if necessary.
2. Rinse with tap water. (It is not necessary to use alcohol or distilled water.)
3. Wipe immediately with a clean physician's cloth.

Pipettes. 1. Place pipettes delivery end down, in a glass cylinder (graduate) in cleaning solution and allow them to stand over night. (Steam may break the glass cylinder).

2. Pipettes which have been used should be washed immediately. Grease which cannot be removed with water should be treated with 10% NaOH and then with cleaning solution.
3. Rinse with tap water, followed by distilled water.
4. Rinse with alcohol. (Alcohol may be used repeatedly.)
5. Drain.

Fermentation Tubes. 1. Rinse with tap water.

2. Fill with cleaning solution and heat fifteen minutes in steam or allow to stand over night if more convenient.
3. Wash thoroughly in tap water, using a test-tube brush if necessary.
4. Rinse in distilled water and drain.

Cover-glasses and Slides. 1. Immerse the cover-glasses or slides, *one by one* in a 10% solution of sodium hydrate (NaOH) for thirty minutes only. This strength of NaOH will etch the glassware if left longer.

2. Wash *separately* in tap water, *handling with ordinary forceps.**
3. Put, *one at a time*, in cleaning solution, and leave over night as convenient.
4. Wash *separately* in water.
5. Immerse in *clean* alcohol (95%).
6. Wipe with a *clean* physician's cloth.
7. Store in clean Esmarch and deep culture dishes respectively, to keep free from dust.

* Any inexpensive fine-grained cleaning powder as powdered pumice stone, Bon Ami, etc., may be used.

Experiment 2. Preparation of culture media

OBJECTIVES: After completing this practical you will be able to know the following commonly used culture media as well as their uses in a clinical microbiology laboratory:

a) Basal medium
b) Differential medium
c) Selective medium
d) Enriched, and
e) Enrichment media

PRINCIPLE:

To cultivate the microorganisms successfully in the laboratory, suitable nutrients, such as protein components, carbohydrates, minerals, vitamins, and moisture in the right composition should be provided. This mixture is called a culture medium (plural, media). It may be prepared in liquid form, as a broth, or solidified with agar, a non-nutritive solidifying agent extracted from seaweed. Agar media may be used in tubes as a solid column (called a deep) or as slants, which have a greater surface area. They are also commonly used in petri dishes (named for the German bacteriologist who designed them), or plates, as they are often called.

Solid media are essential for isolating and separating bacteria growing together in a specimen collected from a patient, for example, urine or sputum. When a mixture of bacteria is streaked (spread) across the surface of an agar plate, it is diluted out so that single bacterial cells are deposited at certain areas on the plate. These single cells multiply at those sites until a visible aggregate called a colony is formed. Each colony represents the growth of one bacterial species. A single, separated colony can be transferred to another medium, where it will grow as a pure culture. Colonies of several different species are regularly present on the same agar plate when certain patient specimens are inoculated onto them. Work with pure cultures permits the microbiologist to study the properties of individual species without interference from other species. This practice of streaking plates to obtain pure cultures is critical in the hospital laboratory because it allows the microbiologist to determine how many types of bacteria are present, to identify those likely to be causing the patient's disease, and to test which antimicrobial agents will be effective for treatment.

The appearance of colonial growth on agar media can be very distinctive for individual species. Observation of the noticeable, gross features of colonies, that is, of their colonial morphology, is therefore very important. The colour, density, consistency, surface texture, shape, and size of colonies all should be observed, for these features can provide clues as to the identity of an organism, although final identification cannot be made by morphology alone.

In liquid media, some bacteria grow diffusely, producing uniform clouding, whereas others look very granular. Layering of growth at the top, center, or bottom of a broth tube reveals something of the organisms' oxygen requirements. Sometimes colonial aggregates are formed and the bacterial growth appears as small puff balls floating in the broth. Observation of such features can also be helpful in recognizing types of organisms.

MATERIALS

a) Dehydrated nutrient agar
b) Dehydrated nutrient broth

c) A balance and weighing papers
d) A 1-liter Erlenmeyer flask, cotton plugged or screw capped
e) A 1-liter glass beaker
f) A 1-liter graduated cylinder
g) Glass stirring rods (at least 10 cm long)
h) 10-ml pipettes (cotton plugged)
i) Test tubes (screw capped or cotton plugged)
j) Petri dishes
k) Aspiration device for pipetting

PROCEDURES

1) Required amount of dehydrated agar (6.5 gram) was weighed and poured in 500 ml of distilled water in an Erlenmeyer flask followed by stirring until the solid material dissolves completely. The desired pH was maintained.
2) The flask was closed with the cotton plug or cap and put into the autoclave for sterilization at 121 ^{o}C for 15 min.
3) After autoclaving the flask was allowed to cool to about 50°C (the agar should be warm and melted, but not too hot to handle in its flask). Then the plug or cap was removed and quickly poured the melted, sterile agar into a series of sterilized petri dishes. The petri dish tops are lifted with the left hand, and the bottoms were filled to about one-third capacity with melted agar. When the plates were cool (agar solidified), they were inverted to prevent condensing moisture from accumulating on the agar surfaces.
4) The inverted agar plates were placed in the incubator at 35°C for 24 h to check their sterility.

RESULTS

After at least 24 hours of incubation at 35°C, do your prepared plates appear to be sterile?

Record your observation of their physical appearance:

Plates:

Experiment 3. Examination of skin scapper fungi and Acid fast bacilli

Examination of skin scapper fungi

OBJECTIVES

Prepare potassium hydroxide (KOH) wet mount of clinical specimens.

Demonstrate the presence of fungal elements in the given clinical specimen by KOH wet mount preparation.

PRINCIPLE

The potassium hydroxide (KOH) wet mount preparation is very useful for the presumptive diagnosis of the type of fungal infection. The procedure also helps in the selection of appropriate culture media for the isolation of etiological fungal agent.

The KOH clears out the background scales or cell membranes that may be confused with fungal hyphal elements in microscopy of clinical specimens. Gentle heating also accelerates clearing of artifacts.

REQUIREMENTS

Equipments: Microscope.

Reagents and lab wares: Glass Petri dishes, slide, cover slip, straight/bent wire, needle, Bunsen flame and 10% KOH.

Specimen: Pus from draining sinuses, aspirate from nasal sinuses, respiratory specimen, skin scrapings, nail scrapings, hair, corneal scrapings, material from external ear, etc.

PROCEDURE

1) Emulsify the specimen in a drop of 10% KOH on a microscopic slide with the help of a loop.
2) Apply gentle heat by passing the slide over a Bunsen flame for 3–4 times.
3) Cover the smear with the cover slip.
4) Leave it for 5–10 min.
5) Examine the slide under low (10x) and high power (40x) magnifications 6 Examine the slide for 15–20 min. for demonstration of shining fungal elements.

OBSERVATIONS

Shining fungal elements were observed in microscopy of the clinical specimens.

RESULTS AND INTERPRETATIONS

Different fungi will have different morphological forms (yeasts, cells with pseudo hyphae, budding, septate, and aseptate hyphae, granules, etc.) which can be clearly seen in a KOH wet mount. Interpretation of results should be done by critical analysis of the type, size and color of fungal elements which will be different for different fungi.

Examination of Acid fast bacilli

PRINCIPLE

Acid fastness of acid-fast bacilli is attributed to the presence of large quantities of unsaponifiable wax fraction called mycolic acid in their cell wall and also the intactness of the cell wall. The degree of acid fastness varies in different bacteria.

In this staining method, application of heat helps the dye (a powerful staining solution containing carbol fuchsin and phenol) to penetrate the tubercle bacillus. Once stained, the stain cannot be easily removed. The tubercle bacilli resist the decolourizing action of acid-alcohol which confers acid fastness to the bacteria. The other microorganisms, which are easily decolourised by acid-alcohol, are considered non-acid fast. The non-acid fast bacilli readily absorb the colour of the counter stain (methylene blue) appearing blue, while the acid-fast cells retain the red colour of primary stain (carbol fuchsin).

REQUIREMENTS

Equipments: Compound light microscope.

Reagents and glass wares Bunsen flame/ torch soaked in methylated spirit, loop wire, glass slides, slide rack, strong carbol fuchsin, acid-alcohol (3 ml HCl + 97 ml ethanol) (decolourising agent), and Loeffler's methylene blue (counter stain).

Preparation of strong carbol fuchsin: This solution is prepared by dissolving 5 grams basic fuchsin powder in 25 grams crystalline phenol by placing them in a 1 litre flask. The flask containing solution is kept over a boiling water-bath for about 5 minutes, shaking the contents from time to time. When the solution is complete, 50 ml of 95% alcohol or 100% ethanol is added to the solution and mixed thoroughly. Then 500ml of distilled water is added to it and the mixture is filtered before use.

Preparation of 20% sulphuric acid: 800ml of water is collected in a large flask. The 200ml concentrated sulphuric acid (about 98% or 1.835g / ml)) is poured slowly down the side of the flask into the water, about 50 ml at a time. The mixture becomes hot. Remainder of acid is added in same manner. Note: The acid must be added to the water. It is dangerous to add the water to the acid. Great care must be taken to avoid spilling the acid on skin, clothing or elsewhere.

Preparation of 95% alcohol: This is prepared by adding 95 ml of ethanol and adding water to it to make 100ml.

Preparation of acid-alcohol decolouriser: This solution contains 75 ml concentrated hydrochloric acid (HCl) and 25 ml of industrial methylated spirit. Methylated spirit is poured into a large flask. The flask is placed in 5–8 cm of cold water in the sink. Then hydrochloric acid is added slowly and the top of the flask is covered to stop the fumes from escaping. It is left for 10 minutes. It is then decanted into a labelled bottle for use. The final concentration of HCl is 3%.

Specimen: Sputum smear positive for tubercle bacilli / culture smear of Mycobacterium species.

PROCEDURE

1) Heat fixes the smears by passing the slide 2–3 times gently over the flame with the smear side up. Allow the smear to be air dried.
2) Put the smears on a slide rack and cover the smears with strong carbol fuchsin. Allow it to stain for 5 minutes.

3) During this period, heat the slides from below intermittently by Bunsen flame or torch soaked in methylated spirit without boiling the solution, until the steam rises. Do not allow the stain to dry on the slide, and if necessary add more carbol fuchsin to cover the smear.
4) Rinse the smears gently under tap water.
5) Cover the smear with 20% sulphuric acid for at least 10 minutes for decolourisation.
6) Wash the slides thoroughly with water to remove all traces of acid. Note: Decolourisation with 95% alcohol for 2 minutes is only optional and may be omitted.
7) Cover the smear with Loeffler's methylene blue for 15–20 seconds.
8) Rinse the smears again under tap water and air dry it.
9) Observe the smear first under low power (10x) objective, and then under oil immersion (100x) objective.
   Note: The smear should be examined following a zig-zag pattern for at least 10 minutes or 300 fields, before declaring the smear negative.
10) Record the observations in the note book.

OBSERVATION

Presences of pink coloured slender rod shaped structures were seen with curved ends, and are scattered amidst blue coloured round cells with darkly stained multilobed nucleus.

RESULTS AND INTERPRETATION

The stained smear contains pink coloured acid fast bacilli seen among the blue coloured multilobed pus cells. The smear is positive for acid fast bacilli. Probably, the smear contains *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.*

Experiment 4. Biochemical test for bacterial differentiation

Indole Test

OBJECTIVES:

1) Determine the ability of bacteria to degrade the amino acid tryptophan.
2) Distinguish the bacteria based on the indole activity.

PRINCIPLE:

Tryptophan is an essential amino acid that can undergo oxidation by enzymatic activities of some bacteria. Conversion of tryptophan into metabolic products is mediated by the enzyme tryptophanase. The metabolic end products are indole, skatole and indole acetic acid. The ability to hydrolyse tryptophan with the production of indole is not a characteristic of all bacteria. Only some bacteria produce indole.

REQUIREMENTS:

Equipments: Incubator.

IReagents and lab wares: Peptone water / tryptone broth, Kovac's reagent, or Ehrlich's reagent, glass tubes and inoculating wire.

Kovac's reagent consists of para-dimethyl amino benzaldehyde, 5.0 gm; isoamyl alcohol, 75.0 ml; and concentrated hydrochloric acid, 25.0 ml. Ehrlich's reagent consists of p-dimethyl amino benzaldehyde, 4.0 gm; absolute ethyl alcohol, 380.0 ml; and concentrated hydrochloric acid, 80.0 ml.

Specimen: 24 hours to 48 hours peptone water culture of *Escherichia coli* incubated at 37°C.

PROCEDURE

1) Take 0.5 ml of 24 hours to 48 hours peptone water cultures of *E. coli* in a small test tube.
2) Add 0.2 ml of Kovac's reagent to the peptone water and shake.
3) Allow it to stand for few minutes and read the result.

OBSERVATION

In a positive test, a red-violet ring develops within minutes on addition of Kovac's reagent. In a negative test a yellow ring appears.

RESULTS AND INTERPRETATION

Positive indole test is indicated by the appearance of red-violet ring on adding the reagent. Negative reaction is indicated by developing a yellow ring. *E. coli* colonies tested are an indole producing bacteria. *K. pneumoniae* does not produce the indole.

List of Indole positive and negative bacteria

Indole positive bacteria	Indole negative bacteria
1. *Escherichia coli*	*1. Escherichia vulnaris*
2. *Klebsiella oxytoca*	2. *Klebsiella pneumoniae*
3. *Proteus vulgaris*	3. *Proteus mirabilis*
4. *Morganella morganii*	4. Salmonella Typhi
5. *Providencia rettgeri*	5. *Shigella sonnei*
6. *Aeromonas hydrophila*	
7. *Pasteurella multocida*	
8. *Vibrio cholerae*	
9. *Falvobacterium*	
10. *Plesiomonas shigelloides*	

Methyl Red Test

OBJECTIVES

1) Determine the ability of bacteria to oxidise glucose with the production of high concentrations of acidic end products by methyl red test.
2) Differentiate between all glucose oxidizing enteric bacteria particularly *Escherichia coli* and *Enterobacter aerogenes*.

PRINCIPLE

Methyl red is a pH indicator with a range between 6.0 (yellow) and 4.4 (red). The pH at which methyl red detects acid is considerably lower than the pH of other indicators used in bacteriologic culture media. Thus to produce a colour change, the test organism must produce large quantities of acid from the carbohydrate substrate being used.

The methyl red test is a quantitative test for acid production, requiring positive organisms to produce strong acids (lactic acid, acetic acid, formic acid) from glucose through the mixed acid fermentation pathway. Because many species of the Enterobacteriaceae may produce sufficient quantities of strong acids that can be detected by methyl red indicator during the initial phase of incubation, only organisms that can maintain this low pH after prolonged incubation (48–72 hours) overcoming the pH buffering system of the medium can be called methyl red positive.

REQUIREMENTS

Equipments: Incubator.

Reagents and lab wares: Inoculating wire. Methyl red test broth. It consists of poly peptone, 7 gm; glucose, 5 gm; dipotassium phosphate, 5 gm; and distilled water, 1l at a pH of 6.9. Methyl red indicator. It consists of methyl red, 0.1 g in 300 ml of 95% ethyl alcohol.

Specimen: Culture of *E. coli*, *E. aerogenes* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in glucose phosphate medium incubated at 30°C for five days.

PROCEDURE

1. Take 0.5 ml of broth cultures of *E. coli* in a small test tube.

2. Add five drops of 0.04% solution of methyl red directly to the broth culture and mix well.

3. Note any change in the colour of medium at once.

OBSERVATION

Look for the development of stable red colour on adding methyl red indicator.

RESULTS AND INTERPRETATION

The development of a stable red colour in the surface of the medium indicates sufficient acid production to lower the pH to 4.4 and constitutes a positive test. Because other organisms may produce smaller quantities of acid from the test substrate, an intermediate orange colour between yellow and red may develop. This does not indicate a positive test. Yellow colour indicates a negative test.

List of MR positive and negative bacteria

MR positive bacteria	MR negative bacteria
1. *E. coli*	1. *K. pneumoniae*
2. *K. ozaenae*	2. *Enterobacter* spp
3. *K. rhinoscleromatis*	
4. *K. ornitholytica*	
5. Edwardsielleae	
6. Salmonellae	
7. Citrobacter	
8. Proteae	
9. Yersinia	

Voges-Proskauer Test

PRINCIPLE

The Voges-Proskauer test determines the capability of some bacteria to produce non-acidic or neutral end products such as acetyl methyl carbinol from the organic acids produced as a result of glucose metabolism. Pyruvic acid, the pivotal compound formed in the fermentative degradation of glucose is further metabolised through various metabolic pathways, depending on the enzyme systems possessed by different bacteria.

One such pathway results in the production of acetoin (acetyl methyl carbinol), a neutral-reacting end product. Enteric bacteria such as members of the Klebsiella-EnterobacterHafnia-Serratia group produce acetoin as the chief end products of glucose metabolism and form smaller quantities of mixed acids.

The test depends on the production of acetyl methyl carbinol from pyruvic acid, as an intermediate product in its conversion to 2: 3 butylene glycol. In the presence of atmospheric oxygen and alkali (40% potassium hydroxide), the small amount of acetyl methyl carbinol present in the medium is converted to diacetyl, which reacts with the peptone of the broth to produce a red colour.

REQUIREMENTS

Equipments: Incubator.

Reagents and lab wares: Inoculating loop. VP broth. It consists of polypeptone, 7 gm; glucose,5 gm; dipotassium phosphate, 5 gm and distilled water, 1 litre at a pH of 6.9. 5% a naphthol. It consists of a naphthol, 5 gm; and absolute ethyl alcohol, 100 ml. It serves as the colour intensifier. 40% potassium hydroxide. It consists of 40 gm potassium hydroxide in 100 ml distilled water. It serves as the oxidising agent.

Specimen: Culture of *Escherichia coli*, *Enterobacter aerogenes* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in glucose phosphate medium incubated at 30°C for five days or 37°C for 48 hours.

PROCEDURE

1) Take 1 ml of broth cultures of *E. coli* in a small test tube.
2) First add 40% KOH and then add 0.6 ml of a 5% solution of α-naphthol in ethanol to the broth culture and shake gently. It is essential that the reagents are added in this order.
3) Note any change in the colour of medium within 2-5 minutes.

OBSERVATIONS

Look for the development of pink colour 15 minutes or more after addition of the reagents.

RESULTS AND INTERPRETATION

A positive test is represented by the development of a pink colour 15 minutes or more after addition of the reagents, deepening to magenta or crimson in half an hour. This indicates the presence of diacetyl, the oxidation product of acetoin. A negative test is indicated by colour less reaction for half an hour. The test should not be read after standing for over 1 hour because negative VP test may produce a copper-like colour, leading to a false positive interpretation.

VP positive and negative bacteria

VP positive bacteria	VP negative bacteria
1. *Klebsiella pneumoniae*	1. *Escherichia coli*
2. *Enterobacter cloacae*	2. *Edwardsiella tarda*
3. *Cedicia netri*	3. Salmonellae
4. *Ewingella americana*	4. Proteae
5. *Serratia marcescens*	5. Yersinieae
6. *Aeromonas sobria*	
7. *Vibrio cholerae*	
8. *Chryseomonas luteola*	
9. *Flavimonas oryzihabitans*	
10. *Sphingomonas paucinobilix*	

Citrate Utilisation Test

OBJECTIVES

Differentiate certain enteric organisms on the basis of their ability to utilize citrate as a sole source of carbon.

PRINCIPLE

In the absence of fermentable glucose or lactose, some bacteria are capable of using citrate as a sole source of carbon for their energy. This ability depends on the presence of the enzyme, a citrate permease that facilitates the transport of citrate in the cell.

Citrate is the first major intermediate in the Krebs cycle and is produced by the condensation of active acetyl with oxaloacetic acid. Citrate is acted on by the enzyme citrase which produces oxaloacetic acid and acetate. These products are then enzymatically converted to pyruvic acid and carbon dioxide (CO_2). During this reaction the medium becomes alkaline because the CO_2 that is generated combines with sodium and water to form sodium carbonate, an alkaline product. The presence of sodium carbonate changes the indicator, bromo thymol blue present in the medium from green at pH 6.9 to deep Prussian blue at pH 7.6. Simmon's citrate and Koser's citrate are two examples of different types of citrate media used in the test.

REQUIREMENTS

Equipments: Incubator.

Reagents and lab wares: Inoculating loop, Simmon's citrate medium (It consists of ammonium dihydrogen phosphate, 1 gm; dipotassium phosphate, 1 gm; sodium chloride, 5 gm; sodium citrate, 2 gm; magnesium sulfate, 0.20 gm; agar, 15 g; bromo thymol blue, 0.08 gm and distilled water 1 litre) pH adjusted to 6.9. The medium is poured into a tube on a slant.

Specimen: Culture of *Escherichia coli*, *Enterobacter aerogenes* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in glucose phosphate medium incubated at 37°C for 48 hours.

PROCEDURE

1) Using sterile technique, inoculate each bacteria into its appropriately labeled tube by means of a stab and streak inoculation.
2) Incubate all cultures for 24 hours to 48 hours at 37°C.

OBSERVATIONS

Look for the development of deep blue colour within 24-48 hours of incubation of the inoculated tube.

RESULTS AND INTERPRETATION

A positive test is represented by the development of a deep blue colour within 24 hours to 48 hours, indicating that the test organism has been able to utilize the citrate contained in the medium, with the production of alkaline products. A negative test is indicated by no change of colour of the citrate medium.

List of citrate positive and negative bacteria

Citrate positive bacteria	Citrate negative bacteria
1. *Klebsiella pneumoniae*	*1. Escherichia coli*
2. *Citrobacter diversus*	2. Salmonella Typhi
3. *Enterobacter cloacae*	3. Salmonella Paratyphi A
4. *Serratia marcescens*	4. *Shigella* species
5. *Providencia alcalifaecians*	5. *Yersinia enterocolitica*
6. *Euringella americana*	6. *Edwardsiella tarda*
7. *Acroncobacter oxylosoxidans*	7. *Vibrio holisae*
8. *Vibrio vulnificus*	

Experiment 5: Gram staining: (Gram positive and Gram negative)

Principle: Differential staining requires the use of at least three chemical reagents that are applied sequentially to a heat fixed smear. The first reagent is called the primary stain. Its function into impart its colour to all cells. In order to establish a colour contrast the second reagent is the discolouring agent. Based on the chemical composition of cellular components the decolourising agent may or may not remove the primary stain from the entire cells or only from certain cell structures. The final reagent, the counter stain has a contrasting than that of the primary stain.

Following decolourisation, if the primary stain is not washed out, the counter stain can't be observed and the cells or their components will retain the colour of the primary stain. If the primary stain is removed, it accepts the contrasting colour of counter-stain. In this way cell type or their structures can be distinguished from each other on the basis of the stain that cells retained.

Purposes: To become familiar with-

i) The chemical and theoritical basis for differential staining procedures.
ii) The chemical basis of gram-stain.
iii) Performance of the procedure for differentiating between the two principle group of bacteria-
   a. Gram positive bacteria.
   b. Gram negative bacteria.

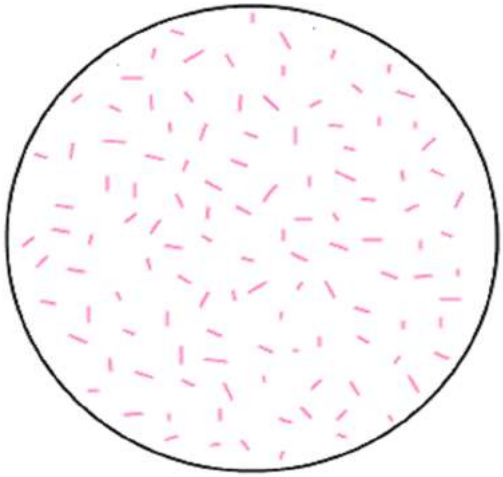
Materials:

- **Culture:** Twenty four hours old culture
- **Reagents:** Crystal violet- Primary stain
  Gram Iodine- Mordant
  Decolourising agent- 70% ethyl alcohol
  Counter Stain- Safranine
- **Equipment:** Bunsen burner, inoculating loop, staining tray, glass slide, lens paper and microscope.

Procedure:

- A clean glass slide was obtained.
- The smear was prepared by placing a drop of culture by using sterile inoculating loop.
- The smear was allowed to air dry and then heat fixed by using Bunsen-burner.
- The smear was covered with several drops of crystal violet and incubated for 30 seconds to 1 minute.
- The slide was gently washed with drops of tap water.
- The smear was then flooded with the Gram's iodine and incubated for one minute.
- The slide was gently washed with drops of tap water.
- The slide was then decolourized with 90% ethyl alcohol.
- The slide was air dried followed by counter staining with safranine for 45 seconds.
- The slide was gently washed with drops of tap water.
- The slide was air dried and observed under oil immerson microscope (100x).

Observation and Result:

Draw a Representative field:	
Cell Morphology: **Shape:** **Arrangement:** **Cell Colour:** **Gram characteristic:**	 **Rod Shape** **Single** **Violet** **Gram Positive**

Comment: Hence the supplied bacterial sample was Gram Positive rod shaped bacteria.

Blood grouping reagents

PRINCIPLE OF THE TEST

When used by the recommended technique, this reagent will cause agglutination (clumping) of red blood cells carrying the s antigen. Lack of agglutination of the red blood cells demonstrates the absence of the s antigen.

REAGENT DESCRIPTION

This reagent has been prepared from plasma collected from blood donors. ABO hemagglutinins were removed by adsorption. Conversion to serum was achieved by the addition of calcium chloride and where necessary, thrombin. Excess calcium was removed by the addition of sodium oxalate. The formulation also contains 1g/L sodium azide. The volume delivered by the reagent dropper bottle is approximately 40µl. Bearing this in mind, care should be taken to ensure that appropriate serum:cell ratios are maintained in all test systems.

PRECAUTIONS

Store at 2°C - 8°C. Do not use if turbid. Do not dilute. Do not use beyond the notified expiry date. This reagent contains 0.1% (w/v) sodium azide. Sodium azide may be toxic if ingested and may react with lead and copper plumbing to form explosive compounds. If discarded into sink, flush with a large volume of water to prevent azide buildup. Handle and dispose of reagents as potentially infectious.

CAUTION: ALL BLOOD PRODUCTS SHOULD BE TREATED AS POTENTIALLY INFECTIOUS. SOURCE MATERIAL FROM WHICH THIS PRODUCT WAS DERIVED WAS FOUND NEGATIVE WHEN TESTED IN ACCORDANCE WITH CURRENT FDA REQUIRED TESTS. NO KNOWN TEST METHODS CAN OFFER ASSURANCE THAT PRODUCTS DERIVED FROM HUMAN BLOOD WILL NOT TRANSMIT INFECTIOUS AGENTS.

This product has components (dropper bulbs) containing dry natural rubber. This reagent is for in vitro diagnostic use only.

Specimen Collection and Preparation

Specimens should be collected by aseptic technique with or without an anticoagulant. The specimen should be tested as soon as possible after collection. If testing is delayed, the specimen should be stored at 2°C - 8°C. Blood specimens exhibiting gross hemolysis or contamination should not be used. Do not use collection tubes that contain serum or plasma/cell separation media. Clotted samples or those collected in EDTA should be tested within fourteen days from collection. Donor blood stored in citrate anticoagulant may be tested until the expiry date of the donation.

MATERIALS

Isotonic saline . Reagent red blood cells suitable for the control of Anti-s . Polyspecific Anti-Human Globulin / Monospecific AntiHuman IgG . IgG sensitized red blood cells . 10 x 75mm or 12 x 75mm glass test tubes . Pipettes . Centrifuge . Heating block / waterbath .

TEST PROCEDURE

General Information This reagent has been standardized for use by the technique described below and therefore its suitability for use in other techniques cannot be guaranteed. When a test is required to be incubated for a specific period of time, a timer should be used.

RECOMMENDED TECHNIQUES

37°C Indirect Antiglobulin .

Add 2 drops of blood grouping reagent to a test tube. . Add 1 drop of red blood cells suspended to 2-4% in isotonic saline. . Mix the test well and incubate for 15-45 minutes at 20- 38°C. . Wash the test at least 3 times with a large excess isotonic saline. e.g. 4ml of saline per 12 (or 10) x 75mm glass tube)

NOTE:

(i) Allow adequate spin time to sediment the red blood cells.
(ii) make sure that most of the residual saline is removed at the end of each wash. . Add Anti-Human Globulin to each test tube in the amount specified in the

manufacturer's product insert. . Mix the contents of the test tube well and centrifuge. Suggested centrifugation: 900-1000g for 10-20 seconds or a time and speed appropriate for the centrifuge used that produces the strongest reaction of antibody with antigenpositive cells, yet allows easy resuspension of antigennegative cells. Gently shake the test tube to dislodge the cell button from the bottom and observe macroscopically for agglutination. Negative reactions may be examined with an optical aid. . Record results. . Add IgG sensitized antiglobulin control cells to confirm the validity of negative test result.

STABILITY OF REACTION

Test results should be read and interpreted immediately after centrifugation. Delays may cause dissociation of antigenantibody complexes resulting in weak positive or false negative reactions.

INTERPRETATION OF RESULTS

Agglutination = positive test result

No agglutination = negative test

QUALITY CONTROL

Quality control of reagents is essential and should be performed on each day of use and in accordance with local, state and federal regulations. We suggest that the following red blood cell samples are used to control the reactions of this reagent. Ss red blood cells should be used as a positive control. SS red blood cells should be used as a negative control.

PERFORMANCE LIMITATIONS

Since the antibodies from which this product has been prepared were stimulated by red blood cells, extensive tests have been undertaken to exclude the presence of additional contaminating blood group antibodies. However, it is impossible to state categorically that reagents of this nature will only contain antibodies of the required specificity. Direct antiglobulin test positive samples will react by the indirect antiglobulin test irrespective of their s status. Driblocks and waterbaths promote better heat transfer and are recommended for 37°C tests, particularly where the incubation period is 30 minutes or less. Gently resuspend tube tests before reading. Excessive agitation may disrupt weak agglutination and produce false negative results. Excessive centrifugation can lead to difficulty in resuspending the cell button, while inadequate centrifugation may result in agglutinates that are easily dispersed. The expression of certain red blood cell antigens may diminish in strength during storage, particularly in EDTA and clotted samples. Better results will be obtained with fresh samples. Suppressed or weak expression of blood group antigens may give rise to false-negative reactions. False positive or false negative results can occur due to contamination of test materials, improper reaction temperature, improper storage of materials , omission of test reagents and certain diseases.

ABO Forward and Reverse – Tube Method

PRINCIPLE

Testing with both Anti-A and Anti-B is necessary to determine if red blood cells possess or lack A and/or B blood group antigens. Absence of agglutination is a negative test result, which indicates the corresponding antigen is not demonstrable. Agglutination of red blood cells with a given reagent is a positive test result, which indicates the presence of the corresponding antigen on the red blood cells. (Forward Type)

Direct agglutination of A1 or B reagent red cells with the patient serum/plasma indicates the presence of the appropriate ABO antibody. (Reverse type)

Forward and reverse typing will be performed on samples for all patients greater than four months of age to allow for discovery of subtypes as well as to confirm typing. Individuals less than four months old may not have developed sufficient antibody to allow for detection.

SPECIMEN:

No special preparation of the patient is required prior to specimen collection. The specimen should be tested as soon as possible after collection, but EDTA and clotted specimens may be stored at 2 to 8□C for up to 10 days if there is a delay in testing. (Note: Storage may result in weaker-than-normal reactions) Bacterial contamination of the specimen may cause false test results.

REAGENTS:

- Blood Grouping Reagent: Anti-A and Anti-B (forward cells)
- Reagent red blood cells: A1 and B cells (reverse cells)
- Do not use beyond expiration date. Store at 2 to 8^{o}C. May be at room temperature (20 to 30^{o}C) while in use.

QUALITY CONTROL

To recognize reagent deterioration the reactivity of all blood grouping reagents should be confirmed on each day of use by testing known positive and negative controls.

MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT NOT SUPPLIED

Test tubes (12 x 75 mm), pipettes, physiologic saline, timer, centrifuge, as well as an optical aid.

TUBE METHOD PROCEDURE:

(Bring all reagents to room temperature before testing)

Note: Steps 2 and 3 may be interchanged, but do it one way or the other. Be consistent.

Directions: Front Grouping

Step	Action
1	Prepare a 3-5% suspension of red blood cells to be tested in isotonic saline. (Washed or unwashed cells may be used)
2	Place 1 drop of Anti-A and Anti-B respectively, in two small, properly labeled test tubes
3	Add one drop of rbc suspension into the tube and mix.
4	Centrifuge the test tube for appropriate centrifuge time.

5 Completely resuspend cells and examine macroscopically for agglutination.
Note: Hemolysis may be a consequence of bacterial contamination and should not be interpreted as a positive result.
6 Grade and record results
*Note: Centrifuge spin and wash time are noted on each centrifuge.

Directions:
Reverse Grouping – performed on individuals greater than 4 months old
Step Action
1 Label a test tube for each rbc reagent to be tested. (A1 or B).
2 Place two (2) drops of the serum/plasma into each labeled tube.
3 Add one (1) drop each of A1 cells and B cells to the appropriate tube.
4 Mix gently. Centrifuge the test tubes for appropriate centrifuge time.*
5 Completely resuspend cells and examine macroscopically for agglutination.
6 Grade and record results
*Note: Centrifuge spin and wash time are noted on each centrifuge.

INTERPRETATION OF TEST RESULTS:
+ (agglutination) 0 (no agglutination)

Unknown cells with:		Unknown serum with		Interpretation	Caucasian Freq. (%)
Anti-A	Anti-B	A1 cells	B cells	Group	
+	0	0	+	A	40
0	+	+	0	B	11
0	0	+	+	O	45
+	+	0	0	AB	4

NOTES AND LIMITATIONS
If the expected reactions are not obtained an interpretation of the patient's ABO group cannot be made without further testing. ABO discrepancies should be resolved before reporting or prior to transfusion. However, Group O red blood cells is the preferred transfusion alternative for any recipient whose ABO group is in question.

- Serum reverse group may be unreliable in infants under 6 months. Antibodies detectable in the serum of infants prior to this age are most commonly of maternal origin.
- Serum from persons with agammaglobulinemia may not contain detectable ABO antibodies.
- The reactivity of Reagent Red Blood Cells may diminish over the dating period.
- Aged samples, subgroups, cold agglutinins, some diseased states, or patient age may impair test

WEAK OR MISSING REACTION
- A weak or missing reaction in reverse typing may be due to a decreased titer of antibody in the serum/plasma. The titer may be affected by age of sample, age of the patient, or certain diseased states. If the titer is too low, agglutination after centrifugation may be decreased.

- If an expected agglutination is not present (or very weak): Either allow the tubes to sit 15-30 minutes at room temp or in the refrigerator for 10-15 minutes. Resuspend the tubes, spin, read and record results. At this point the reverse type should be correct if the titer was weakened.

Cold Agglutinin (esp. Anti-M and Anti-P1)

- If the patient's antibody screen demonstrates a cold agglutinin, the serum/plasma and cells for the reverse typing may need to be prewarmed prior to adding the two together. Prewarm serum/plasma and cells separately for approximately 10 minutes prior to the combination. After the combination of the prewarmed samples, spin and read reactions.
- For a strong cold agglutinin: The patient's cells may need to be washed with prewarmed saline and typing reagents incubated for the forward type.

Multiple Myeloma patients may have abnormally high concentrations of serum proteins which will cause tubes containing the patient's serum to appear agglutinated. If both tubes of the reverse type appear agglutinated and should not be---question rouleaux.

- To disperse rouleaux: Add 1 – 3 drops of saline to the tube(s) that have the rouleaux formation. Mix and centrifuge. Rouleaux formations tends to disperse, but antibody-mediated agglutination remains.

A SUBGROUP -- A2

- When blood typing: If the Anti-A is positive and A1 cells are positive, an A2 may be present.
- When crossmatching a Group A person with A units and the units are incompatible, an A2 may be present.
- Refer to the "Anti-A1 (lectin)" procedure for testing and additional information.

Anti-A1 (Lectin) Procedure

Step	Action
1	Prepare a 3-5% suspension of red blood cells in isotonic saline.
2	To a labeled test tube: Add one drop of Anti-A1 Lectin.
3	Using a transfer pipette, add one (1) drop of the cell suspension.
4	Mix well and centrifuge.
5	Resuspend the cells by gentle agitation and examine macroscopically for agglutination.
6	Grade and record results

Controls: The reactivity of Anti-A1 lectin should be confirmed on the day of use by testing red cells known to be positive and negative for A1. The reverse cells A1 and B may be used. Test and control results must be interpreted immediately upon test completion.

INTERPRETATION OF TEST RESULTS:(for Anti-A1 Lectin)

1. Agglutination constitutes a positive test result and indicates the presence of A1. Most reactions are clear- cut; however, A1B cells may show somewhat weaker reactions that A1 cells.

2. No agglutination constitutes a negative test result and indicates the absence of A1. Weak agglutination may occur with some cells that are most properly classified as A2.

- Use Group O blood for crossmatching A2 patients,
- Use Group B or O blood for crossmatching A2B patients.

REPORTING

If the results indicate the patient is not an A1, report out an A2 or A2B in a blood type comment. (Most of the 20% of non-A1 patients are A2)

CROSS MATCHING IN BLOOD

Introduction:

- Cross Matching is a procedure performed prior to a blood transfusion to determine whether donor blood is compatible (or incompatible) with recipient blood.
- Compatibility is determined through matching of different blood group systems, the most important of which are the ABO and Rh system, and/or by directly testing for the presence
of antibodies against a sample of donor tissues or blood.

Purpose of Cross Matching

- The crossmatch is routinely used as the final step of pretransfusion compatibility testing. The purposes of compatibility testing are to detect: irregular antibodies; errors in ABO grouping, and clerical errors in patient identification and result recording.
- The crossmatch will detect the following:
- 1. Most recipient antibodies directed against antigens on the donor red blood cells.

2. Major errors in ABO grouping, labeling, and identification of
donors and recipients.

Principle

- Cross-matching will detect incompatibilities between the donor and recipient that will not be evident on blood typing. There are two types of cross-matches: Major cross-match and Minor cross-match.

- The major crossmatch involves testing the patient's serum with donor cells to determine whether the patient has an antibody which may cause a hemolytic transfusion reaction or decreased cell survival of donor cells. This is the most important cross-match.
- The minor crossmatch involves testing the patients cells with donor plasma to determine whether there is an antibody in the donor's plasma directed against an antigen on the patient's cells.

Procedure

- Prepare donor and recipient blood samples:

For Major crossmatch : Donor's red cell and recipient serum or plasma
For Minor crossmatch : Recipient red cells and donor's serum or plasma

- Prepare 3 – 5% cell suspensions of red cells.
- Major Crossmatch:

Label a test tube. Add two drops of the patient serum and one drop of the appropriate donor cell suspension.

- Minor Crossmatch:

Label a test tube. Add two drops of the appropriate donor serum and one drop of the patient cell suspension.

- Mix the tubes and incubate at 37°C for about 45 minutes.
- Add two drops of AHG (Antihuman globulin) and mix well.
- Centrifuge for 1 minute at 1500 rpm
- Read macroscopically and microscopically and record the results

Interpretation:

The mixture of erythrocytes and serum are observed for hemolysis or microscopically for agglutination. Any evidence of hemolysis/agglutination indicates an incompatible cross-match. Negative results are taken to indicate compatibility.

Compatible Blood Groups

Blood Group	Antigens	Antibodies	Can give blood (RBC) to	Can receive blood (RBC) from
AB	A and B	None	AB	AB, A, B, O
A	A	B	A and AB	A and O
B	B	A	B and AB	B and O
O	None	A and B	AB, A, B, O	O

Blood Component preparation

Basic blood components:

Red Blood Cells

Platelets

Plasma

White blood cells

Collection Basics:

- Blood is collected in a primary bag that contains anticoagulant- preservatives
- Satellite bags may also be attached, depending on what components are needed
- Anticoagulant-preservatives minimize biochemical changes and increase shelf life

Whole blood is composed of plasma, red blood cells (RBCs; or erythrocytes), platelets, and nucleated white blood cells, also referred to as leukocytes. The leukocytes can be further categorized into mononuclear cells and polymorphonuclear cells (or granulocytes). Here we outline different techniques to obtain peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs), polymorphonuclear cells, leukocytes, or specific cell subsets.

Prepare Peripheral Blood Mononuclear Cells

PBMCs include lymphocytes (i.e. T cells, B cells, and NK cells), monocytes, and dendritic cells, and are defined as white blood cells with round nuclei. Preparation of a PBMC fraction

from whole blood is a common step prior to the isolation of specific immune cell subsets. The most common PBMC isolation method involves using a density gradient medium and centrifugation. This method takes advantage of the differences in density between the cells in blood and the density gradient medium.

Method:

The method for mononuclear cell isolation was first developed by Boyum in 1968. PBMCs are isolated by density gradient centrifugation, as different components of the blood have different densities and can be separated accordingly. The density gradient medium most commonly used (Ficoll or Ficoll-Paque) contains sodium diatrizoate, polysaccharides, and water, and has a density of 1.08 g/mL. This medium is denser than lymphocytes, monocytes, and platelets (meaning these will remain above it), but less dense than granulocytes and erythrocytes, which will drop below it.

To isolate PBMCs, whole blood, diluted with PBS, is gently layered over an equal volume of Ficoll in a Falcon tube and centrifuged for 30-40 minutes at 400-500 g without brake. Four layers will form, each containing different cell types—the uppermost layer will contain plasma, which can be removed by pipetting. The second layer will contain PBMCs and is a characteristically white and cloudy "blanket." These cells can be gently removed using a Pasteur pipette and added to warm medium or PBS to wash off any remaining platelets. The pelleted cells can then be counted and the percentage viability estimated using Trypan blue staining. Cells can be used immediately or frozen for long-term storage.

Prepare Peripheral Blood Polymorphonuclear Cells

Polymorphonuclear cells, also known as granulocytes, are a collection of immune cell subsets with enzyme-containing granules that can be released upon cell activation. To obtain a population of polymorphonuclear cells from whole blood.

Perform density gradient centrifugation followed by ammonium chloride lysis. You can then isolate specific granulocyte populations such as neutrophils, basophils, or eosinophils.

Directly isolate granulocytes from blood, without lysis or density centrifugation, technology. This approach allows you to quickly and easily obtain pan-granulocytes or one of the more specific granulocyte subsets (e.g. neutrophils, basophils, or eosinophils).

Method

heparinized blood specimens are first diluted with physiological saline or balanced salt solution in 1:1 proportion, layered over the separation medium, and centrifuged at a low speed for 30 minutes. During centrifugation, differential migration of blood constituents results in the formation of several cell layers. The following layers will be visible in the conical tube. From top to bottom: blood plasma and other constituents, a layer of mononuclear cells called buffy coat (PBMC/MNC), separation medium followed by a pellet at the very bottom which contains granulocytes erythrocytes (red blood cells).

To isolate PBMCs, the buffy coat is extracted, washed with salt-buffered solution, and then centrifuged allowing the cells to be recovered with high yield in a small volume. The supernatant, containing platelets, separation medium, and plasma, is removed, leaving a pellet of purified PBMCs. These cells can then be used in clinical and scientific applications and investigations.

Prepare Buffy Coats

A buffy coat is a concentrated suspension of leukocytes and results when erythrocytes and plasma are separated from the leukocyte fraction by low speed centrifugation.

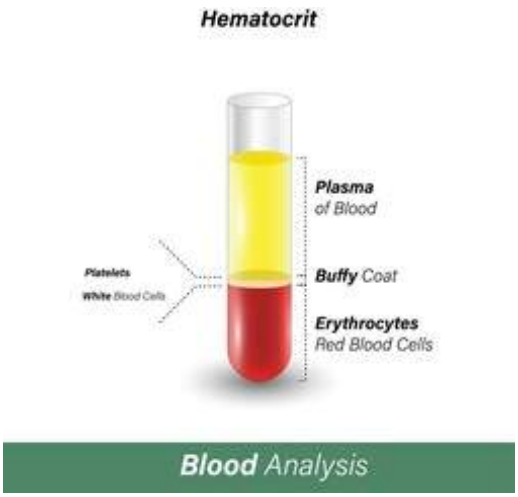
It is a concentration of leukocyte suspension. It is called buffy coat because of a buff; which is a kind of yellowish to brownish in color (buff in hue). Basically, a buffy coat is a combination of platelets and white blood cells from the whole blood sample.

The blood is concentrated using a centrifugation process collected in EDTA anticoagulant. The fraction of the anti-coagulated blood sample consisting of white blood cells and platelets is the buffy coat.

Buffy coat is less than 1% of the total blood volume. Buffy coat is situated in between the plasma and erythrocytes. The color is a bit yellow to brown.

Method:

Using a Pasteur pipette, fill the small narrow bore plastic with EDTA anti-coagulated blood. Centrifuge the blood for a total of 15minutes at RCF 1000g. Individual laboratories centrifuge at different times, usually ranging between 10 and 25 minutes. After the centrifuge, there will be a supernatant plasma above the buffy coat layer. You should remove and discard that upper layer.



Coomb's test

- Coomb's test is a direct **agglutination** reaction, more commonly known as antiglobulin test.

- It was discovered by Coombs, Mourant and Race in 1945 originally for the detection of incomplete anti-Rh antibodies.
- In the test, incomplete **antibodies** do not agglutinate erythrocytes. Incomplete antibody antiglobulin coats the surface of erythrocytes but does not cause any agglutination.
- When such erythrocytes are treated with antiglobulin or Coombs' serum then the cells are agglutinated.
- Coombs' Serum or Coomb's reagent is a special serum from a rabbit or other animal previously immunized with purified human globulin to prepare antibodies directed against **IgG** and **complement**(eg. rabbit antiserum against human globulin).
- It is used in the direct and indirect Coomb's tests and also called antihuman globulin.

Objectives

To detect red blood cells sensitized with IgG alloantibodies, IgG autoantibodies or complement components.

Principle

Under certain conditions, complement proteins or more commonly, incomplete antibodies (IgG) attach to red cell membrane by the Fab portion of the immunoglobulin. These cells are said to be sensitized. Sensitization of red cells can occur in vivo or vitro. The IgG molecules attached to the red cells are unable to bridge the gap between sensitized red cells which are separated from each other by the negative charge on their surface and as a result of which the sensitized red cells do not agglutinate.

Adding of the Coomb's reagent (antiglobulin serum) however, completes the reaction. When the serum is added to the sensitized cells, the Fab portion of the anti-human globulin molecule (anti-IgG) reacts with the Fc portions of two adjacent IgG molecules attached to red cells thereby bridge the gap between sensitized red cells and cause agglutination.

Thus, if human IgG antibody has already attached to the patient's red cells in vivo (in the bloodstream), or the patient serum contains incomplete antibodies that can attach to RBCs in-vitro, then the addition of anti-human IgG will cause the cells to agglutinate. This is a positive Coomb's test.

Types of Coombs test

There are two types of Coombs tests: the direct Coomb's test and the Indirect Coomb's test.

Direct Coomb's Test (Direct Antiglobulin Test)

- The direct test is more common and checks for antibodies that are attached to the surface of red blood cells.
- In this test, the sensitization of red blood cells (RBCs) with incomplete antibodies takes place *in vivo*.
- The cell-bound antibodies can be detected by this test in which antiserum against human immunoglobulin is used to agglutinate patient's red cells.

Indirect Coomb's Test (Indirect Antiglobulin Test)

- The indirect test checks for unattached antibodies that are floating in the bloodstream.

- In this test, the sensitization of RBCs with incomplete antibodies takes place *in vitro*.
- The patient's serum is mixed with normal red cells and antiserum to human immunoglobulin is added. Agglutination occurs if antibodies are present in the patient's serum.

Requirements of Coombs Test

Test tubes, centrifuge, Anti-human globulin (AHG) reagent, pre-sensitized red cells (Coombs' control cells), Saline.

Procedure

The use of antihuman globulin serum to detect sensitization of red cells in vitro is a two stage technique constitute indirect antiglobulin test (IAT). On the other hand, sensitization of red cells in vivo is detected by one stage technique – the direct antiglobulin test (DAT).

Direct Coomb's Test

1. Red cells suspected of being sensitized is washed 3 to 4 times in large volume of saline.
2. Two drops of anti-human globulin serum is added to the sedimented cells.
3. It is mixed well and centrifuged at 1500 rpm for one minute.
4. Agglutination is examined by holding against a lighted background and tapping the bottom of the tube.
5. If the agglutination is not seen, the tube is left at room temperature for 10 min. then re-centrifuged and read. A weaker reacting antibody may will show delayed reaction and this is considered as positive.
6. If haemagglutination is not seen in step 5, one drop of presensitized red blood cells (5% suspension is saline) is added. This should result in haemagglutination of pre-sensitized cells indicating that the antihuman globulin (AHG) is reactive and the result is valid.

Indirect Coomb's Test

1. % saline suspension of the test cells is prepared.
2. Two drops of cell suspension is added to a small test tube.
3. Two drops of antiserum is added to the cell suspension.
4. It is incubated in a water bath at 37°C for 30 min.
5. The tube from the water bath is removed and washed 3 to 4 times with large volume of saline. It is completely decanted after last washing.
6. Two drops of anti human globulin (AHG) is immediately added and mixed well.
7. It is centrifuged at 1500 rpm for one minute and examined for haemagglutination.
8. In case of negative haemagglutination, pre-sensitized reagent cells is added to test the reactivity of AHG. Agglutination must be seen with the addition of Coombs' control cells.

Result Interpretation of Coomb's Test

Positive: A clumping of the red blood cells (agglutination) during the test.

Agglutination of blood cells during a **direct Coomb's** test suggests that antibodies may be present on red blood cells of the patient and that the condition of hemolysis may persist.
Agglutination of blood cells during an **indirect Coomb's** test suggest the presence of antibodies circulating in bloodstream that could cause the immune system to react to any red blood cells that are considered foreign to the body — particularly those that may be present during a blood transfusion.
Negative: No clumping or agglutination of red blood cells.

Application of Coomb's Test

1. Coomb's test is one of the blood tests employed to help find out the kind of anemia an anemic patient is suffering from.
2. Indirect test is administered to determine if there was a potential bad reaction to a blood transfusion.
3. Blood banks use the indirect Coombs test to determine whether there is likely to be an adverse reaction to blood to be transfused.
4. Coombs' tests are used for detection of anti-Rh antibodies.
5. It is also used to detect incomplete antibodies in brucellosis and other diseases.
6. The indirect Coombs test is used in prenatal testing of pregnant women.
7. The test is done on the newborn's blood sample, usually in the setting of a newborn with jaundice.
8. It helps in the detection of conditions like hemolytic anemia, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, erythroblastosis fetalis, infectious mononucleosis, mycoplasmal infection, syphilis, systemic lupus erythematosus etc.

Limitations of Coomb's Test

- Sometimes, especially in older adults, a Coomb's test will have an abnormal result even without any other disease or risk factors.
- The test can only be rarely used to diagnose a medical condition.

Blood storage

Introduction

The collection of blood from donors may take place within the blood transfusion centre or hospital blood bank.

It is also often collected from donors during mobile blood collection sessions.

The blood is then taken to a laboratory for testing and processing into components and for storage and distribution as the need arises.

Blood is collected at body temperature, i.e. +37 °C. But in order to maintain its vital properties, it must be cooled to below +10 °C to be transported, and stored at refrigeration temperatures of around +4 °C.

Harmful effects of Improper Storage

- If blood is stored or transported outside of these temperatures for long, it loses its ability to transport oxygen or carbon dioxide to and from tissues respectively upon transfusion.

- Other factors of serious concern are the risk of bacterial contamination if blood is exposed to warm temperatures.

- Conversely, blood exposed to temperatures below freezing may get hemolysed and can lead to a fatal transfusion reaction.

Whole blood :

Safe storage of blood

- Whole blood and red cells must always be stored at a temperature between +2 °C and +6 °C.
- If blood is not stored at between +2 °C and +6 °C, its oxygen- carrying ability is greatly reduced.
- The anticoagulant/preservative solution in the blood bag contains nutrients for the blood during storage and stops the blood from clotting.
- The red cells can carry and deliver oxygen only if they remain viable.

Storage of Whole Blood and Red Cells

Condition	Temperature range	Shortage time
Transport of pre- processed blood	+20 °C to +24 °C	Less than 6 hours
Storage of pre- processed or processed blood	+2 °C to +6 °C	Approx. 35 days
Transport of processed blood	+ 2 ^{o}C to + 10^{o}C	Less than 24 Hrs

Fresh frozen plasma

- Fresh frozen plasma (FFP) is plasma which is separated from a unit of whole blood within 6 hours of collection, and has been rapidly frozen and maintained at all times at a temperature of minus –30 °C or lower.
- FFP, once thawed has a shelf life of 24 hours at 10C to 60C.
- Plasma contains water, electrolytes, clotting factors and other proteins (mostly albumin), most of which are stable at refrigerator temperature, i.e. +2 °C to +6 °C.

Permitted Storage Time According To Temperature Used To Store FFP and Cryoprecipitate

Product	Storage Temperature	Maximum storage Time
FFP	**-30º C or below**	**1 year**
Cryoprecipitate	**30º C or below**	**1 year**

Platelet concentrates

- Platelet-rich plasma (PRP)/ Platelet concentrate (PC) must be separated from whole blood by centrifugation within 6 hours of collection.
- whole blood should be kept at between +20 °C and +24 °C until it is processed into platelet concentrates and other blood components.
- Platelet concentrates should be stored at a temperature of between +20 °C and +24 °C i.e 22±2 °C with continuous gentle agitation. This is essential to prevent platelet aggregation which results in loss of viability.

Cold chain samples and reagents

- The storage and transportation of reagents or blood samples is as critical as that for blood.
- Manufacturers of laboratory reagents recommend methods for their safe storage and transportation.
- The recommendations in the package inserts must be followed to avoid deterioration of the reagents and subsequent poor performance in use.
- Testing of the blood samples should be carried out rapidly after collection. The longer that testing is delayed, the poorer the results.
- The method of collection, storage and transportation of blood samples will depend on the type of laboratory test to be carried out.

Transportation:

- All blood and blood components must be transported maintaining the correct temperature ranges.
- Red blood cell components must be kept at a temperature of +2 °C to +10 °C during transportation.
- All components routinely stored at +20 °C to +24 °C should be kept at these temperatures during shipment.
- Allfrozen components should be transported as per the Standard Operating Procedures.
- The transit time for blood and blood components should not normally exceed 24 hours.

Transportation of Whole Blood From The Collection Site To The Laboratory

- Blood and blood components collected at donor sessions should be transported to the blood centre in appropriate conditions of temperature, security and hygiene in
- If special gel pouches are not available, the blood packs should be transported as quickly as possible at a temperature of +2 °C to +10 °C, but cannot then be used for the preparation of platelet concentrates.

Pre transfusion Blood screening

Blood transfusion is the most frequent procedure performed during hospital admissions and many transfusions are administered in the perioperative period, often on a time-sensitive basis. In this clinical commentary, key points related to pretransfusion testing are reviewed with an emphasis on the electronic crossmatch, as well as the use of uncrossmatched erythrocytes in situations where crossmatch-compatible units are not yet available for transfusion.

Preoperative Blood Orders

For the typical surgical patient, a determination is made preoperatively as to the level of pretransfusion testing ordered (none, type and screen only, or number of units to crossmatch). Such determinations may be based on individual physician judgment of the expected/typical amount of surgical blood loss for a given procedure, the patient's preoperative hemoglobin concentration, or on an institution's maximum surgical blood order schedule (MSBOS). The MSBOS lists the recommended extent of pretransfusion testing for common surgical procedures and is intended to optimize the amount of pretransfusion testing performed on each patient thereby reducing costs and unnecessary testing. Limitations of the traditional MSBOS include that it may not be based on local data and may be updated infrequently. More recently, advances in medical informatics have allowed the MSBOS to be updated based on institution- and procedure-specic median transfusion rates, an approach with the potential to signicantly reduce unnecessary testing and crossmatching.

Pre transfusion Testing

Pretransfusion testing is a multistep process aimed at avoiding potentially fatal hemolytic transfusion reactions. The process begins on the clinical ward with identification of the intended recipient and collection of a properly labeled blood sample. When the sample and requisition are received in the transfusion laboratory, blood bank personnel review the recipient's transfusion history, perform the necessary testing, and if ordered, crossmatch erythrocytes.

Blood Type (or Group) Determination

Determination of the recipient's ABO type is performed using both forward and reverse testing phases; these two phases of testing produce complementary information that serves to confirm each other's result. Forward typing is performed by mixing the recipient's erythrocytes with commercially available anti-A and anti-B sera and observing for agglutination (clumping

together of cells indicating antibody has bound to its target on the erythrocytes). The reverse type is performed using the recipient's serum and commercially available group A and B erythrocytes. Agglutination patterns of the forward and reverse types and the compatible erythrocytes for transfusion are listed in

Typing for the RhD antigen is performed in a similar manner as the forward type, with commercially available anti-D sera reacting with RhD antigen expressed on recipient erythrocytes. Unlike the ABO blood group, antibodies directed against antigens in the Rh blood group do not occur naturally and are only made in response to a sensitizing exposure such as previous transfusion or pregnancy. Such antibodies are detected by the antibody screen.

Antibody Screen

The antibody screen is an antibody detection test in which the recipient's serum is added to a reference panel of commercially available erythrocytes with a known pattern of antigen expression that, between them, include all clinically significant non-ABO antigens known to cause clinically significant hemolysis.

A positive antibody screen signifies the presence of at least one antibody directed against red cell surface antigens. Development of red cell antibodies, known as alloimmunization, occurs as a result of exposure to erythrocyte antigens during pregnancy or a previous transfusion. When an antibody is detected in the antibody screen, the blood bank must perform additional testing to identify the specificity of the antibody. If the antibody is clinically significant, that is, if it can cause the premature destruction of transfused erythrocytes, antigen-negative erythrocyte units must be located. This search for compatible (i.e., antigen-negative) erythrocytes can take several hours or even longer (e.g., days and weeks) depending on the number and nature of the antibodies and can

result in significant surgical delays (median delay of 12 h in one report). To reduce surgical delays and cancellations related to unexpected antibodies, pretransfusion testing can be completed up to 30 to 45 days in advance provided the patient has not been pregnant or transfused in the preceding 90 days. If a patient has been pregnant or transfused in the preceding 90 days, a type and screen is valid for up to 72 h. The patient must also commit to maintaining their identification from the blood bank.

Serological Cross Match

confirming ABO compatibility between a potential donor unit and the recipient's plasma. A more extensive crossmatch involving antihuman globulin (sometimes referred to as "Coomb's reagent") is used to ensure compatibility between antigen-negative erythrocytes and the serum of a recipient with a current or historical non-ABO antibody; incompatibility in either of these crossmatches is indicated by the presence of erythrocyte agglutination or hemolysis. Serologic crossmatching adds approximately 10 min to pretransfusion testing using the immediate spin method, and approximately 45 min to perform an antihuman globulin crossmatch.

Determination of ABO blood group

Principle

The classification of blood groups based on the presence or absence of antigens A and B on the surfaceof red blood cells is called ABO blood grouping. This system of blood grouping was identified by Landsteiner et al. in the year 1900. Bernstein (1925) described that three types of alleles, I^A, I^B & I^0 are responsible for the ABO blood grouping system.

Blood group	Genotypes	Antigen	Antibody	Compatible donor blood groups	Incompatible donor blood groups
A	I^AI^A, I^AI^0	A	b	'O' and 'A'	'B', 'AB'
B	I^BI^B , I^BI^0	B	a	'O' and 'B'	'A' , 'AB'
AB	I^AI^B	Both 'A' and 'B' antigens	Neither 'a' nor 'b' antibody	'A' , 'B', 'AB' and 'O'	None
O	I^0I^0	Neither 'A' nor 'B' antigen	Both 'a' and 'b' antibodies	O	'A' , 'B' and 'AB'

All the above-mentioned three alleles share the same locus, hence are called multiple alleles. I^0 allele is recessive to both I^A and I^B alleles. Again, I^A and I^B are codominant alleles. Interaction between similar types of antigen and antibody cause blood to agglutinate. So 'O' blood group is known as 'Universal donor' blood group as in this case RBC lacks A and B antigens and so such blood can be donated to all other blood groups. Similarly, a man with AB blood group can receive blood from all other blood groups and is therefore known as 'Universal recipient'.

The second most important blood group system, after the ABO blood group system is the Rh blood grouping system. This is based on the presence or absence of the blood group antigen called Rhesus factor(abbreviated as Rh factor). Rh factor was discovered in 1937 by Karl Landsteiner and Alexander S. Wiener, who, at the time, believed it to be a similar antigen found in rhesus monkey red blood cells. The terms Rh factor, Rh positive, and Rh negative refer to the Rh(D) antigen only.

Materials required

1. Clean grease-free slides
2. Cotton
3. Rectified spirit
4. Sterile needle
5. ABO blood grouping kit
6. Clean match sticks

Method

1. Clean the slides and mark three points as A, B and D.
2. Clean one of the fingers by rubbing with cotton soaked in rectified spirit.
3. When the finger dries, prick the tip of the finger with the sterile needle so that blood comes out.
4. Put one drop of blood each near the points A, B and D Put one drop of anti-serum A, B

and D on the blood drops near the points A, B and Drespectively.

5. Mix the liquids at each of the three points with the wooden ends of three separate clean matchsticks.

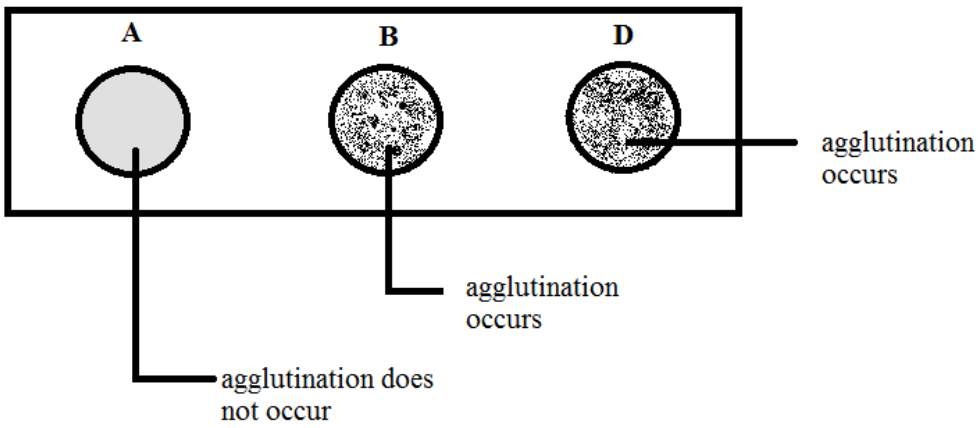
Observation

Theoretically, we know that

1. If blood near point A agglutinates, then the blood group is 'A'.
2. If blood near point B agglutinates, then the blood group is 'B'.
3. If blood near both the points A and B agglutinate, then the blood group is 'AB'.
4. If neither of blood near point A or B agglutinates, then the blood group is 'O'.
5. If blood near point D agglutinates, then the blood group is 'Rh positive', else it is "Rh negative'.

In this experiment it was found that blood near points 'B' and 'D' agglutinate. So the blood used here isB positive

Result



[Here students will write their own blood groups and draw accordingly.]

Conclusion

Since the blood used in the present experiment agglutinated with anti-B and anti-D serum, therefore it canbe concluded that it belongs to blood group B positive.